



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



NICHOLSON'S ARITHMETIC

SIMPLIFIED AND IMPROVED BY THE ADDITION OF
SHORT RECKONINGS, MENTAL CALCULATIONS,
AND A CONCISE SYSTEM OF BOOK-KEEPING.

In this work the obscure rules of other Arithmetics have been exchanged for **PLAIN** and **SIMPLE** directions which a child may understand, and the unscientific methods of working have been abandoned for those which accord with Arithmetical science.

MENTAL CALCULATIONS,

so very important in business, have been incorporated. **OBJECT-TEACHING**, or teaching by sight, (the best and most effective of all teaching) forms a prominent part in the first part of the book, and in Fractions ; and a

SYSTEM OF BOOK-KEEPING

has also been appended.

*. It is surprising with what tenacity some Schoolmasters cling to old usages. Disregarding all modern discoveries and improvements, they would employ the very same Educational Works by which they were taught in their childhood, although those works have been superseded by others infinitely superior. In these days of rapid intellectual development, bearing some resemblance to Railways, Electric Telegraphs, &c., Schoolmasters, Parents, and Guardians of Youth, must abandon their prejudices, and espouse those Educational Works which modern science offers them as decided improvements, or they will subject themselves to the suspicion of incompetency for teaching.

The Publishers of this **ARITHMETIC**, had, at the first, to contend with such absurd prejudices ; but, thanks to the discernment of the more intelligent Preceptors, and to the good sense of the Public, this work now commands an extensive sale, and bids fair to supplant the antiquated Editions. **IMPROVEMENT AND PROGRESS ARE IRRESISTIBLE.**

KEY to NICHOLSON'S ARITHMETIC,

In which all the Sums are worked at length. SAME PRICE AS ARITHMETIC. The lowness of the Price of this Key is a new feature !! Keys having a

HALIFAX
LONDON : Simp

**W. Nicholson and Sons also publish the following
School Books.**

MARKHAM'S SPELLING AND READING BOOK.

MAVOR'S SPELLING AND READING BOOK.

**JOHNSON'S ILLUSTRATED SPELLING AND
READING BOOK, with Simple Lessons.**

**WEBSTER'S PICTORIAL SPELLING AND READ-
ING BOOK, with Easy Gradations.**

READING EASIES,

THE SPEEDY TEACHER, or Child's Gradual Primer.

READING MADE QUITE EASY.

**THE CHILD'S EASY TUTOR, or Gradual Steps in
Learning.**

**THE FIRST SPELLING AND READING BOOK
Of Easy Lessons, adapted for Children.**

**THE FIRST BOOK OF ARITHMETIC, for the use of
Schools, (known as the Irish.)**

**GRAY'S ARITHMETIC; to which is added, Rules for
working on the Sliding Rule, Mensuration, and Men-
tal Calculation.**

**ARITHMETICAL TABLE BOOK and Mental Calcu-
lator.**

FATHERLESS FANNY, the Little Mendicant. 1s. 6d.

ANNA LEE: the Maiden, the Wife, and the Mother. 1s 6d.

**SWEET HOME: or, the Christian's residence in the
Church Militant and his anticipated residence in the
Church Triumphant. 1s. 6d.**

**THE CHRISTIAN'S HAND BOOK to the Bible, de-
signed to exhibit the excellence of the Scriptures. 1s. 6d.**

**HOPPUS'S PRACTICAL MEASURER, for Measur-
ing Timber, Stone, Iron, Boards, Glass, &c. 1s. 6d.**

**READY RECKONER, Showing the value of any num-
ber of Articles, from 1-16th to 50,000, at from 1-16th of
a Penny to One Pound; each Page containing 165
Calculations. Large Type, 12mo. 2s.**

30276 f 143.

**THE
GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE
MADE EASY.**



THE
GRAMMAR
OF THE
ENGLISH LANGUAGE
MADE EASY:

WITH NUMEROUS PRACTICAL EXERCISES
IN ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, AND PROSODY:

ALSO,
DERIVATION;

COMPRISING ANGLO-SAXON, OR ENGLISH, LATIN, AND
GREEK AFFIXES, AND PREFIXES, AND

VERY COMPREHENSIVE
LISTS OF ENGLISH WORDS
DERIVED FROM THE ANGLO-SAXON, LATIN, GREEK, AND
FRENCH LANGUAGES,
AMOUNTING TO NEARLY 10,000 WORDS.

BY W. NICHOLSON.

HALIFAX:

PUBLISHED BY W. NICHOLSON & SONS.
LONDON: SIMPKIN & MARSHALL, & WILLIAM TEGG.
MANCHESTER: J. HEYWOOD. EDINBURGH: J. MENZIES.

1864.

[ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.]



PREFACE.

IN preparing this Grammar for publication, I have endeavoured to make it as easy, comprehensive, and cheap as possible. To a considerable extent, I presume, I have succeeded. For a proof of its simplicity, I refer to the definitions of the several parts of speech. See pages 13, 14, 16, 34, 53. A careful examination of the work will prove its comprehensive nature. The Exercises to call forth the discrimination of the Pupil, and the Questions for examination, are very ample, and if properly gone through, will secure a satisfactory knowledge of English Grammar. For a proof of its cheapness, I refer to the great amount of matter it contains—and to the variety of the matter. Every person who examines it, and compares it with other Grammars, will perceive it to be the cheapest extant.

But quantity amounts to little, if the quality is deficient. The Author must leave the quality to be decided by the judgment of the literary. The preparation of the work has been very onerous. It has required much time, and great mental effort. It has been his study to adopt an independent course, and to avoid, as much as possible, the routine of other Grammarians. This has been the case especially in the arrangement of the various Prefixes and Affixes, and the Lists of Derivative Words. These Lists are larger and more varied than those contained in any other Grammar. A considerable portion of the Book is devoted to a systematic and comprehensive course of instruction in Derivation—in the analysis of Derivative and Compound Words. This is done in a manner so simple, and, at the same time, so thorough, as to furnish an easy, interesting, and sufficient introduction to the study of Etymological Analysis.

With regard to the utility of a knowledge of Derivation, the Author fully endorses the remarks of Dr. M'Culloch :—"There is no branch of Grammar of greater practical utility than Derivation. An acquaintance with its details is of incalculable moment, especially to those who cannot obtain a classical education." The Teacher therefore will confer great advantage by putting the pupil through the various Exercises in Derivation. A good acquaintance with the Prefixes and Affixes, and the various Derivatives, as exhibited in this Grammar, will be an excellent introduction to the study of the Latin, Greek, or French language. It is well observed by that great English Philologist, Dr. J. Jones, in his *Analogiæ Latinæ* ;—"If the custom prevailed in all schools of tracing the English to the Latin, the utility of this last would be more generally and permanently felt; nor would it be so generally forgotten in manhood, after the long and fruitless pains that have been taken to acquire it in youth." Let the pupil therefore trace the English words to the Latin, to the Greek, and to the French, &c. and a lasting utility will be created.

In this part of the work I confess my obligations to the Dictionaries and writings of Johnson, Horne Tooke, Todd, Webster, Reid, Oswald, Sullivan, Rowbotham, and Mc Elligott, of New York; also to the Latin and Greek Lexicons, to several French Dictionaries, and for Anglo-Saxon Roots, to Bosworth, &c.

W. NICHOLSON.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

1. ENGLISH GRAMMAR* is the art of speaking and writing the English language correctly and elegantly, according to established Rules.

2. English Grammar may be divided into five parts; viz.—Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, Prosody, and Punctuation.

3. *Orthography* treats of letters and syllables; *Etymology*, of words; *Syntax*, of sentences; *Prosody*, of the laws of verse; and *Punctuation*, the method of pointing by stops, to render the construction and meaning more distinct to the reader or hearer.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. What is English Grammar? | 3. What are those parts called? |
| 2. Into how many parts is it divided? | 4. Of what does Orthography treat? And also Etymology, &c. |
-

ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. Orthography† teaches the forms and uses of Letters, and their formation into Syllables and Words.

2. A Letter‡ is a simple mark or sign used in writing or printing to represent a distinct sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech.

* The word *Grammar* is derived from the Greek word, *γραμμα*, *gramma*, a letter.

† *Orthography*, from the Greek *orthographia*—*orthos*, *orthos*, correct, *γραφω*, *grapho*, to write.


‡ From the Latin *littera*, a letter, or character.

3. There are twenty-six letters in the English language; viz.—*a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.*

4. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

5. A vowel can be perfectly uttered by itself. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *w* and *y*, when they do not begin a word or syllable. But when *w* and *y* begin a word or syllable, they are consonants.

6. The consonants are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.* A consonant is a letter which cannot be perfectly sounded without a vowel.

 There are five classes of consonants, each class named from the peculiar utterance of them by the organs of speech. Thus, *b, f, p, v*, are *labials*, from the lips; *d, t*, are *dentals*, from the teeth; *r*, is a *palatal*, from the palate; *m, n*, and *ng*, are *nasals*, partly sounded by the nose; and *s* is a *sibilant*, from the hissing sound made in uttering it.

Consonants are divided into *mutes* and *semivowels*. The *mutes* cannot be sounded without the aid of a vowel. They are *b, p, t, d, k*, and *c*, and *g* hard. The *semivowels* have an imperfect sound of themselves. They are *f, l, m, r, v, s, x, z*, and *c*, and *g* soft. *L, m, n, r*, are also called *liquids*, because they easily unite with other consonants, and flow into their sound, as *l* in *blame*, *r* in *drink*.

7. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one syllable; as *oi* in *oil*, *ou* in *pound*, *oy* in *boy*.

When both vowels are sounded, the diphthong is called *proper*; as, *oi*, in *voice*, *toil*; *ou*, in *ounce*.

When only one vowel is sounded, it is called an *improper* diphthong; as *ea* in *bread*, *eagle*; *ai*, in *aim*; *ie* in *friend*.

8. A triphthong is the union of three vowels in one syllable; as *iou* in *view*, *ieu* in *lieu*, *uoy* in *buoy*, *vai* in *quaint*, and *eau* in *beauty*.

EXERCISE.

In the following words point out the *Consonants*.—also the *Vowels*.—the *Diphthongs*,—and the *Triphthongs*.

The eagle is on the mountain top. I hear its voice. Come, view my garden; it is full of beauty. The sea is full of wonders. The men in the boat are fixing a buoy in the water as a guide for sailors. Aim, my friend, to do good. James gave me a sweet plum, a small pear, and a ripe peach. He is a good boy. Let me read my new book. I have a new coat.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. What does Orthography teach? | 6. What is a Consonant? |
| 2. What is a Letter? | 7. What is a Diphthong? |
| 3. How many Letters are there in the English Alphabet? | 8. What is a proper Diphthong? |
| 4. How are Letters divided? | 9. What is an improper Diphthong? |
| 5. What is a Vowel, and how many are there? Name them. | 10. What is a Triphthong? |

RULES FOR SPELLING.

§ 1. The following rules may be studied when the pupil is more advanced. They will be found very useful, as they refer to a class of words about the spelling of which doubt is frequently felt.

1. Words of one syllable, ending in *f*, *l*, or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant; as *staff*, *bull*, *mill*, *pass*, *muff*, *ass*. The only exceptions are *as*, *gas*, *has*, *is*, *his*, *of*, *this*, *was*, *yes*, *thus*.

§ 2. Words ending in other consonants than *f*, *l*, or *s*, do not double the final letter; as *bat*, *book*, *can*, *man*, *pit*, *pot*; except, *add*, *burr*, *ebb*, *egg*, *err*, *odd*, *purrr*.

2. All words of one syllable ending in *l*, with a single vowel before it, have one *l* only at the close; as, *mail*, *sail*, *hail*, *stail*, *pail*.

3. Words of one syllable ending in *l*, when compounded, retain only one *l* each; as *fulfil*, *skilful*.

4. Words of more than one syllable ending in *l* have one *l* only at the close; as, *delightful*, *beautiful*, *dutiful*, *faithful*, except *befall*, *downfall*, *recall*, *unwell*, &c.

5. All derivations from words ending in *l*, have one *l* only; as *equality*, from *equal*; *fulness*, from *full*; except they end in *er*, or *ly*; as *mill*, *millier*; *full*, *fully*.

6. Words which end in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change the *y*, into *i*, upon assuming an additional syllable; as, *happy*, *happily*, *happiness*; *merry*, *merrier*, *merrily*, *merriment*; *pity*, *pitted*, *pitiless*, *pitiful*, *pitiable*, &c.

But before *ing* the *y* is retained to prevent the *i* from being doubled; as, *carry*, *carryng*; *magnify*, *magnifyng*; *rally*, *rallyng*.

7. All participles in *ing*, from verbs ending in *e*, lose the *e* final; as, *have*, *having*; *amuse*, *amusing*; except they come from verbs ending in double *e*, and then they retain both; as, *see*, *seeing*; *agree*, *agreeing*; *see*, *seeing*; also, *singe*, *singeing*; *dye*, *dyeing*.

SYLLABLES AND WORDS.

1. Words consist of one syllable; as, *on*; or more than one; as, *only*, *cheerfully*.

2. A Syllable* is a simple sound, or a combination or succession of sounds—or as much of a word as can be sounded at once; as, *man*, in manner, *kind* in kindness, *sweet* in sweetness.

3. A word of *one* syllable is called a Monosyllable; as, *dog*, *bird*, *beast*.

4. A word of *two* syllables is called a Disyllable; as, *ap-ple*, *man-ner*, *man-ful*.

5. A word of *three* syllables is called a Trisyllable; as, *man-ner-ly*, *cow-ard-ly*, *con-tent-ment*.

6. A word of *four*, or more syllables, is called

8. *Ness*, *less*, *ly*, and *full*, added to words ending with silent *e*, retain it; as, *brave*, *bravely*; *pale*, *paleness*; *close*, *closely*; *peace*, *peaceful*; except in a few words, as *duly*, *truly*, *awful*.

9. *Ment* added to words with silent *e* generally retain *e* before an additional syllable; as, *abatement*, *chastisement*, *incitement*, &c. The words *judgment*, *abridgment*, *acknowledgment*, *lodgment*, &c., are deviations from this rule.

10. All derivations from words ending in *er*, retain the *e* before the *r*; as, *refer*, reference; *prefer*, preference; except *hindrance* from *hinder*; *remembrance* from *remember*; *disastrous* from *disaster*; *monstrous* from *monster*; *wondrous* from *wonder*, &c.

11. Compound words, if both end not in *ly*, retain their primitive parts entire; as, *millstone*, *changeable*, *raceless*: except *always*, *also*, *deplorable*, *although*, *almost*, *admirable*, &c.

12. Monosyllables ending in a consonant with a single vowel before it, double that consonant in derivatives; as, *sin*, *sinner*; *ship*, *shipping*; *whip*, *whipping*; *big*, *bigger*; *mad*, *madder*; *glad*, *gladder*; *remit*, *remitted*.

But if a diphthong precedes, or the accent be on the preceding syllable, the consonant remains single; as, *to tell*, *telling*; *to offer*, *an offering*; *sleep*, *sleepy*; *troop*, *trooper*.

13. All words of more than one syllable ending in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, and accented on the last syllable, double that consonant in derivatives; as, *commit*, *committee*; *compel*,

* From the Greek word συλλαβη, *suḗlabe*, (συν, *sun*, together, λαμβανω, *lambano*, to take.)

a Pollysyllable; as, *trans-por-ta-tion*, *in-form-a-tion*, *in-com-pre-hen-si-ble*, *in-com-mu-ni-ca-ble*.

7. All words are *primitive*, *derivative*, *simple*, or *compound*.

8. A *primitive* word is not derived from any other word in the language; as, *kind*, *good*, *man*, *boy*.

9. A *derivative* word is that which is derived from another; as, *goodness* from *good*; *manful* from *man*; *wisdom* from *wise*; *brightness* from *bright*.

10. A *simple* word is that which is not made up of more than one, as *school*, *desk*, *pen*, *house*.

11. A *compound* word is that which is made up of two or more words, as *bookseller*, *horseman*, *boatman*.

compelled; *appal*, *appalling*; *distil*, *distiller*; *ferret*, *ferretted*; *revel*, *revelled*.

14. Nouns of one syllable ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *ies* in the plural; and verbs ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *ies* in the third person singular of the present tense, and into *ied* in the past tense, and past participle; as *fly*, *flies*; *I apply*, *I applied*, *he applies*; *we reply*, *we replied*, *or have replied*. Remember if the *y* be preceded by a vowel, this rule is not applicable; as, *gay*, *gayer*; *key*, *keys*; *I play*, *he plays*; *money*, *moneys*, (not *monies*,) *attorney*, *attorneys*.

15. Words ending in *oe* retain the final *e*, as *hoe*, *hoeing*; *shoe*, *shoeing*.

Words in *te* drop the *e*, and change the *t* into *y*, before an additional syllable, beginning with *t*, as *die*, *dying*; *lie*, *lying*.

EXERCISE.

Correct the following bad spelling.

Try to spel properly. An old man with a staf. Be not gros in your manners. I shall ride in a carr. Mr. Smith sells drugga. I heard the humm and the buz of a bee. John has foolish fancys. To God give ceaseless pralse. How awful is this place. Truely thou art a hero. Ever make improvment. I am pleased with your arrangment. The conduct of James is blameable. Learning is desiriable. Thomas has an obligeing disposition. Always be peacable. It was bad lodgeing there. I am not allways happy. My brother is happier. The man has a very droneish spirit.

EXERCISES ON SYLLABLES AND WORDS.

1. Divide the following words into syllables. 2. Tell which are monosyllables; which are dissyllables, &c., &c. 3. Point out the primitive word, the derivative, &c., &c.

Man is the noblest work of God. Pray to be wise. Wisdom is the principal thing. He is inconsistent, and he will remain ignorant, if he does not love learning. I will go into the school-room. Depository means a trustee; depository, a place of deposit. Stationary means fixed, permanent; stationery, articles sold by stationers, as paper, pens, ink, &c. The parcel was carriage-paid. It is geographically determined. The warehouse-man took it in. I examined the water-course, and found it nearly dry. The rays of the sun in summer come almost vertically upon us. Vertically means in the zenith, or the point overhead. See, the schoolmaster is coming. It is a misunderstanding.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. What is a syllable? | 6. What is a primitive word? |
| 2. What is a monosyllable? | 7. What is a derivative word? |
| 3. What is a dissyllable? | 8. What is a simple word? |
| 4. What is a trisyllable? | 9. What is a compound word? |
| 5. What is a polysyllable? | |

ETYMOLOGY.

1. Etymology* treats of different sorts of words, their various changes, and their derivation from their primitives.

2. There are nine sorts of words, called parts of speech, namely, Article, Noun, or Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

Three little words we often see,
Are *Articles*—*a*, *an*, and *the*.

A *Noun's* the name of any thing—

As *house* or *garden*, *hoop* or *swing*.

Instead of Nouns, the *Pronouns* stand;

I, *thou*, *she*, *it*, *my* house, *thy* hand.

* Etymology, from the Greek *etumologia*, compounded of *ετυμος*, *etumos*, true, and *λογος*, *logos*, word, or discourse.

Adjectives tell the kind of Noun;
 As *great, small, pretty, white or brown.*
Conjunctions join the nouns together;
 As *men and children, wind or weather.*
 A *Preposition* stands before
 A Noun; as *in, or through* a door.
Verbs tell of something being done;
 To *read, write, cipher, jump or run.*
How things are done, the *Adverbs* tell;
 As *slowly, quickly, ill or well.*
 An *Interjection* shows surprise;
 As—*ah!* how witty!—*Oh!* how wise!
 The whole we call nine parts of speech,
 Which reading, writing, speaking teach.

ARTICLES.

1. An Article* is a word placed before a Noun to determine the extent of its meaning; as, *a* boy, *a* girl, *an* arm, *the* chair, *an* heir.

2. There are only two Articles, *a*, or *an*, and, *the*. *A* is used before a word beginning with a consonant, as *a tree, a chair, a house*; before *u* long, and before words beginning in sound with *w* and *y*; as *a* unit, such *a* one, *a* ewe, *a* European.

3. *A* becomes *an* before words beginning with a vowel, or silent *h*; as *an* eagle, *an* hour, *an* ounce, *an* honour. *An* is also used before words beginning with *h* that are not accented on the first syllable; as, *heroic, historical, heptagonal, hypocritical, hydraulic, hypothesis, &c.* The words beginning with *h* silent are, *heir, herb, history, honest, honour, hour.*

* Article, from *Articulus*, a joint.

When the *h* is sounded, the *a* only is used ; as *a* house, *a* hand, *a* heart, *a* hammer.

4. *A*, or *an*, is called the *indefinite* Article, as it does not define, or clearly point out the particular person or thing of which we speak ; as, *a* boy, *a* top, *an* apple, *an* orange, meaning any boy, any top, &c.

5. *The* is called the *definite* Article, because it defines or directly refers to the particular person or thing of which we speak ; as, I saw *the* man ; I met *the* dog, alluding to some particular man, or dog.

A, *an*, and *the* are the Articles meant,
As *a* marble, *an* ox, and *the* book that I lent.
Give me *a* marble, for you've got *a* great many,
A white one, or *a* blue one,—just give me any :
But as for *the* book which you borrowed of me,
That is *the* book I am anxious to see ;
Not any book that may be on your shelf,
But *the* book, *the* same book, you borrowed yourself.

REMARKS.

A and *an* have the same meaning as *one*. They were originally *ae*, and *ane*, and simply conveyed the idea of unity ; as, *ae* man, *ane* ass.

A is used only before Nouns in the singular number, except the noun is preceded by the Adjectives *few* and *many*, &c. as *a few* cows, *a great many* cows. It is correct to say *a* score, *a* hundred, *a* thousand, *an* army, *a* crowd, *a* multitude, &c. for these words, or terms, are all collective nouns, each signifying *one* ; that is, *one* score, *one* hundred, *one* thousand, &c.

An indefinite Article cannot be used before a Proper Noun ; as, *a* George, *a* James ; but George, James. The use of *a* before metals, grains, &c. has been condemned by some Grammarians. But I think the application of *a* to metals, grains, &c. is, in some cases, quite correct ; as, *A gold of the purest kind*, that is, *a* quality of gold less adulterated than any other ; *A wheat of very fine quality*, *a* phrase very common at Corn Markets.

The is only another form for the word *that*. Originally *that* when not opposed to *this* was shortened into *the*. This abbreviation is not greater than that of the Latin *ille* and *illa* into the French *le* and *la*. It is apparent also that *a*, *an*, and *the*, have the character of adjectives.

The is prefixed to Nouns in both numbers; as, *the boy, the boys*, and sometimes before Adverbs in the comparative and superlative degrees; as, *the more* I read the book, *the better* I like it. *The more* I learn, *the wiser* I become.

A Noun without an Article prefixed is regarded in its widest sense; as, *Man* is mortal, that is, *all mankind*. A benevolent disposition is amiable in man; i. e. in *all mankind*.

EXERCISE I.

Point out the Indefinite, and the Definite Articles in the following sentences :—

An old man was cutting down a tree. I passed a man on the road. He was a very tall man. It is an honour to do good. A cat is not so sly as a fox. I can use a pen, and do a sum. The sky was red to-day. An owl can see in the night. Go not out of the path of virtue. Did you ever see an ant trying to carry an earwig? John is a good boy, and God will love such a one. An heir of glory.

EXERCISE II.

Place the Articles before the following Nouns :—

Unit, ewe, European, heir, donkey, house, herb, field, master, hand, eye, humour, music, ear, hospital, oak, blossom, carpenter, drunkard, eclipse, peach, antidote, history, yard, yeoman, youth.

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors :—

An unit. (Should be *a unit*.) A eagle. A honest man. A James. An house. Such an one. An ewe. A apple. A orange. An heart. He had an hand in it. Bring me an hammer. It is a herb. He is a heir. I went into an hospital. An European and a Asiatic differ in colour. An heart that is kind. I went for a ounce of tea. I can only stay a hour. An humble man. A hydraulic pump. A historical painting.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What is Etymology? 2. How many parts of speech are there? Name them. 3. What is an Article? 4. How many Articles are there? Name them. 5. How are they called? 6. What do you mean by an Indefinite Article? 7. What by a Definite Article? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. How is <i>a</i> used, and when is <i>an</i> prefixed? 9. When does <i>a</i> become <i>an</i>? 10. Which form, <i>a</i>, or <i>an</i>, is used when the <i>h</i> is sounded? 11. How is the Definite article <i>the</i> used? 12. How do you regard a noun without an article to limit it? |
|--|--|

NOUNS.

1. A Noun* is simply the Name of any person, animal, place, or thing ; as, James, man ; horse, dog ; Leeds, city ; virtue, vice.

~~As~~ It is not the thing itself that is called a Noun, but the name of the thing. The word *apple* is a Noun, because it is the name of a certain kind of fruit. All names, then, whether of material things, as, *book, hat, apples*, or of ideas, as, *hope, joy, sorrow*, are put in this class, and called Nouns.

2. A Noun is the name of whatever exists, or may be supposed to exist, and of which we can form an idea or opinion ; as London, man, goodness.

3. The Noun is the only part of speech which expresses a distinct idea without the help of another word ; as, *wisdom, virtue*.

THE WAY TO DISTINGUISH NOUNS.

(1.) A Noun may be known by its making sense with the Article *a, an, or the* ; as, *a boy, an apple, the garden*. Therefore, *boy, apple, garden*, are Nouns.

(2.) Every material object has a name, as, *garden, field, man, lion, rose, tulip, wood, silver, gold, iron, &c.* Every immaterial object has also a name ; as, *mind, pleasure, joy, grief, justice, liberty, love*.

(3.) The Noun answers to the question, *What is this?* Or a Noun necessarily follows the phrase, *I think of* ; as, *I think of my father, or my mother, or my brother, and sister. Or I think of America, Asia, or Africa. I think of piety, happiness, and heaven.*

(4.) Every thing we can *see* is a Noun.—What do we see in a School-room ? We see the *master, teachers, scholars, desks, benches, books, pens, ink, paper, slates, maps, walls,*

* From the Latin *nomen*, a name. Nouns are sometimes called *Substantives*.

windows, doors, &c. Every thing we see is a Noun, for every thing has a name.

What do we see in a garden, or in a house, or in a place of worship, or at a farm, or in a museum, or on the sea? Every word with which we may answer, will be a Noun.

What do we see in a good man? We see *goodness, sobriety, honesty, benevolence, kindness, compassion, pity, uprightness, respect, love, honour, dignity, happiness, faith, hope, charity.* All these are Nouns.

What do we see in a bad man? We see *wickedness, falsehood, deceit, envy, malice, enmity, hatred, idleness, dishonesty, misery, degradation, despair.* All these are Nouns.

(5.) Every thing we can hear is a Noun. We can hear *thunder, a whisper, a speech, a noise, music, a sermon, a lecture, a discourse, an oration, the rain, the wind, a storm, a groan, a sigh, a howl, a laugh, a footstep, a tread, a knock, a report, a volley, a roar, a sound, &c.* All these are Nouns.

(6.) Every thing we can touch or feel is a Noun. We can touch an *apple, orange, rose, lily, tulip, table, chair, &c., &c.* We can feel *pleasure, pain, joy, grief, satisfaction, contentment, disappointment, disdain, contempt, anguish, agony, hope, expectancy, &c.* All these are Nouns.

(7.) Every thing we can eat or taste is a Noun. *Sweetness, acidity, bitterness, &c.,* are Nouns, for we can taste them. We can taste and eat *bread, an apple, a pear, an orange, a fig, a raisin, &c.*

(8.) Every thing which we can smell is a Noun; as, *fragrance, odour, scent, stench, decay, decomposition, corruption, death, &c.* We can smell a *rose, a pink, a carnation, &c.*

(9.) In general any thing we can think of, conceive, or believe, is a Noun; as, *love, hatred, goodness, knowledge, ignorance, prudence, imprudence, sin, purity, life, death, heaven, eternity, virtue, vice, &c.*


4. Nouns are divided into two general classes, called *Proper* and *Common*.

(1.) *Proper Nouns* are the names given to persons, places, rivers, seas, nations, countries, towns,

cities, ships, &c. as, *Richard, George, Manchester, Liverpool, France, Humber, Thames, Trent, Mersey, Atlantic Ocean.*

Proper Nouns seldom take an Article before them, because the extent of their meaning is defined by the words themselves ; as, *George, Westminster.*

Proper Nouns become common by having an Article prefixed to them ; as, *He is the Demosthenes* of his age.

 All Proper Nouns should begin with Capital Letters.

(2.) *Common Nouns* are the names of animals, and of things in general, as, *man, horse, desk, table, chair.*

Common Nouns are the names of things containing many classes or individuals ; and the name is common to every individual of that class ; as, *trees, men, boys, apples, animals, &c.* There are many classes of trees, men, boys, apples, and animals, and many individuals in these classes. Thus, a *house* is a common Noun, because there are many houses, and the word will apply to any of them. A *star* is a Common Noun in the same way, and for the same reason.

5. *Collective Nouns* denote many in the singular number ; as *meeting, multitude, nation, parliament, regiment, corporation, crowd, flock, court, herd, fleet, army, committee.*

6. *Abstract Nouns* are the names of qualities considered apart from their substances ; as *goodness, wisdom, whiteness, &c.* Thus we say, a *black cow, a brown horse, a good man* ; therefore from the qualities of cow, horse, and man, we abstract the idea of *blackness, brownness, and goodness.*

Let the pupil remember that Nouns are of two kinds ; *such* as he can see and feel, &c. ; and others which are seen only in their effects. Those Nouns which we can see, feel, hear, taste, or smell, are the Names of things that have substance, and by

some are called *Physical Nouns* ; but those which cannot be perceived by our senses, as wisdom, goodness, &c., are called *Abstract*, or *Metaphysical Nouns*.

7. *Participial Nouns* are derived from verbs ; as reading, writing, speaking, from to read, to write, to speak.

8. *A Compound Noun* is composed of two Nouns joined by a hyphen ; as *glow-worm*, *ink-horn*, *club-house*, *school-boy*.

EXERCISE I.

Write out the Nouns which you can see in any shop.—Those which you can see in a garden.—In a place of worship.—In the house in which you live.—In a field.—In an orchard.—In a good or bad boy.—In a market. *Remember that every thing you can see there is a Noun.*

EXERCISE II.

Supply the Nouns that are wanting.

Charles can spin a ——. William can eat an ——. John is a good ——. Martha is a fine ——. She is dressing her ——. Let us play at ——. Thomas and Samuel are brothers ; they love their father and ——. Thomas, where is your brother ——. The bread is baking in the ——. The meat is roasting before the ——. I am drowsy ; I want to go to ——. I love to read a ——. I hope to be a wise ——. The horse is in the ——. If I had some —— I would buy a ——. I am poor, and have nothing in my ——.

EXERCISE III.

Select the Nouns from the following :—

The Master is teaching me Grammar. My book is a new one. I saw a bird on a tree near the house. James saw it also. The Mersey is a fine river. Life is short. Time flies. Cheese is made from milk. Charles spins his top. The clouds are dark. Malta is in the Mediterranean sea. I love Jane my sister. They call the ship, the Great Eastern. My uncle and cousin John saw that fine vessel. She sailed from London to Holyhead, and she will soon sail for America, perhaps in November or December. She will surprise the Americans. How useful are steamships, railways, and the telegraph. Paul was an Apostle of Jesus Christ. The life of that great man is recorded in the Acts of the Apostles, and in the Epistles which he wrote to the churches.

Remember In the above Exercise, tell which are Proper Nouns, and which are Common Nouns.

EXERCISE IV.

Write out all the Nouns, and mark the Collective, Abstract, Participial, and Compound Nouns.

The regiment has sailed for India. The writing is bad. How great is his goodness! How great is his beauty! The battle-axe is now out of use. The committee is formed. The Glow-worm is luminous in the night. His departing was affecting. The Parliament is dissolved. His valour secured the victory. He needed not the assistance of his allies. Cowardice has lost many a battle. Edward serves in the navy. The police dispersed the mob. It is moon-light. The bee-hive is near the gateway. Forgive these tear-drops at our parting. The population is increasing. The procession comprised the nobility, the clergy, and persons connected with the army and navy. Be diligent in your early life-time, or you will have to regret in after-life. Margaret was scolding. Humility in youth will lead to honour in manhood. The hedge-rows begin to wither. The building is a fine structure. I admire the painting, the gilding, and the carving.

QUESTIONS ON NOUNS.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. What is a Noun? | 6. What are Collective Nouns? |
| 2. How may Nouns be known? | 7. What are Abstract Nouns? |
| 3. How are Nouns divided? | 8. What are Participial Nouns? |
| 4. What is a Proper Noun? | 9. What are Compound Nouns? |
| 5. What is a Common Noun? | |

9. Nouns are modified by Number, Gender, Person, and Case.

 NUMBER OF NOUNS.

Number is the distinction of one from more. Nouns have two numbers; the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The Singular Number speaks but of one; as, *man, horse, tree*; one *pen, one slate*, &c. The Plural Number speaks of more than one; as, *cows, horses, trees, men*; two *pens, three slates*.

1. The Plural Number of Nouns is regularly formed by adding *s* or *es*; as *lip, lips*; *pot, pots*; *fox, foxes*.

2. When the Singular ends in a sound which will unite with that of *s*, the Plural is generally formed by adding *s* only, and the number of syllables is not increased; as, *pen, pens*; *grape,*

grapes. But when the sound of *s* cannot be united with that of the primitive word, the Plural adds *s* to final *e*, and *es* to other terminations, which letters form a separate syllable; as *wage, wages*; *box, boxes*.

3. The terminations which always make the Plural in *es*, are *ch* soft, *sh*, *s*, *x*, *ss*, and *z*; as, *brush, brushes*; *church, churches*; *kiss, kisses*, &c., these and the following may be considered as irregular:—

1. Some Nouns ending in *o*, preceded by a consonant, take *es* in the Plural; as *wo, woos*; *hero, heroes*; *negro, negroes*; *potato, potatoes*. The first word is often made regular by the addition of *e*; as *woe, woes*; and the language would not be much violated if the rest so terminated.

2. Common Nouns ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *i*, and add *es* to form the Plural; as, *fly, flies*; *duty, duties*. Other Nouns in *y* add *s* only; as, *day, days*; *journey, journeys*; *attorney, attorneys*; *key, keys*; *money, moneys*. So also Proper Nouns; as the *Henrys*, the *Marys*, the *Tullys*, the *Livys*, the four *Georges*. The few Nouns ending in *i*, incline to the same rule; thus we write *alkali, alkalis*; while Proper Nouns take *s* only; as, “the two *Kimchis*.” The difficulty is to know whether such words as *Rabbit, Cadi, Mufti, Sophi*, &c., are to be written as Common Nouns, or as Proper. Are not *rabbies, cadies, mufties, sophies*, &c., their proper Plurals?

3. The following Nouns in *f* change *f* into *v* and *es* for the plural; *leaf, sheaf, beef, thief, elf, self, shelf, calf, half, loaf, wolf, wharf*; as, *leaves, sheaves*, &c. *Life, lives, knife, knives, wife, wives*, are similar. *Staff* makes *staves*; a puzzling and useless anomaly, both in form and sound, for the compounds of staff are regular; as, *flagstaff, flagstaves*; and *stave, staves* are in common use with a different meaning. All other Nouns ending in *f*, *fe*, or *ff*, take *s* only, and are regular.

4. The following Nouns are still more irregular:—*Man, men*; *woman, women*; *child, children*; *brother, brethren*, (to members of the same society, and *brothers* to the sons of the same parent); *foot, feet*; *ox, oxen*; *tooth, teeth*; *goose, geese*; *louse, lice*; *mouse, mice*; *die, dice*; *penny, pence*. *Dies*, stamps, and *pennies*, coins, are regular.

5. Some Nouns (from the nature of the things meant) have no plural; as, *gold, pride, meekness*; and also things that are weighed or measured, have no Plural; as, *meal, flour, rye*, except when the different sorts are intended; as, the *wines*, the *teas*, &c.

Some Nouns have no Singular, as *ashes, annals, bellows, bowels, antipodes, breeches, dregs, embers, entrails, clothes, folk, goods, ices, oats, literati, lungs, riches, scissiors, shambles, pains, tongs, victuals, vespers*.

Some Nouns are alike in both numbers; as *apparatus, congeries*.

corps, deer, hiatus, hose, means, news, odds, series, species, sheep, swine, vermin. We singularize them by saying, *a deer, a sheep, an apparatus, &c.*

4. Compounds admit but one variation to form the Plural, and that must be made in the principal word, in preference to adjuncts ; but where the terms differ little in importance, the genius of the language obviously inclines to vary the last only : thus, we write *fathers-in-law, sons-in-law, knights-errant, courts-martial*, varying the first ; and *handfuls, spoonfuls, mouth-fuls, fellow-servants, man-servants, camera-obscuras, queen-consorts, lord chancellors*, varying the last.

The Noun *means* is used both in the Singular and Plural Number. As Singular, when the mediation or instrumentality of one thing is implied ; as, *There is not a more effectual means to awaken in us zeal, &c.* Here the instrumentality of only one thing is implied. As Plural, when two or more mediating causes are referred to ; as, *He observed the means which were employed to counteract his project.*

News and *arms* are generally used in the Singular Number, but sometimes in the Plural.—*Pains* is generally Plural.

Pease and *fish* are used when we mean the species ; as, *pease* are dear, *fish* is cheap ; but when we refer to the number, we say, *peas, fishes* ; as, *ten peas ; six fishes.*

In some Nouns no change is made to denote plurality ; as in *stone*, (meaning weight) ; *sail*, (signifying ships) ; *stand*, (when applied to arms) ; *head*, (referring to cattle) ; *foot*, (infantry) ; *horse*, (cavalry) ; *brace, dozen, hundred, thousand, &c.* We cannot say, *five hundreds men*, or, *ten thousands soldiers* ; but *five hundred men, &c.* It is proper however, to say, *I saw hundreds of men at work ; The enemy mustered in thousands.*

5. Proper Nouns have the Plural when they are employed to describe more than one individual of the same name ; as, *the Wightmans, the two Mr. Jacksons, the Miss Marshalls.* In addressing letters, in which both or all are concerned, and also when the names of the parties, or of a firm, are different, we pluralize the title ; as, *the Misses Fosters ; Messieurs (or Messrs.) Chapman and Smith.* “We purchased the goods of the *Messrs. Barber.*” Here the titles constitute the *bases*,—the *names*,—the *adjuncts*. Again, *Paterson the father and Paterson the son* are two *Patersons*. They are both doctors. If we speak of them as *men*, we make the *name* the basis, and the title as adjunct ; thus, “I visited the two Doctor *Patersons.*” But if we speak of them as doctors, we make the

title the basis, and pluralize it, thus, "We employed Doctors J. and A. Paterson."

6. Many foreign Nouns retain their original Plural. In some the terminations *on* and *um*, are changed into *a*; in some the *is* into *es*; in some the *us* into *i*; in some the *a* into *ae*; and in some the *ex* or *ix* into *ices*; thus—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Amanuensis	amanuenses	Formula	formulæ
Analysis	analyses	Forum	fora
Animalculum	animalcula	Genius	genii, geniuses*
Antithesis	antitheses	Genus	genera
Apex	apices	Hypothesis	hypotheses
Aphelion	aphelia	Ignis-fatuus	ignes-fatui
Appendix	{ appendices appendixes	Index	indexes, indices†
Arcanum	arcana	Magus	magi
Asylum	asyla E	Mausoleum	mausolea
Automaton	automata E	Medium	media
Axis	axes	Memorandum	memoranda E
Bandit	banditti	Museum	musæ E
Basis	bases	Metamorphosis	metamorphoses
Beau	beaux	Monsieur	messieurs
Calculus	calculi	Nebula	nebulae
Calx	calces	Oasis	oases
Catachresis	catachreses	Parenthesis	parentheses
Cherub	cherubim E	Parhellen	parhelia
Colossus	colossi	Perihellion	perihelia
Convolvulus	convolvuli	Phasis	phases
Crisis	crises	Phenomenon	phenomena
Criterion	criteria	Polypus	polypi
Datum	data	Premium	premia E
Desideratum	desiderata	Proboscis	proboscides
Diæresis	diæreses	Radius	radii
Dogma	dogmata E	Sarcophagus	sarcophagi
Effluvium	effluvia	Stamen	†stamens, stamina
Ellipsis	ellipses	Seraph	seraphim E
Emphasis	emphases	Stimulus	stimuli
Emporium	emporia E	Stratum	strata
Encomium	encomia E	Thesis	theses
Ephemeron	ephemera	Tumulus	tumuli
Erratum	errata	Vertex	vertices
Focus	foci	Vortex	vortices
		Virtuoso	virtuosi

‡ Those which have E appended have the English Plural also.

* *Genii*, serial beings: *Geniuses*, persons of genius.

† *Indexes*, when it signifies Pointers, or Tables of contents: *Indices*, when referring to Algebraic exponents.

‡ *Stamens*, when used of flowers: *Stamina*, the solids of the human body

EXERCISE I.—ON NUMBER.

Write the Plurals of the following Words :—

Army, man, master, pot, woman, box, child, money, knife, attorney, bundle, candle, sheep, ox, chimney, a sea, toy, table, valley, branch, convenience, difficulty, ally, journey, wife, strife, sex, sheaf, potato, inch, loaf, story, enemy, foot, louse, tooth, goose, mouse, pea.

*Question the Pupil thus :—*What is the plural of *story*? *Stories*. Why? Because Nouns ending in *y* change *y* into *ies* in the Plural. What is the Plural of *money*? *Moneys*. Why? Because Nouns ending in a consonant preceded by a vowel, only add *s* in the Plural. What is the Plural of *church*, &c., &c.

EXERCISE II.—ON NUMBER.

Change the following Plural Nouns into the Singular.

Men, children, women, rocks, moneys, teeth, pence, oxen, mice, feet, lice, geese, brothers, dice, brethren, dies, peas, spoonfuls, sheep, cantos, tyros, loaves, lives, ladies, thieves, wolves, flagstaffs, knives, leaves, calves, cities, punctilios.

EXERCISE III.—ON NUMBER.

Correct the following Plurals :—

Bookes, folioes, calfs, knifs, monies, footmans, wives, loafs, foots, gooses, sheeps, ladys, leafs, halves, donkies, womans, tooths, mouses, attornies, echos, vallies, potatoes, soloes, chimnies, miserys, porticos, volcanos, journies, bandits.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What is meant by Number? 2. How many Numbers have Nouns? 3. How is the Plural Number regularly formed? 4. How do words ending in <i>ch</i> soft, <i>s</i>, <i>sh</i>, <i>x</i>, <i>ss</i>, and <i>z</i> form the Plural? And those which end in <i>of</i>--those which end in <i>y</i>, preceded by a consonant? 5. How do Nouns in <i>f</i> form the Plural? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. What Nouns have only the Singular? 7. What Nouns have no Plural? 8. Mention some of the Nouns which are alike in both Numbers. 9. How do Compounds form the Plural? 10. How have Proper Nouns the Plural? 11. How are the Plurals of Foreign Nouns formed? |
|--|--|

GENDER OF NOUNS

1. Gender is the distinction of sex. There are three Genders; *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

2. The Masculine Gender denotes animals and persons of the male kind ; as, *man, boy, horse, bull, dog.*

3. The Feminine Gender refers to animals and persons of the female kind, as *cow, duck, hen, woman, girl.*

4. Nouns which refer to neither males nor females are of the Neuter Gender, as, *tree, field, house, garden, gate.*

5. Some Nouns may be either Masculine or Feminine, and these are said to be of the *Common Gender*, as, *cousin, parent, friend, person, servant.* But the Gender of these is usually determined by the context ; and when it is not, they are properly regarded as Masculine.

REMARKS.

1. All those objects to which we apply the word *he* are Masculine ; and all those words to which we apply *she* are Feminine. Every other object is Neuter.

2. When speaking of a child, when the Gender is not known, we apply the Neuter Pronoun *it* ; thus, *It* is sick ; and so also of small and feeble animals ; Look at that bird ; how *it* flies.

3. By a figure of speech, called personification, inanimate objects are often represented as having sex, and as being either Masculine or Feminine ; as, when we say of a ship, *She* sails well ; her sails are unfurled ;—" *Earth* with her thousand voices ;" hence, " *Rome* is called the mistress of the world, of yore her eagle wings unfurled." See this exemplified in Rev. xviii, the whole of the chapter ; " *In her* was found the blood of prophets," &c., ver. 24. The Masculine is occasionally applied to the sun, the ocean, time, death, &c. We say of the sun, *He* is setting ; and of the moon, *She* is eclipsed.

Love is impersonated under the Masculine Gender as a playful mischievous boy. Thus Lodge in " *Rosalind's Madrigal* ;"

Love in my bosom, like a bee,
Doth suck *his* sweet ;
Now with *his* wings *he* plays with me,
Now with *his* feet.

There are three methods of distinguishing the sex.

1. By different words ; as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Bachelor	maid, spinster	King	queen
Beau	belle	Lad	lass
Boar	sow	Landlord	landlady
Boy	girl	Lord	lady
Brother	sister	Man	woman
Buck	doe	Master	mistress
Bull	cow	Master	miss
Bullock,	{ heifer, pr. hef-er	Militer	spawner
Ox, or Steer		Nephew	niece
Cock	hen	Papa	mamma
Colt	filly	Ram	ewe
Dog	bitch	Singer	{ songstress, or singer
Drake	duck	Sir	madam
Earl	countess	Sloven	slut
Father	mother	Son	daughter
Friar	nun	Swain	nymph
Gander	goose	Stag	hind
Hart	roe	Uncle	aunt
Horse	mare	Wizard	witch
Husband	wife		

2. By a different termination ; as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Abbot	abbess	Heir	heiress
Actor	actress	Hero	heroine
Administrator	administratrix	Hunter	huntness
Adulterer	adulteress	Host	hostess
Ambassador	ambassadress	Jew	jewess
Arbiter	arbitress	Landgrave	landgravine
Author	authoress	Lion	lioness
Baron	baroness	Marquis	marchioness
Bridegroom	bride	Mayor	mayoress
Benefactor	benefactress	Monitor	monitress
Caterer	cateress	Negro	negress
Chanter	chantress	Patron	patroness
Conductor	conductress	Peer	peeress
Count	countess	Poet	poetess
Czar	czarina	Priest	priestess
Deacon	deaconess	Prince	princess
Duke	duchess	Prior	prioress
Elector	electress	Prophet	prophetess
Emperor	empress	Protector	protectress
Enchanter	enchantress	Sempter	semptress
Executor	executrix	Shepherd	shepherdess
Founder	foundress	Songster	songstress
Governor	governess	Sorcerer	sorceress

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
ltan	{ sultaness	Tutor	tutoress
stator	{ sultana	Viscount	viscountess
ger	testatrix	Votary	votairess
aitor	tigress	Widower	widow
	traitress		

3. By prefixing another word ; as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
A cock-sparrow	A hen-sparrow
Pea-cock	Pea-hen
A he-goat	A she-goat
A man-servant	A maid-servant
A he-bear	A she-bear
Turkey-cock	Turkey-hen
A he-ass	A she-ass
A male-child	A female-child
Male-descendants	Female-descendants

EXERCISE I.—ON GENDER.

Point out the Genders of the following Nouns :—

The man. The woman. An eagle. A horse. The girl. A child. book. The father. The town, called Leeds. The truth. The are. A desk. An ox. The street. Goose. John has much wisdom. A good lad. A shop. A fine cow. The horse and the mare are in the field. The milk. A bull. My cousin. He is a good lad. gander and a drake. My niece and her aunt. My nephew and his sister. He is the Author. The sun rises, or he appears to do. When will the Great Eastern sail? To-morrow. Friend, servant, neighbour.

EXERCISE II.—ON GENDER.

What is the feminine of father, ram, gander, uncle, sir, stag, beau, cock, colt, son, drake, king, brother, lad, man, boar, bull, horse, husband, milster, dog, boy, buck, singer, mayor, peer, heir, count, governor, duke, actor, hero, marquis, giant, executor, sloven.

What is the masculine of slut, witch, songstress, niece, spawner, mistress, lass, roe, goose, nun, mother, countess, bitch, filly, heifer, sister, belle, maid, girl, ewe, priestess, patroness, heroine, chess, empress, abbess, actress, czarina, filly, sow, nun, witch, widow, hind.

QUESTIONS.

What is Gender?
How many Genders are there?
What does the Masculine Gender denote?
What the Female—and what the Neuter?

5. What is the Common Gender?
6. State how sex is personified.
7. How many methods are there of distinguishing the sex? and what are they?

CASE OF NOUNS.

1. The word *Case* expresses the condition of a Noun—the relation which it bears to some other word or words with which it is connected.

2. Nouns have three Cases; the Nominative, Possessive, and Objective. The Nominative Case *does* something; the Possessive Case *possesses* something; and the Objective Case has something *done* to it.

3. The *Nominative Case* simply expresses the name of a person, agent, or thing that does something; as, *James reads*. Here James is said to perform something. He *reads*. James therefore is the *agent* or *doer* of the Verb, *reads*. The agent or performer will be found, by asking, *Who reads?* The answer is, *James*;—James, therefore, is the Nominative to the Verb *reads*.

The Nominative Case, it is evident, denotes the Noun as the subject of a Verb; as, The *dog* runs; The *man* works. In these two sentences, *dog* and *man* are in the Nominative. Ask the questions, What runs? Ans. The *dog*: Who works? Ans. *Man*; therefore *dog* is Nominative to the Verb *runs*, and *man* is Nominative to the Verb *works*.

EXERCISE ON THE NOMINATIVE.

Point out the Nominative or Agent of the Verb.

The *boy* plays. (Ask the question, Who plays? Ans. *Boy*; boy therefore is the agent, or Nominative to the Verb plays). George teaches. The bird sings. The cock crows. My mother is kind. The pigeon flies. William speaks. The girls learn. The horses draw. The dog howls. The cat mews. George will go. The river overflows.

4. The *Possessive Case* denotes possession or

property, and is distinguished by an apostrophe (') with the letter *s* ('*s*') coming after it; as, *John's* hat; *My father's* house; *Cæsar's* sword.

In these sentences we speak of a hat, a house, and a sword, and of the persons to whom they belong; namely, to *John*, to my *father*, and to *Cæsar*. They are therefore in the Possessive Case.

5. When the Nominative Plural does not end in *s*, the Possessive is formed by adding *s*, and an apostrophe; as, men, men's; children, children's.

The Possessive Case is known by asking the question, *Whose?* Or, *To whom*, or, *To what does it belong?* Or by the words *of*, or *belonging to*; as, This is Samuel's slate. *Whose* slate is it? Ans. Samuel's. Therefore Samuel is in the Possessive Case. The slate *belonged to* Samuel. The *dog's* leg is hurt. The leg *of what* is hurt? Ans. The leg of the dog, or the dog's leg.

6. When the plural of a Noun ends in *s*, the Possessive is formed by adding only an apostrophe; as, The druids' club; On eagles' wings; I enjoyed my friends' hospitality.

7. Nouns ending in *ss*, and *nce*, add only the apostrophe in the Possessive; as, For *righteousness'* sake; for goodness' sake; for conscience' sake; justice' sake.

The omission of the *s* is to prevent an unpleasant hissing sound which is often produced when the Noun has an *s* in each of its two last syllables, and the Noun following it begins with *s*; but the mark of elision is retained; as, *My mistress'* shoes.

Some Nouns ending in *s* or *ss* should have an apostrophe and *s* added; as, *Miss's* shoes; *Queen Bess's* times; *Thomas's* shop; *James's* book.

When several Nouns follow each other successively, the apostrophic 's is added to the last Noun; as, It is my father, mother, and brother's desire that I should be learned. If other words intervene, the sign of the Possessive should be annexed to each; as, They are John's as well as Sarah's books.

EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE CASE.

1. Point out the Possessive Case.

John's hat is lost.—The men's labour.—A man's hand.—William's new book.—My mother's friend.—I enjoy a mother's tenderness, and a father's care.—Sweet is the nightingale's song.—Great are the effusions of Shakspeare's pen.—In spring we see the earth's fertility.—“Blessed are they who are persecuted for righteousness' sake.”—“Ask no questions for conscience' sake.”—My dog's collar.—“Ceres' golden reign.”—Fitz-James's blade was sword and shield.—Sacred be the heroes' sleep.—The bookseller's catalogue.—Cicero's Writings.

2. Write on your slate the Possessive Singular, and the Possessive Plural of the following Nouns:—

Bird, cow, lady, king, pigeon, man, horse, child, ship, brother, sea, sun, master, tooth, lion, mother, chimney, alderman, valley, scholar, minister, woman. The farmers field. The dukes estate. The rays of the sun. The peasant's cot. The marquis carriage. The laws of the nation. The writings of Caesar. The industry of the men.

3. Correct the following Errors:—

My sisters' book.—Thomas' shop.—Jame's sister.—The marquis's valet.—A mothers' tenderness and a fathers care.—The wine of Adam.—The hat of John; the parasol of Martha.—The dress of Mary.—The copybook of Richard.—Ladys' gloves.—Robert shop.—The bees sting.—The lions roar.

4. It is sometimes better to express the Possessive Case by *of*, and the Definite Article, than by the apostrophic 's; as, Knowledge's hill—should be, the hill of knowledge. Correct the following:—Austria's Emperor; London's Lord Mayor; Liverpool's trade; Socrates' wisdom; war's horrors; gold's crown; Haman, the Jew's enemy. A servant of the queen's. My friend's wife's sister.

8. The *Objective Case* is so called because it expresses the object upon which the action of the verb falls; as, “Science promotes happiness.” It generally follows *active verbs*. “Promotes” is an active verb; therefore, happiness is in the Objective Case. “Richard strikes John.” John is in the Objective Case, for John receives an action.

The boy whips a top. In this sentence, *boy* is the agent, or person who does something, namely, he, *the boy*, whips the top. The word *whips* shows the action which the boy performs—he *does* something, namely, *whips* the top. The word *top* is the object of the action expressed by the verb *whips*. It is the object to which something is done.

The Objective Case may be known by asking the question, *Whom?* or *What?* Thus, *Henry loves John.* *Whom* does Henry love? *John.* The word *John*, is therefore, in the Objective Case. *The farmer sows corn.* *What* does the farmer sow? *Corn.* The word *corn* is, therefore, in the Objective Case.

9. The Nominative Case and the Objective Case of Nouns are always alike, being distinguishable from each other only by their respective offices, in a sentence, or the simple dependance of each according to the sense.

EXERCISE ON THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

Select the Nouns that are in the Objective Case.

Richard threw a stone.—William reads his book.—I saw the tower.—Improve your mind.—I bought the horse.—Jane bought a bonnet.—I heard the sound of a gun.—It frightened my horse, and made the dog bark.—The boys kick the football.—The cow eats grass, and gives milk.—I love Henry.—Thomas assists Robert.—I gave sixpence to him.—The stone killed the bird.—I caught a fish.—I ate my dinner.—I drank my tea.—Richard, the mason, built the house.

The *Declension of a Noun* is a regular arrangement of its two Numbers, and its three Cases. Nouns are thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Father	Fathers	<i>Nom.</i>	Man	Men
<i>Poss.</i>	Father's	Fathers'	<i>Poss.</i>	Man's	Men's
<i>Obj.</i>	Father	Fathers	<i>Obj.</i>	Man	Men

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Friend	Friends	<i>Nom.</i>	Child	Children
<i>Poss.</i>	Friend's	Friends'	<i>Poss.</i>	Child's	Children's
<i>Obj.</i>	Friend	Friends	<i>Obj.</i>	Child	Children

Decline the following Nouns:—

Woman, man, mother, sister, brother, child, Edward, shoe, tree, field, violin, Europe, master, ship, cousin, England, uncle, lobster, garden, London, Samuel, bird, dog, cat, Mary, Jane, York, city, town, village, Ann, Martha, Homer, fender, foot, Edwin, Charles, Nelson, Norfolk, sea, tide, Chester.

REMARKS ON CASE.

Case is derived from *casus*, a fall. The Latin grammarians had six Cases, and represented the five last as falling or declining from the Nominative. Therefore, they called *telling the Cases*, declining a Noun. They call the Nominative the *direct Case* from *casus rectus*, while the others are named *casus obliqui*, or oblique Cases.

A Noun not dependent on any other word in construction, is in the *Independent Case*; as, "O Liberty!"—"Friends, Romans, countrymen!" Also names used to specify or define other names previously mentioned; as, "Paul the Apostle wrote to Timothy." Here *Paul* is the subject of "wrote;" hence in the Nominative Case; "Apostle" designates which "Paul" is intended; hence in the Independent Case.—"Webster, the statesman, has been mistaken by some foreign authors for Webster, the Lexicographer." Here the words "Statesman" and "Lexicographer" are used to *limit, define, and describe* the two "Websters."

PERSON OF NOUNS.

Person is a modification by means of which we distinguish the speaker, the hearer, and the person or thing merely spoken of. There are three Persons:—the First, Second, and Third Person.

The name of the person speaking or writing is of the First Person; as, "I, John, saw and heard these things;" "We, Athenians, are in fault."

The name of the person or thing addressed is of the Second Person; as, "*Edgar*, come to me."

"Father, thy hand
Hath reared these venerable columns; thou
Didst weave this verdant roof."

The name of the person or thing spoken of is of the Third Person; as, "My *sister* esteems me."


QUESTIONS ON CASE, &c.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What is meant by Case? 2. How many Cases have Nouns? 3. What does the Nominative express? 4. What does the Possessive denote? 5. How is the Possessive Singular formed? Also, the Plural? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. What does the Objective case express? 7. Which two Cases are alike? 8. How many Persons have Nouns? 9. Give examples of the different Persons? |
|--|--|

PARSE THE FOLLOWING NOUNS :—

To *parse*, means to resolve a sentence into the respective parts of speech, and to assign the reason for their relation to one another.

A boy.—The man.—An apple.—John's slate.—Robert broke a window.—The wind blows.—The carpenter saws wood.—The hatter makes hats.—Joseph keeps a horse.—Henry loves George.—The scholar's duty.—My father's house.—The boy reads his book.—The master teaches.—Bees suck flowers.—Birds build nests.—Dogs kill rats.—The children's friend.—Charles tore Mary's frock.—The ladies' cloaks.—The draper sent the ladies' gloves.—Dress often proclaims the man.—An empty vessel makes the greatest sound.—I love cheerfulness; it promotes health.—Adam gave names to all cattle.—He blew his bugle-horn.—A soft answer softens asperity.

 **PARSE THUS :—***A boy.* *A* is the Indefinite Article. *Boy* is a Common Noun, third person, singular number, and masculine gender, declined thus :—

Singular; Nominative, boy; Possessive, boy's; Objective, boy.

Plural; Nominative, boys; Possessive, boys'; Objective, boys.

Robert found the top.—Robert is a Proper Noun, Third Person, singular number, and masculine gender, declined thus :—Singular, Nom. Robert; Poss. Robert's; Obj. Robert; (*Proper Nouns have seldom a Plural*) Robert is the Nominative Case to the Verb, *found*; *found* is a Verb; *the* is the Definite Article; *top* is a Common Noun, third person, singular number, and neuter gender, declined thus :


Singular; Nominative, top; Possessive, top's; Objective, top.

Plural; Nominative, tops; Possessive, tops'; Objective, tops.

ADJECTIVES.

1. An Adjective* is a word joined to a Noun to express its quality, or limit its meaning; *good*, added to the Noun *boy*, will read a *good boy*. Thus we say, a *bad* boy, a *clever* man, a *fine* apple, *sweet* fruit. The words, *bad*, *clever*, *fine*, *sweet*, are therefore Adjectives, because they give a definition, or express the quality of the Nouns, *boy*, *man*, *apple*, *fruit*.

2. Adjectives convey no meaning till joined to Nouns; as, *bad*, *idle*, *white*, *great*, *amiable*, give but a faint idea of the sense; but to say, a *bad* man, an *idle* boy, a *white* gate, an *amiable* disposition, the sense is complete.

 Adjectives may be easily known. For instance, there are many hens in the farm-yard; some *white*, some *black*, some *speckled*, and there are *large* hens, and *small* hens, and *young* hens. I request you to go and catch a hen, but I want you to catch a *white* hen, and not only a *white* but a *young* and *large* one. You see therefore that I put to the Noun, the words *white*, *young*, and *large*, to qualify, and therefore these, and similar words, are called Adjectives—words that describe or qualify.

An Adjective may sometimes be known by its making a sentence with the addition of the word *thing*; as, a *good* thing; a *bad* thing. It also generally answers to the questions, *What* or *What sort*? as, What kind of a man? Ans. A *benign* man; therefore *benevolent* is an adjective. What sort of paper shall I use? Ans. A *fine* paper. *Fine* is an adjective.

EXERCISE I.

Point out the Adjectives, or write them on a Slate.

A kind man.—An obedient girl.—A new coat.—A bright
—An excellent discourse.—I bought the black horse.—I

* Adjective from the Latin, *ad*, to, *jactus*, thrown. Called Prepositional, or Ad-Nouns.

active and swift.—The flowers are fragrant.—The rain is plentiful.—Her conduct is good, and her learning proficient.—That school is celebrated.—The blunt knife.—A dutiful child.—An indulgent parent.—High in the heavens, the sun is brilliant.—The man is heroic.—The female is virtuous.—The soldiers were dauntless, and victorious.—O noble and invincible men!

EXERCISE II.

Supply the following Nouns with suitable Adjectives.

Ape, ant, art, apple, babe, bed, beggar, bell, beau, bear, bull, cat, coat, cow, camel, day, dale, dog, dungeon, eagle, fruit, fiddle, gun, goat, grass, hand, house, hare, ink, leg, lamb, mare, mouse, net, nut, owl, ox, pen, pit, pot, rat, sail, snake, snare, table, tune, war.

3. *A Verbal or Participial Adjective* is a word used to describe a Noun, by expressing a condition, state, or act; as, a *running* brook; a *standing* pond; *disputed* territory; *undoubted* fact; a *spoiled* child; a *well-balanced* mind.

4. Some Adjectives are varied to express *Comparison*. There are four Degrees of Comparison; the Positive, the Comparative, the Superlative, and the Diminutive.

The *Positive Degree* expresses quality in its simplest form, without a comparison; as, *large, good, pure, rich, bright*.

The *Comparative Degree* expresses an increase or a decrease of the Positive. It is commonly formed by adding *r* or *er* to the Positive Degree; as *bright, brighter*; *slow, slower*.

The *Superlative Degree* increases or lessens the Positive to the highest or lowest degree; as, the *sweetest* apple; the *strongest* man; the *largest* tree.

Some Grammarians use *less, least*, but the words come with greater propriety under the *Diminutive Degree*.

The *Diminutive Degree* denotes an amount of the quality less than the Positive. It is commonly

formed by prefixing *less* or *least*, or by adding to the form of the Positive; as, skilful, *less skilful*; salt, *saltish*; blue, *bluish*.

It will be clearly seen that Adjectives of one syllable are generally compared by adding *r*, or *er*, and *st*, or *est* to the Positive; as, *larger, largest; sweet, sweeter, sweetest*.

4. Most Adjectives of two or more syllables compared by prefixing *more* and *most*, or *less* and *least*, or *very* to the Positive; as *careful, more careful, most careful*, or *very careful, less careful, least careful*.

Some Adjectives may be compared either by adding *r*, *er*, *est*, or placing before them *more* and *most*; as *remote, remoter, most remote, more remote, most remote*.

If two Comparative Adjectives come together, one compared by *more*, and the other by *er*, to avoid a misapplication of the Comparative Adverb, the Adjective compared by *er*, should be placed first. "The new chancery court is roofed, and will, when completed, *more commodious*, and *handsomer* than the ancient one." *Handsomest* and *more commodious* would have been better.

By the use of other words, the degrees of comparison may be ordered indefinitely numerous. Example: Cautious,—*somewhat cautious—very cautious—unusually cautious—remarkably cautious—exceedingly cautious—too little cautious—incautious—quite incautious*.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly; as,

<i>Pcs.</i>	<i>Com.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Com.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Good	better	best	Late	later, latter	latest, lastest
Bad, evil	worse	worst	Hind	hinder	hindmost, hinderr
Little	less, lesser	least	In	inner	inmost, innermost
Many, much	more	most	Out	outer	outermost, utmost
Far	{ farther	farthest		under	undermost, undererr
Fore	{ further	furthest	Up	upper	uppermost, uperr
Old	{ former	foremost			
Near	{ elder	eldest			
Nigh	{ older	oldest			
	{ nearer	nearest			
	{ nigher	next			

Some Adjectives want the Positive; as, *under, undermost; after, aftermost; nether, nethermost*. "He was in the *after* part of the ship."

Some Adjectives want the comparison; as, *top, topmost*. "He sat upon the *topmost* round."

Some Adjectives cannot be compared—the qualities they indicate not being susceptible of increase or diminution; as *round, square, triangular, chief, prior, inferior, superior, ulterior, exterior, extreme, perfect, infinite, universal, yearly*.

Nouns are sometimes used as Adjectives; as, a *tin vessel, an iron pan, a gold box, a copper vessel*.

Some words are used both as Nouns and Adjectives; as a *Noun*, thus, "*That evil prevails*;" as an *Adjective*, thus, "*An evil practice*."

Proper Adjectives are those which are derived from proper names and nations; as, *English* from England, *French* from France, *Ciceronian* from Cicero, *Newtonian* from Newton, *Roman* from Rome.

Compound Adjectives consist of two or more primitive words; as, *common-place ideas, well-dressed men, nut-brown ale, milk-white steed, life-giving power, moon-lit sky, straw-thatched cottage, ivy-mantled tower*.

Dissyllables in *y*, change *y* into *i* before *er* and *est*; as, *merry, merrier, merriest*. But when a vowel precedes *y*, it is not changed into *i*; as, *gay, gayer, gayest*.

EXERCISE III.

Select the Positive, Comparative, Superlative, and Diminutive Adjectives from the following Sentences:—

A wise man.—John is wiser than Robert.—A fine day; the finest we have had this season.—An eloquent speech.—He is stouter than I am.—The victory was complete.—This sentence is more expressive than the other.—She is more affectionate than he is. Frederick has a more loving heart than Alfred.—This tree is high, but the other is higher.—Gold is more valuable than silver.—It is the most precious of metals.—The diamond is the hardest of gems.—Samuel is industrious, Charles more industrious, and Edward is most industrious.—Thou art happier than I am.—He is more sanguine than I am.—He has a silver inkstand.—An Equestrian statue.—He is an ill-faced man.—I received some Spanish cork.—An Æolian harp.—The Socratic school.—The German people.—The noblest monument of human genius.—The second speech was worse than the first.

EXERCISE IV.

Correct the following Errors.

This picture is prettier than the other.—I expect to see more happier times.—The most learnedest of men.—It is the worsser method.—She was the taller of the three.—Robert was the wisest of the two.—George got the lesser share.—Solomon was one of the most wisest men.—We must worship the Supremeest Being.—He is the most mildest boy I ever saw.—Sunday was more cold than Saturday.—Martha is a more healthier girl than Ruth.—Joseph is

the negligentest boy in the school.—My share is littler than yours, but Tom's is the littlest of the three.—Surely you are not more taller than I am.—The sheep is more gentler than the lion.—This bird is more livelier than the other.—It is the interestingest book that ever I read.—A more superior house.—James is the most wise.

QUESTIONS ON ADJECTIVES.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What is an Adjective? 2. How do you know an Adjective? 3. What is a Verbal or Participial Adjective? 4. How many degrees of comparison have they? Name them. 5. Which is the Positive degree—which the Comparative, &c. 6. How is the Comparative formed? 7. How is the Superlative, &c., formed? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. How are Adjectives of one, two, or more syllables compared? 9. What Adjectives are irregular in their formation? 10. Which are compared by adding more and most? 11. Mention some of those Adjectives which want the Positive, and some of those which cannot be compared. |
|--|--|

PRONOUNS.

1. A Pronoun* is a word which supplies the place of a Noun; as, "Robert is praised, because *he* is charitable;"† "He deserves praise."

Here *he* is used instead of the Proper Noun, Robert, to avoid its repetition. If there were no Pronouns in our language, we should be compelled to talk in the following very awkward manner:—

"*Joseph* went to the barn, where *Joseph* found three hens' eggs in a nest on the haymow; *Joseph* took the hens' eggs to *Joseph's* mother, and *Joseph's* mother told *Joseph* that *Joseph's* mother would make a custard for *Joseph*."

But instead of repeating *Joseph*, and *mother*, we use Pronouns, instead of those Nouns, thus:—

* *Pronoun*, Latin *pronomina*, of *pro*, for, and *nomina*, plural of *nomen*, a Noun or Name; meaning, a name for, or instead.

† The use of the Pronoun consists, not so much in supplying the place of a Noun, or other word, as in indicating a reference to that Noun or other word.

"Joseph went to the barn, where *he* found three hen's eggs in a nest on the haymow, *which* *he* took to *his* mother, *who* told *him* that *she* would make a custard for *him*."

2. The Noun for which any Pronoun is substituted is determined by the context, and, because it generally comes before the Pronoun, it is called its *antecedent*. The antecedent may be a *word*, a *phrase*, or a *sentence*; thus,

(1.) *A word*—"Reuben has injured *himself*; *he* has studied too much."

(2.) *A phrase*—"William's abandoning a good situation in hope of a better, was never approved by me. *It* has been the prime cause of all his troubles."

(3.) *A sentence*—"I am glad that Matthew has secured a liberal education. *It* is what few poor boys have the perseverance to accomplish."

3. There are four classes of Pronouns:—*Personal*, *Relative*, *Interrogative*, and *Adjective*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. Personal Pronouns are simply substitutes for Nouns that denote persons; as, *Richard* has lost his hat; *he* is trying to find *it*.

He stands for *Richard*, and *it* for *hat*.

2. There are five Personal Pronouns, namely, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*, with their plurals, *we*, *ye* or *you*, *they*.

Whenever one word is used in the place of another, it is properly subjected to the same laws as the other. This is the case with Pronouns. Hence,

3. Pronouns, like Nouns, have the same modifications of *Person*, *Number*, *Gender*, and *Case*.

They have two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural, and three Persons in each Number.

4. The *person who speaks* is the *first* person, the *person spoken to* is the *second* person, and the *person or thing spoken about*, or referred to, is the *third* person.

5. Pronouns have three Genders which belong only to the third person singular, *he*, *she*, *it*. *He* is masculine, *she* is feminine, and *it* is neuter.

6. Pronouns, like Nouns, have three Cases, and are thus declined :—

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.		
Person.	Gender.	Nom.	Poss.	Obj.	Nom.	Poss.	Obj.
1st.	m. or f.	I	mine	me	We	ours	us
2nd.	m. or f.	Thou	thine	thee	You	yours	you
3rd.	m.	He	his	him	} They	theirs	them
3rd.	f.	She	hers	her			
3rd.	n.	It	its	it			

7. A Compound Pronoun is formed by prefixing a Pronoun in the Objective Case, or an Adjective Pronoun to the word *self*, or *selves*; as, *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *itself*, *yourselves*, *themselves*. They are generally in the same case with the Noun or Pronoun to which they are joined; as, "I *myself* demand it." "The generals *themselves* were present."—*Self* used alone is a Noun; as, "We are all fond of *self*."

OBSERVATIONS ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. Some Grammarians assign to Personal Pronouns an "*Independent Case*." Pronouns in the Independent Case commonly take the form of the Nominative; as, "O happy *they*!"—"Ah, luckless *he*!"

"It is I." But they sometimes take the form of the Objective; as, "Him excepted."—"I found it to be him."—"Ah me!"

2. *Mine* and *thine* were formerly used, especially in Scripture, instead of *my* and *thy*, before a vowel, or an *h*; as, "Forgive *mine* iniquities." "Give me *thine* heart." They are occasionally used in poetry.

Ye is sometimes used for *you* in the Nominative; as, "*Ye* are ungrateful."

3. The Possessives, *mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, are used when the Noun to which they refer is understood; as, "Jane's bonnet is prettier than *mine*." "Your garden is more productive than *ours*."

These words, *mine*, *thine*, &c., are used to specify or otherwise describe Nouns and Pronouns; and when thus used they are *Adjectives*. They are placed here to denote their *origin*, and to accommodate such teachers as, by force of habit, are inclined to call them Pronouns in all conditions.

4. *Hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, should not be written with the apostrophe; as, *her's*, *it's*, *our's*, *your's*, *their's*.

5. The Pronoun, *it*, is often used indefinitely, and may have an antecedent of the first, the second, or the third person, of the singular or the plural number: and sometimes it has no antecedent; as, "*It* is I."—"Was *it* thou?"—"Is *it* you?"—"It was John."—"Was *it* the boys?"—"It snows."—"It blows."

It seems to point out a state of things, or the cause of any event or effect; as, "*It* rains:" what is it that rains? Not the *weather*, because the rain is a part of the weather itself; nor the *rain*, because the rain is the effect, and not the cause of raining; here *it* stands for a state of things; i. e. a state of things called rain exists.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Personal Pronouns.

I love my book.—I will not hurt thee.—I am Roderic Dhu.—That is your book.—It is not our book.—Hear me, I beseech you.—If you tickle us, do we not laugh?—My mother loves me, she is good to me.—I love her, for she deserves it.—Thou art careless.—Is this thy work?—Ye lofty hills, I see you once again.—The servant is esteemed by us.—He is faithful; and we esteem him.—She is handsome.—I admire her.—He was glad to find his dog.—It was also glad.—It wagged its tail.—Thou art the man, I charge thee.—Thy thanks to him are due.—They saw him die; he made no sign to them.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following:—

John went into the kitchen, where John found John's hat, and John put John's hat on.—The man is indebted to the man's talents for the man's great success.—When George comes back, George will

tell us strange tales.—George has written, saying, that George would soon return.—Robert promised his father that Robert would be diligent at school, that Robert might receive Robert's father's approval.—Ann made Ann's own gown.

EXERCISE III.

Tell the *Person, Number, Gender, and Case* of the Pronouns in Exercise I.

EXERCISE IV.

Write the following Pronouns in the *Possessive Case* :—

They, thou, I, you, we, me, it, him, thee, us.

✎ From the *Possessive* change them into the *Nominative*, and then into the *Objective Case*.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What is a Personal Pronoun? | 6. How many Persons have they? |
| 2. For what words are they substitutes? | 7. Which of the Persons have Gender? |
| 3. How is the substitution determined? | 8. How many cases have Pronouns? Name them. |
| 4. How many classes of Pronouns are there? | 9. Define the different Persons? |
| 5. How many Personal Pronouns are there? | 10. What is a Compound Pronoun? |

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Relative Pronouns* relate to some Noun, Pronoun, or Phrase going *before* it, which is called its *antecedent*; as, "The man *who* met us."

Here the word *who* is a Pronoun, relating to the Noun, *man*, and is therefore called a *Relative Pronoun*, because it *relates* to it. *Antecedent* means a word which goes before a Pronoun; *man*, therefore, is the *antecedent*. "The bird *which* I caught is beautiful." The word, "*which*," relates to the Noun, *bird*. Therefore *which* is a *Relative Pronoun*, and *bird* is its *antecedent*.

2. The words used as *Relative Pronouns* are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*, and their compounds, *whoever*, or *whosoever*, *whichever*, or *whichever*, *whatsoever*, or *whatsoever*. *That* is a relative only when it

can be changed into *who* or *which*; as, "The boy *that* plays."

3. *Who* relates to Persons; as, "The man *who* sells." *Which* relates to animals and things; as, "The cow *which* gives milk." *That* relates to persons, animals, and things; as, "This is the tree *that* bears fruit."

4. *Who* is varied in declension to indicate the Cases only. *Which*, *that*, and *what*, are not declined. But the word *whose* is also used as the Possessive of *which*.

Nominative, Who	Possessive, Whose*	Objective, Whom
„ Which	„ Whose	„ Which

5. *What*, when used as a Relative Pronoun, is always compound; and is equivalent to *that which*, or the *thing which*; as, "Diligence and perseverance accomplished just *what* he desired."

"Our proper bliss depends on *what* we blame." Here "*what*" is a Compound Relative, equivalent to the two words, *that which*. *That* the antecedent part, is the object of "*on*;" "*which*," the Relative part, is the object of "*blame*." The auxiliary sentence, "*we blame which*," is used to qualify "*that*." *Whoever* and *whatever* also are compounds; as, "Whoever did it; did wrong;" that is, the *person who* did it, &c. "Whatever thy hand findeth to do," &c; that is, *that which* thy hand findeth to do, &c.

6. The Interrogative Pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *what*, being the same in form as Relatives. By them we ask questions; as, *Who* spake? *Which* is my share? *What* will please him? *Whose* field is that?

* *Whose* is always a definitive, attached to Nouns, and may relate to persons or to things; as, "*Whose* I am, and whom I serve."—" *Whose* body nature is, and God the soul."

REMARKS ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

That is a Demonstrative Pronoun when it is placed immediately before a Noun, expressed or understood; as, "*That* field is green;" "*That* is not the book I want."

That is a Conjunction when it cannot be turned into *who* or *which*; when it marks an effect, an indication, a final result; as, "He was so vain, *that* he was generally despised;" "Live well, *that* you may die well."

The particle *as* is sometimes, by ellipsis, used as a Relative Pronoun; as, "Such *as* I have, give I unto thee;" that is, "I give unto thee such [things] *as* [those things *which*] I have." "Let *such as* reprove sin, be godly themselves;" that is, "Let those persons *who* reprove," &c. The word *than* is sometimes so used; as, "We have more *than* heart could wish;" that is, "We have more [things] *than* [those things *which*] heart could wish."

EXERCISE I.—ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Select the Relative Pronouns and their Antecedents:—

The man who digged.—This is the garden which I admire.—The mason who erected the mansion.—The person whom I esteem is absent.—The dog which I lost.—He is the freeman whom the truth makes free.—A place whose dust is gold.—The man who was heroic.—For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged.—He whom you loved is no more.—That is a splendid park whosoever it may be.—Ye stars, which brilliantly shine.—A mountain, whose height made me dizzy.—Whoso has this world's goods.—Whoever has done this, shall be punished.—I got what I wanted.—Whatever he wants, let him have.—Whomsoever he sends will be rejected.—You may take whichever book you like.—Whosoever will, let him come.

EXERCISE II.

Supply the Relative Pronouns wanting in the following sentences:—

Has Robert done—I told him to do? The book—was lost. This is the book—I lent. The girl—is surly. —pens are these? Live well,—you may die well. The mason—built that house, and —you know. The stone—he has used, is good. —boots are these? —will be saved, may be saved. —you do, do it heartily. The tree—was cut down. In—shape he lurks, I will know. Milton says, "At once came forth—creeps."

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors:—

Is this the boy of which you speak?—It was George that did it.—I found the book whom was lost.—The man and the dog which I saw.—Whom do men say that I am?—One of the idlest whom I ever saw.—The court who condemned him.—You that have health should preserve it.—The boy which reads.—Those which

love us we should respect.—He which is discreet.—The stone whom the builders refused.—The moon who had an halo.—My father which brought me up.—Who is angry without a cause is unjust.—She is happy and well who I know.

EXERCISE IV.

Substitute the Relative Pronoun, that, for who or which; and the Antecedent and Relative for what:—

The book which is mine.—The man who broke the window.—I did what I told you.—The apples which he gave me were ripe.—Relate what you saw.—The food which I eat is wholesome.—This is what he wrote.—This is the coat which he made.—The beggar whom I relieved is an impostor.—Perform what I told you.—Do not utter what he said.—The top which I have is a good one.—Observe what I say to you.—The horse which I rode is lame.—

EXERCISE V.

*Parse the following:—*A good boy who reads.—The sly fox that steals.—A good top which.—The handsome horses which.—The birds that.—The bad dog that.—The foolish men whom.—The cow that.—The men and horses that.

Example of Parsing:—"A good boy who reads."—A is the indefinite article. "Good" is an Adjective, positive state, compared thus:—positive, good; comparative, better; superlative, best. Good qualifies the Noun, boy. "Boy" is a Common Noun, masculine gender, third person, singular Number, Nominative Case. "Who" is a Relative Pronoun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, agreeing with its Antecedent, boy, in number, person, and gender.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What are Relative Pronouns? | 7. When do they become Interrogative Pronouns? |
| 2. Which are the Relative Pronouns? | 8. When is <i>that</i> a Demonstrative Pronoun, and when a Conjunction? |
| 3. How are <i>who</i> , <i>which</i> , and <i>that</i> used? | 9. How is the word <i>as</i> used as a Relative Pronoun? |
| 4. State the relation of such Relatives? | 10. Does the same use apply to <i>than</i> ? |
| 5. How is <i>who</i> declined? | |
| 6. What kind of a Relative is <i>what</i> ? | |

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. An *Adjective Pronoun* is a Definite Word, used to supply the place of the word which it

limits. It has partly the property of an Adjective, and partly that of a Pronoun.

Example.—"Some [] said one thing, and *some* another" [].

Here "*some*" defines *people* (understood), and is used Adjectively. It is substituted for the word "people," constituting the subject of the sentence; hence it is used Substantively. But the Substantive office being the principal office, the word is properly called a Pronoun. Its secondary office being Adjective, it is properly called an *Adjective Pronoun*.

2. Adjective Pronouns are divided into four classes, namely, the *Possessive*, the *Distributive*, the *Demonstrative*, and *Numeral*.

(1.) The *Possessive* Adjective Pronouns relate to possession or property. They admit of Person and Number, thus;—

1st PERSON	Singular	My	Plural	Our
2nd DO.		Thy		Your
3rd DO.		His, her, its		Their

Own is added to Possessives, both Singular and Plural, to express emphasis and opposition; as, *My own* affairs; I live in *my own* house; that is, not in a *hired house*. *Self* is added to Possessives; as, *myself*, *thyselves*, *ourselves*, &c.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Possessive Adjective Pronouns.

I got your letter.—He lost his hat.—My opinion is the same.—Their afflictions are heavy.—His voice is still for war.—Our country is desolated.—He is troubled with his own thoughts.—Peace to thy wounded spirit.—Dare to draw your swords.—Her people are gone; her palaces are crumbling.—Thy disease is incurable.—I visited his country and marked its fertility.—It exceeds my country.—Witnessed ye their grief?—Our prospects are good.

(2.) The *Distributive* Adjective Pronouns denote things taken separately; they are *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*; as, *Each* boy attends to his book; *every* scholar is taught; *either* of these two girls; *neither* book will suit.

Although *each* and *every* seem to be nearly allied in their meaning, *they are not so in their application*, for *EACH* may be spoken of as re-

ferring to *one* of *two*, as well as to *one* of a larger number ; but **EVERY** must refer to *several*, yet all of them are referred to, and spoken of, as taken separately and singly. **EITHER** can be applied only to *one* of *two* things.

(3.) The *Demonstrative* Adjective Pronouns precisely point out the subjects to which they relate ; they admit of Number ; as, **SINGULAR** *This, that* ; **PLURAL** *These, those*.

This relates to the nearest person or thing, and *that* to the more distant ; as, "*This* boy is more intelligent than *that*." *This* indicates the last-mentioned ; *that* the first-mentioned ; as, "Both wealth and poverty are temptations ; *that* tends to excite pride ; *this*, discontent."

Remember, (as previously stated) *that* is a Conjunction when it cannot be converted into *who*, *whom*, or *which* ; and *that* is an Adjective Pronoun when it goes before and is connected with a Noun ; *that* is a Relative Pronoun when it can be construed into *who*, *whom*, or *which*.

EXERCISE II.

Select the Distributive, and the Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns.

The four beasts had each of them six wings.—Each of us must remain.—This is the place of rest.—Must I submit to all this reproach?—Every one of us must give an account.—This field is more fruitful than that.—And through the valley, on either side, a wood ; each had beautiful foliage.—Yon beautiful stars.—Neither would begin the attack.—This is true heroism ; that is only pretence. Each arrow's destructive flight.—Either of you may have the house.—Neither of you shall go.—Every one of them was at fault.—See yon active boy.—These are snares.—This dazzles me.—These fascinate me.

(4.) The *Indefinite* Adjective Pronouns express their subjects in an unlimited manner. They are *all, any, both, few, many, much, one, none, other, another, one another, each other, several, some, such, whole*.

Each other, one another, may be called Reciprocal Pronouns, because they denote the action of different agents each on the other. They are declined like Nouns.

One is sometimes an Adjective Pronoun, as, "*One* man was killed." Here *one* indicates how many were killed; it therefore limits the Noun *man*; it may be regarded as of the *Numeral class*. It is also used as a Noun, and in the Possessive Case; as, "*One* ought to pity the distressed;" "*One* is apt to love *one's* self."

Other and one are thus declined:—

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Other	Others	|	<i>Nom.</i>	One
<i>Poss.</i>	Other's	Others'	|	<i>Poss.</i>	One's
<i>Obj.</i>	Other	Others	|	<i>Obj.</i>	One
					Ones

* A mother cares for her little ones.

§ Each other, one another, another, may be declined in the same way.

Yon, former, and latter, like *this* and *that*, may be called *Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns*.

All the *Indefinite Adjective Pronouns* (except *none*), and even the *Demonstrative, Distributive, and Possessive*, are *Adjectives* belonging to Nouns either expressed or understood; and in parsing they ought to be called *Adjectives*.—*None* is used in both Numbers; but it cannot be joined to a Noun. The phrase *none other* should be *no other*.—*Another* has no Plural.

(5.) *Numeral Adjective Pronouns* are used to denote *Number*. They may thus be classified:—

The *Cardinal Numbers* are, One,—two,—three, four,—five,—six,—seven,—eight,—nine,—ten, &c. From the first three are formed the *Adverbs*, once,—twice,—thrice.

The *Ordinal Numbers* are, First,—second,—third,—fourth,—fifth,—sixth, &c.,—thirteenth, &c., twentieth,—twenty-first, &c.,—hundredth,—thousandth,—millionth. From these are formed *Adverbs* of Order, as, firstly,—secondly, &c.

Multiplicative.—Single—double—triple—quadruple—two-fold—three-fold, &c.

Indefinite.—Few—many—some (denoting number.)

A and *an*, when they denote number, are to be classed as Numeral Adjective Pronouns; as,

"Not a drum was heard, nor a funeral note."
 "Not an instance is on record."

EXERCISE III.

Select the Indefinite and the Numeral Adjective Pronouns.

Depart, all of you.—The child is four years old.—We saw several of the soldiers.—The seventh day.—One dozen is twelve.—I heard the voice of another.—Bear one another's burdens.—This is the third time I have asked you.—Other people are the same.—He has left his wealth to others.—Will any of you stand by me? None.—Few are my friends; many my foes; yet some pity me.—I had two staunch friends; alas! both are dead! I feel it much.—Be just to others, as you wish others to be just to you.—Some must watch while others sleep.—Is there no help? Soldier, none; not a single guard will come.—The drops of gore fell one by one.—Victoria the First now reigns; the successor of William the Fourth. He could not find a single foe.—A three-fold cord.—This is the first of May.—This pen is worth nothing at all.—But I have ten good ones.—Give me a penny.—For proof, give me an instance, if you can find one.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What is an Adjective Pronoun? | 7. State how <i>this</i> and <i>that</i> are used; and when <i>that</i> is a Conjunction, or a Relative Pronoun, or an Adjective Pronoun? |
| 2. Into how many classes are Adjective Pronouns divided? Mention them. | 8. What is an Indefinite Adjective Pronoun? |
| 3. What is a Possessive Adjective Pronoun? | 9. What is a Numeral Adjective Pronoun? |
| 4. How are <i>own</i> and <i>self</i> used? | 10. Repeat the Cardinal, Multiplicative, and Indefinite. |
| 5. What is a Distributive Adjective Pronoun? | |
| 6. What is a Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun? | |

EXERCISE I.

Select the Adjectives, which are Qualifying, Demonstrative, or Specifying, and Verbal; which can be compared, and how; which are Possessive, Indefinite, Distributive, and Numeral:—

Able	False	That	Standing
Bold	Good	Three	Loving
Capable	His	Tenth	Admonished
Doubtful	Honest	Twice	Unknown
Eager	Infinite	Several	Your
Earnest	Just	Some	Grecian
Every	This	Forgotten	Hearing

EXERCISE II.

Select the Adjectives, Nouns, and Pronouns, and name their classes and modifications. Give a reason for the Classification and Modification of each.

Good scholars secure the *highest* approbation of *their* teachers.—
 —Some men do not give their children a proper education.—A trifling accident often produces great results.—An ignorant rich man is less esteemed than a wise poor man.—The richest treasure modern times afford, is, a spotless reputation.—My crimes forgive; remember mine iniquities no more.—This is our portion; that is yours.—This hat is mine; and the other is thine.—My own hand wrote it; blame not yourselves.—He himself shall do it.—Neither John nor James was successful; the former was spiritless; the latter was too sanguine.—The great ones of the earth.—Some are happy, others are miserable.—None is so deaf as he that will not hear.—None that go unto her return again.—None of their works are extant.

EXAMPLE I.

Select the Adjectives, Nouns, and Pronouns, &c., &c.

"These dim vaults, these winding aisles, of human pomp or pride, report not."

These Describes "vaults;" hence an Adjective—for a word used to qualify, or otherwise describe a Noun or Pronoun, is an Adjective.

" Specifies, or points out; it is therefore a Specifying or Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun.

Dim Qualifies "vaults;" hence an Adjective—for a word used to qualify, or otherwise describe a Noun or Pronoun, is an Adjective.

" Expresses a quality; hence Qualifying—for a word used to describe a Noun by expressing a quality, is a Qualifying Adjective.

Vaults Is a name; hence a Noun—for a Noun is the name of any person, animal, place, or thing.

" Name of a sort or class; hence Common; for a Name that is used to designate a class or sort of beings, places, or things, is a Common Noun.

" Spoken of; hence Third Person; for the Name of a person or thing spoken of, is of the Third Person.

" Denotes more than one; hence Plural.

" Subject of the Sentence; (the Subject is "vaults") hence the Nominative Case—for the Subject of a Sentence is in the Nominative Case.

Winding Describes "aisles;" hence an Adjective—for a word to qualify or otherwise, &c.

" Describes by expressing a condition; hence Verbal; for a word used to describe a Noun by expressing incidentally a condition, state, or act, is a Verbal Adjective.

Aisles.....The same as Vaults.

Human.....Describes "pomp," or "pride;" hence an Adjective; for a word used to qualify, &c.

Pomp, Pride.....Names; hence Nouns—for a Noun is the name of any person, animal, place, or thing.

" Name of a sort or class; hence Common—for a Noun that is used to designate a class or sort of beings, places, or things, is a Common Noun.

" Spoken of; hence Third Person; for the name of a person or thing spoken of, is of the Third Person.

" Denotes one; therefore "pomp" and "pride" are Singular.

Pomp and Pride ..are the Object of the Preposition, *of*; hence in the Objective Case.

It will be profitable to repeat the Definitions until they become familiar.

EXAMPLE II.

"No fantastic carvings show
The boast of our vain race, to change the form
Of thy fair works."

		Class.	Per.	Num.	
No	is an Adjective	Specifying	—	—	limits "carvings."
Fantastic	„ Adjective	Qualifying	—	—	qualifies "carvings."
Carvings	„ Noun	Common	Third	Plural	Nom. to "show."
The	„ Def. Article	Specifying	—	—	limits "boast."
Boast	„ Noun	Common	Third	Sing.	Object of "show."

It The Teacher will abridge or extend these exercises at pleasure.

Let four sentences be made, each containing the word "*good*," so that, in the first, it will qualify the Subject—in the second, the Object—in the third, the Object of a phrase attached to the Subject—in the fourth, the Object of a phrase attached to the Object.

In like manner, use the words *amiable—honest—industrious—wise—virtuous—useful—loving—loved*. Thus,—

EXAMPLE.

1. That *amiable* young lady was at the lecture.
2. We saw her *amiable* manners.
3. The benefits of an *amiable* disposition are numerous.
4. She possesses the advantage of an *amiable* temper.

ADJECTIVE PHRASES AND SENTENCES.

REMARK.—Things may be described not only by *Words*, but also by *Phrases* and *Sentences*, as under ;—

Adjective Phrases.—1. The *TIME* of my departure is at hand—that is, my *departing* time.

2. Night is the *TIME* for rest—or *resting* time.

3. Turn, gentle *HERMIT* of the vale—that is, *vale* hermit.

Adjective Sentences.—1. *HE* that getteth wisdom loveth his own soul—that is, a *wisdom* getter.

2. Mount the *HORSE* which I have chosen for thee—that is, a *chosen* horse.

3. *THOU*, whose spell can raise the dead,
Bid the prophet's form appear.

THOU is qualified by the Sentence in *Italics*; ask, What kind of a person is he who is represented by the Pronoun, "thou?" He is a person "whose spell can raise the dead;" that is his character, or qualification.

 VERBS.

1. A Verb is a word which expresses *action*, *being*, or *state*; as, "The man *saws* wood;" "George *is loved*;" "My father *sleeps*;" "I *sit* in my chair."

As all things *live*, *move*, or *have a being*, we necessarily have a class of words used to express the *act*, *being*, or *state* of these things. These words are called Verbs. The word Verb (*Latin*, *Verbum*) signifies the word. It is the vital principle—the moving power of a sentence. The Chinese call Verbs *live words*, and Nouns *dead words*.

2. Without a Verb we cannot make a single sentence, nor even a single proposition. "William—to the barn." We must supply the Verb *went* before we can express the idea intended.

DIRECTIONS FOR KNOWING VERBS.

A Verb expresses *action* of any kind, and also a *state* of any kind; as, "*Martha instructs her sister.*" Here it is *declared* that Martha does something to her sister. What act does Martha perform? She *instructs*. *Instructs* therefore is a Verb, because it means doing something; it declares an *action*.

A Verb expresses a *state*; as, George *is* unwell. Here we declare something concerning George, expressive of his *state*; he *is unwell*.

Every action which man's body can do, and receive, is a Verb:—*The head*;—it shakes, aches, nods, bows, wags. All these words are Verbs, because they express an action, or a state.

The eyes;—they see, look, gaze, observe, inspect, stare, open, shut, weep, wink. All these words are Verbs, because they express an *action* or *state*.

The ears hear, ring, listen, ache. These words are Verbs.

The nose smells, scents, snuffs, sneezes. These words are Verbs.

The mouth eats, tastes, speaks, opens, shuts, blows, spits, groans. All these words are Verbs.

The arms and *hands* stretch, embrace, open, touch, feel, write, strike, work, shake, fold, grasp, close, slap, box, beckon.

And so every part of the body *can give or receive an action, or be in a certain state*. *The blood* circulates, runs, flows, stops, congeals. *The teeth* grind, chew, masticate, decay, and become few. *The legs* support, carry, walk, run. And *the whole body* lives, acts, moves, grows, decays, dies, and is buried. *All these words are Verbs, because they express action and state*.

Every action of which the *mind* is capable is a Verb; as, I *think*, *reflect*, *conceive*, *study*, *love*, *hate*, *approve*, *regret*, *condemn*, *envy*, *desire*, &c., &c.

Verbs make sense with the pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, we, they, it*; as, I *sit*, thou *standest*, he *walks*, she *sews*, we *run*, they *come*; it *is* true.

Ask, What action has a fire? It *burns*, *glows*, *parches*, *dries*, *scorches*, *blasts*, *consumes*, &c.

Ask the same concerning water, lightning, rain, frost, the

sea, a ship, a horse, a cow, a lion, a man, &c., &c. Every answer will express a *Verb*.

3. Verbs are divided into classes—*Transitive*,* and *Intransitive*.†

4. A *Transitive Verb* expresses an action which passes over to an object; as, He *teaches* the boy; I *wrote* a letter; She *drank* coffee.

In these sentences, *He, I, she*, are the Agents, or the Actors, and the words, *teaches, wrote, drank*, are Verbs, because they express action, or the doing of something. These Verbs express actions which pass over to the Objects, *boy, letter, coffee*.

5. An *Intransitive Verb* is a Verb which expresses the being or state of its Subject, or an action which does not terminate on an Object; as, Animals *run*—I *sit*.

Some Verbs are used transitively or intransitively; as, Cold *blows* the wind.—The wind *blows* the dust.—It has *swept* through the earth.—Jane has *swept* the floor.—God *moves* in a mysterious way.—Such influences do not *move* me.

6. Intransitive Verbs have two forms; the *Active* and the *Neuter*.

An *Active Intransitive Verb* denotes action confined to the subject; as, I *run*; they *walk*.

A *Neuter Intransitive Verb* expresses neither action nor suffering, but being, or a state of being; as, I *am*; He *rests*; He *is*; God *exists*.

The *Neuter Verbs* are—*appertain, be, become, belong, exist, lie, rest, seem, sleep*.

7. *Transitive Verbs* have two *Voices*, the *Active* and the *Passive*.

The *Active Voice* represents the subject as performing an action; as, Columbus *discovered* America.

* *Transitive* means passing over. † *Intransitive* means not passing over.

The *Passive Voice* represents the subject as being acted upon; as, *America was discovered* by Columbus.

Observation 1. The same fact may commonly be expressed by either the Active or the Passive form; as, *William assists Charles*;—Or, *Charles is assisted by William*.

"William," the Subject of the Active Verb, becomes the Object of "by," when the Verb becomes Passive; and "Charles," the Object of the Active Verb, becomes the Subject or Agent of the Passive.

Obs. 2. A Transitive Verb becomes Passive by combining the Verb *to be*, in its various modifications, with a Participle of the given Verb; thus,—

Active.—To see I love They praise Man serves
Passive.—To be seen I am loved They are praised God is served.

Obs. 3.—Most Transitive Verbs may take the Passive form;—as,
We laughed at his clownish performance.—(*Active Intrans.*)

His clownish performance was laughed at.—(*Passive.*)

Obs. 4. A Verb taking the Passive form becomes grammatically intransitive. The action is directed to no object. The Subject, or Agent, receives the action.

Obs. 5.—Few Intransitive Verbs take the Passive form.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Verbs from the following Sentences:—

I see thee.—*I am he.*—*She calls me.*—*I praise him.*—*They blame me.*—*The horse eats hay.*—*The cow is in the field.*—*He drives the horse.*—*William is loved, and he loves.*—*The dog has bitten me.*—*I have received a gift.*—*I gave him a penny.*—*The moon shines.*—*The cat mews.*—*John is instructed.*—*I am flattered.*—*The bird sings.*—*He saws the wood.*—*He weeps; she laughs.*—*I rest.*—*I sit.*—*I lie in bed.*—*I will correct the boy.*—*George is esteemed.*—*His father was respected.*—*Be silent.*—*I make no noise.*—*Send him away.*—*He is willing to go.*—*So am I.*—*Then, depart, both of you.*—*Joseph writes a letter.*—*The dog bit the cow.*

EXERCISE II.

From the above Sentences, select the Transitive, and the Intransitive Verbs.

EXERCISE III.

From the above Sentences select the Active, Passive, and Neuter Verbs.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. What is a Verb? | 8. What is an Intransitive Verb? |
| 2. How do you know a Verb? | 9. How many forms have Intransitive Verbs? Mention them. |
| 3. Into how many classes are Verbs divided? Mention them. | 10. What is an Active Intransitive Verb? |
| 4. What is a Transitive Verb? | 11. What is a Neuter Intransitive Verb? |
| 5. How many Voices have Transitive Verbs? Mention them. | 12. Mention the Neuter Verbs. |
| 6. What is meant by the Active Voice? | |
| 7. What is meant by the Passive Voice? | |

MODIFICATIONS OF VERBS.

VERBS have four kinds of Modifications; 1. Mode; 2. Tense; 3. Person; 4. Number.

MODE.

Mode denotes those forms which the Verb assumes in order to express the *manner** in which an action or state is expressed. Verbs have five Modes;—1. The Indicative; 2. The Imperative; 3. The Potential; 4. The Contingent†; 5. The Infinitive.

The Participle is a certain form of the Verb having the properties of the Verb, the Adjective, and the Noun.

1. Verbs in the *Indicative Mode* simply indicate, assert a fact, or ask a question; as, "*Robert*

* Latin, *modus*.

† Usually called *Subjunctive Mode*, meaning that it is subjoined to the Indicative Mode. The word *Contingent* is far more compatible with the nature of that Mode, which is conditional, suppositional, or *contingent*.

teaches ;" " God *created* the heaven and the earth ;" " Whence *come* wars ?"

2. A Verb in the *Imperative Mode* is used to command or entreat ; as, " *Come* to me ;" " *Let* us go ;" " If he repent, *forgive* him."

3. A Verb in the *Potential Mode* implies power, will, or obligation of its Subject to do or suffer an action ; as, *I may go* ; You *might have gone* ; John *should study* ; Mary *can learn* ; It *could not be done*.

The words which may be regarded as signs of the *Potential Mode*, are, ~~may—might—can—could—must—shall—should—will—would~~, either alone, or followed by the word, *have*.

4. A Verb in the *Contingent Mode* expresses doubt, uncertainty, supposition, or condition, as, If he *repent*, forgive him ; If I *were* there ; Unless they *remain*.

If, though, unless, and other Conjunctions, are commonly used with the Contingent Mode. But they are not always to be regarded as the signs of this Mode, for they are also used with the Indicative and the Potential ; as, " If the boat *goes* to-day, I shall go in it." The *condition* expressed by " *If the boat goes*," is assumed as a fact—hence " *goes*" is in the Indicative Mode.

5. A Verb in the *Infinitive Mode* is not limited to any particular subject ; it has generally *to* before it ; as, *To learn* ; *to love* ; *to enjoy* is *to obey*.

PARTICIPLES.

1. A Participle* is a word derived from a Verb, and retaining the signification of its Verb, while it also performs the office of some *other part of speech*.

* From the Latin *participio*, to partake, compounded of *partis*, (partis,) a part, and *capio*, to take.

In the three sentences, 1. Birds *sing*, 2. Birds *are singing*, 3. *Singing* birds delight us, the word "*sing*" in Example 1, is a Verb, asserting an act of birds. In Example 2, "*singing*" is derived from the same Verb, and with the aid of the Auxiliary Verb "*are*," it makes the same assertion. In Example 3, "*singing*" does not assert, but it assumes the same act. The same signification remains in the three words, while they perform different grammatical offices.

2. Participles, as Derivative Words, are formed from their Radicals, commonly by the addition of *d* or *ed*; as,

Bebeingbeen——Lovelovingloved
Havehavinghad——Walkwalkingwalked

3. Verbs have severally three Participles; the *Present*, the *Past*, and the *Compound*.

1. The *Present Participle* ends in *ing*, and indicates a present act, being, or state; as, *Being, having, loving, calling, walking*.

When the Participle is used with a Verb, the time is indicated by the Verb, and may be *Present, Past, or Future*; as, I am writing letters.—I was writing letters.—I shall be writing letters.

The *Present Participle* is commonly *Active* in signification; as, "*A falling leaf*;" "*Scaling yonder peak, I saw an eagle, wheeling near its brow*."

(2.) The *Past, or Perfect Participle* denotes a completion of the act, being, or state; as, *been, gone, written, loved, respected*.

The *Past Participle* may be used with a Verb indicating time, *Present, Past, or Future*.

Example.—*Present*.—I am loved William is seen

Past.—I was loved William was seen

Future.—I shall be loved William will be seen

The *Past or Perfect Participle* is commonly *Passive* in signification; as, "*Injured reputation*"—"Lost opportunity"—"*Truth crushed to earth, will rise again*."

(3.) The *Compound Perfect Participle* implies a previous completion of the act, being, or state;

as, having been—having gone—having written—having been called.

The Past or Perfect Participle, preceded by the Auxiliary Verb *having*, is used Actively; as, *Having loved—Having lost a day—Having seen* the elephant, he was satisfied.

Preceded by the Auxiliary *being*, or *having been*, the Past Participle is used Passively; as, *Being loved—Having been censured* for misconduct.

4. Participles sometimes become Nouns, Adjectives, Adverbs, Prepositions, &c. as under:—

1. Noun *Singing* is a pleasing exercise.
William maintains a fair *standing* in society.
2. Adjective A *running* brook—a *standing* tree.
Behold the goose *standing* on one foot.
3. Adverb 'Tis *strange*; 'tis *passing strange*.
The task was *exceedingly* difficult.
4. Preposition ... I speak *concerning* Christ and his church.
Nothing was said *touching* that question.
5. Conjunction ... *Seeing* we cannot agree, let the discussion cease.
6. Exclamation *Shocking! Astonishing!*

~~§~~ A Participle used as a Preposition must be Transitive; as, I told you *concerning* him.—As a Conjunction or Adverb, the Participle must be Intransitive; as, Why should he stay, *seeing* the climate is uncongenial?—A virtuous household, but *exceeding* poor.

TENSES.

1. *Tense** is a modification of Verbs denoting the relation of *time*. There are six Tenses.

Tense is used for *time*, and is formed either by the variation which the single Verb undergoes, or by the combination of two or more words.

Properly speaking, there are only *three* Tenses, the *Present*, *Past*, and *Future*; yet they are subdivided into three more; the *Perfect*, the *Prior Perfect*, and the *Future Perfect*.

2. The *Present Tense* denotes an action, or event,

* *Tense*, from the French *temps*, Latin *tempus*, time.

now passing, or some circumstance or property now existing; as, *Eliza reads*.—*Helen is writing*.—*Emily may write* that letter.

This is the simplest form of the Verb.—The sign *do* is used to denote *intensity*—to give *emphasis*—and in asking questions; as, *Do you hear the bell?*

3. The *Past Tense* denotes an action, as past, or finished; as, *I saw* a rabbit.—*I wrote* you a letter. *We walked* to our house.—*David loved* Jonathan.

4. The *Perfect Tense* represents an action or event as completed, yet connected with the present time; as, *I have completed* my task.—*John has returned*. *I have been teaching* him.

Have, hast, and has, are the signs of this Tense.

5. The *Prior Perfect Tense* denotes an action or event which was past before another action or event took place; as, *I had already expressed* my opinion.—*We had already walked* to Bristol.—*I had been reading* the news when the letter arrived. *Had* is the sign of this Tense.

6. The *Future Tense* denotes a future time when an action, an event, or a circumstance is likely to be performed, or to transpire; as, *James will return* to-morrow. *I shall see* him.

Shall and will are the signs of this Tense.

7. The *Prior Future Tense* denotes that some action will be finished, at, or before the time of another future action or event. *I shall have sailed* before he arrives.—*She will have finished* the dress before I go.

Shall have and will have are the signs of this Tense.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Verbs and Participles.

I wrote.—Thou art reading.—James may recite.—Clara can study.—Joining the multitude.—Accustomed to study.—He has left his work.—He is willing to be taught.—The teacher said, Retire.—Let me go.—I shall not be seen.—I shall have done before you return.—I had not finished my lesson.—Jesus wept; behold, how he loved him.—I am envied, but I wish to forgive.—I had praised him before he deserved it.—I had finished my letter before I dined.—They will have been gone three weeks.—I have sold my horse.—I fear I shall regret it.—I wish I had not been so hasty.—I am blamed.—By endeavouring to please all, we fail to please any.

EXERCISE II.

State the Mode and Tense of each Verb in Exercise I.

MODEL OF SELECTING VERBS, &c.

"In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth."

- Beginning** Is a *Participle*, from the Verb *begin*;—used here as the Name of an event; hence it is a Verbal Noun.
- Created** Asserts an act of "God;"—Active Verb, because the act passes to objects (heaven and earth.)—simply declares; hence Indicative Mode—denotes a particular time past; hence, Past Tense.

*"The surging billows and the gamboling storms
Come crouching to his feet."*

- Surging** Is a *Participle*, from the Verb *surge*—used here to describe "billows;" hence, a Verbal Adjective.
- Gamboling** Is a *Participle*, from the Verb *gambol*—used here to describe "storms;" hence a Verbal Adjective.
- Come** Asserts an act of "billows" and "storms," hence, a Verb—has no object; hence, Intransitive—simply declares; hence, Indicative Mode—denotes time present; hence, Present Tense.
- Crouching** Is a *Participle*, from the Verb *crouch*—used here to modify the act expressed by "come;" (it describes the *manner of coming*;) hence an Adverb.

PERSON OF VERBS.

Verbs have three *Persons*—first, second, and third, corresponding with the three-fold distinction in Personal Pronouns.

Verbs have three Persons in *each number*; as,

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

I Pers.	2 Pers.	3 Pers.	|	1 Pers.	2 Pers.	3 Pers.
I rule,	thou rulest,	he rules.	|	We rule,	you rule,	they rule.

Str Strictly speaking, the distinction of Person belongs only to the Pronouns themselves.

As stated before, the party speaking is called the First Person; as, *I learn*; *we learn*. The party spoken to is called the Second Person; as, *Thou learnest*; *you learn*. The party spoken of is called the Third Person; as *He learns*; *she learns*, *they learn*.

The Second Person Singular is formed from the first, by adding *est*, or *st*; and generally the Third Person Singular is formed from the first by adding *s*; as, *I love*, *he loves*. Some Verbs take *es*; as, *I go*, *he goes*.

NUMBER OF VERBS.

Verbs have two Numbers, Singular and Plural, attributed to them, to correspond with the two-fold distinction in Personal Pronouns.

Number is known by its Nominative Case; as, *The boy learns*; *the boys learn*.

In the first sentence, the Nominative, *boy*, is Singular, because only *one* boy is spoken of. In the second sentence, the Nominative is Plural, because *more* than one boy is mentioned. Plural Nouns generally end in *s*; but it is not so with Verbs. A Singular Verb generally ends in *s*; but a Plural Verb has no *s*.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. How many Modifications have Verbs?</p> <p>2. What is meant by Mode, and how many Modes are there? Mention and define each.</p> <p>3. What is a Participle?</p> <p>4. How are Participles formed?</p> <p>5. How many Participles has a Verb?</p> <p>6. What does the Present Participle indicate?</p> | <p>7. What the Past, the Perfect, and the Compound Perfect?</p> <p>8. What do Participles sometimes become?</p> <p>9. What is Tense?</p> <p>10. Describe the Present, Past, &c. Tense.</p> <p>11. How many Persons have Verbs?</p> <p>12. How many Numbers have Verbs?</p> |
|--|--|

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

1. The Conjugation* of a Verb is a regular arrangement of its Modes, Tenses, Persons, Numbers, and Participles.

2. Verbs are distinguished as *Regular*, *Irregular*, *Defective*, and *Auxiliary*.

(1.) *Regular Verbs* form their Past Tense, and their Perfect Participle, by adding *ed*, or *d* only, when the Verb ends in *e*; as under,—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
I love	I loved	loved
I work	I worked	worked

(2.) *Irregular Verbs* do not form their Past Tense, and their Perfect Participle, by the addition of *ed* or *d*; as,—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
I lie	I lay	lain
I give	I gave	given

* From the Latin, *CON*, *together*, and *JUNCTIO*, *joining*, making *joining together*.

(3.) A *Defective Verb* is one that is not used in all its Modes and Tenses; as,—

Present.—Can, have, may, must, ought, shall, will.
Past.—Could, had, might, — ought, quoth, should, would.

(4.) An *Auxiliary*, or *Helping Verb*, is used in forming such Tenses as the Verb cannot form of itself; as,—

Always } *Present*.—Can, may, must, shall.
 Auxiliaries. } *Past*.—Could, might, — should.

Sometimes } *Present*.—Am, be, do, have, will.
 Principal Verbs. } *Past*.—Was, was, did, had, would.

They are Principal Verbs when they are not attached to other Verbs; as, "I am well;" "The sky is red;" "I have a horse."

3. An *Impersonal Verb* has not a *Person* as its Nominative; it only declares the existence of some action or state, represented by the Pronoun *it*, third person, which becomes the Nominative to the Verb; as, *It* lightens; *it* thunders; *it* hails; *it* rains.

REMARKS.

Let is an Active Verb, and complete. *Ought* is an independent Verb, though defective, and always governs another Verb in the Infinitive.

Be, with its various modifications, is used before a Perfect Participle to indicate the *Passive Voice*.

Can, *may*, *must*, *shall*, (used to command) and *will* (signifying volition) indicate the Present Tense of the Potential Mode.

Could, *might*, *should*, and *would*, are the signs of the Past Tense Potential.

Do	is used in the	Present tense,	Indicative	Emphatic Form
Did	" "	Past Tense	"	"
Have	" "	Perfect Tense	"	"
Had	" "	Prior Perfect Tense.		
May have	" "	Perfect Tense, Potential		
Might have	" "	Prior Perfect Tense, Potential.		
Shall or will	" "	Future Tense, Indicative and Contingent.		

The future and the Prior Future Tense are placed in the Indicative Mode, in conformity to the general custom of Grammarians. A strict regard to uniformity and consistency would place them with their kindred in the Potential Mode. For,

The "Indicative Mode" is that form of the Verb used to *indicate* or *assert* an act, being or state." Now a thing *future* may be predicted, but cannot be declared or asserted. We may declare a *purpose* or make a *prediction*. So may we declare the *possibility* of an act, or the *obligation* to perform an act. But these are done by a modification of the Predicate called the *Potential Mode*.

In the Sentence, "*I shall go*," we have asserted a prediction of an act.
 " " "*I may go*," we have asserted a probability of an act.
 " " "*I can go*," we have asserted a possibility of an act.
 " "*I should go*," asserts obligation to perform an act.
 " "*I might go*," asserts liberty to perform an act.
 " "*I could go*," asserts power to perform an act.

Neither of the above assertions declares the performance of an act. They assert "*probability, power, will, or obligation*," but no actual event.

The Potential Present and Past alike assert a *present* probability, prediction, possibility, &c. of a *future* act or event :—

"I shall go if I choose,"	} All refer to a future act.
"I may go if I will,"	
"I can go if I will,"	
"I should go if I were invited,"	
"I might go if I were invited,"	
"I could go if I were invited,"	

As *must* will not admit of the *Objective* after it, nor is even preceded or succeeded by the sign of the *infinitive*, it has been considered an absolute Auxiliary, like *may* or *can*, belonging to the Potential Mode.

4. The Conjugation of an Active Verb is called the *Active Voice*; and that of a Passive Verb, the *Passive Voice*.

5. The Auxiliary Verbs are conjugated in the following manner :—

TO DO.

This Verb is sometimes a principal Verb in the sense of acting or labouring, &c. ; as, *I do well* ; *I did good* ; *they did wrong* ; that is, I act well ; I performed good deeds ; they acted wrong.

It gives to an Active Verb the *Emphatic Form*; as, *I do love you; I do suffer: I did run*. It also expresses negation in familiar conversation; as, *I do not like it; I do not love; I did not love*. It prevents repetition; as, *Do you invite me? I do; that is, I do invite you.—Did you love; I did; that is, I did love*. It is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past. Tense.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Do	Did	Done

INDICATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1 I do		1 We do
2 Thou dost		2 You do
3 He, she, or it does or doth		3 They do
<i>Singular.</i>	PAST TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1 I did		1 We did, &c.
Thou didst		

CONTINGENT MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1 If I do, &c		1 If we do, &c.
<i>Singular.</i>	PAST TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1 If I did, &c.		1 If we did, &c.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
2 Do thou	2 Do ye or you

INFINITIVE MODE.

To Do.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Doing	Done or being done

WILL AND SHALL.

These Auxiliary Verbs are used in the Present Tense with the root of a principal Verb, to denote futurity, or to form a future *Tense for the Verb*; as *I will write; Thou wilt write, &c.*

Will and shall. "Perhaps the best popular explanation of the general rule may be expressed as under :

- | | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--|---------------|--------------|
| 1. I } will, | You } shall, | \| | 2. I } shall, | You } will. |
| We } will, | He } shall, | | We } shall, | He } will. |
| | They } shall, | | | They } will. |

The form 1, is used to express futurity dependent on the will of the speaker, as, *I will pay, You shall pay, He shall pay.* The form 2, is used to express futurity not dependent on the will of the speaker, as, *I shall die, You will die, He will die.*

Originally it is likely that *shall* was always used (as it often is in our translation of the Bible and other old books,) to express simple futurity ; and *will*, to express futurity dependent on the will, not of the speaker, but of the person whether speaker or not. This last use is retained where the *will* is emphatic, as, *He will pay, although he is not bound.*"—*Irish Grammar.*

The past Tense is used with the root of the Verb to form a Future Tense referring to a condition ; as, *I would write if I could ; He would write if he were permitted.* The future writing depends on a condition, which condition not being fulfilled, the writing will not be done. Its Past Tense conveys the idea of a future which is now past. Hence the phrases, *I say that I will go,* and, *I said that I would go,* run parallel to one another : *I would go,* having the same relation to *I said that I will go* has to *I say,* that is, the relation of futurity. It is conjugated thus :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRESENT, Will

PAST, Would

INDICATIVE MODE.

Singular.

PRESENT TENSE.

Plural.

- 1 I will or shall
- 2 Thou wilt or shalt
- 3 He will or shall

- 1 We will or shall, &c.

Singular.

PAST TENSE.

Plural.

- 1 I would or should
- 2 Thou wouldst or shouldst

- 1 We would or should, &c.

CONTINGENT MODE.

Singular.

PRESENT TENSE.

Plural.

- 1 If I will or shall, &c.

- 1 If we will or shall, &c.

Singular.

PAST TENSE.

Plural.

- 1 If I would or should, &c.

- 1 If we would or should, &c.

May, which implies, to have liberty, also contingency ; *Can*, which expresses power and ability, are conjugated in the same way.

TO HAVE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present,—Have—*Past*,—Had—*Present Participle*,—Having—
Perfect Participle,—Having had.

INDICATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
First Per. I have		1. We have
Second Per. Thou hast, or *you have		2. You or yet have.
Third Per. He, she, or it hath or has		3. They have

<i>Singular.</i>	PAST TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I had,		1. We had,
2. Thou hadst,		2. You had,
3. He had.		3. They had.

<i>Singular.</i>	PERFECT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I have had,		1. We have had,
2. Thou hast had, or you have had,		2. You have had,
3. He has had.		3. They have had.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I had had,		1. We had had,
2. Thou hadst had,		2. You had had,
3. He had had.		3. They had had.

<i>Singular.</i>	FUTURE TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall or will have,		1. We shall or will have,
2. Thou shalt or wilt have,		2. You shall or will have,
3. He shall or will have.		3. They shall or will have.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRIOR FUTURE TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall &c. have had,		1. We shall have had,
2. Thou shalt have had,		2. You shall have had,
3. He shall have had.		3. They shall have had.

* You has always a Plural Verb, even when it is applied to a single person.

Thou is used only in the solemn style, and in addressing the Deity.

† *Ye* is seldom used except in the solemn style.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.

2. Have, or have thou, or do thou have.

Plural.

2. Have, or have you, or do you have.

The Imperative Mode is not strictly entitled to *three* persons. The command is always addressed to the *second* person, not to the first or third. For when we say, Let me have, let him, or let them have, the meaning is, *do thou*, or *do you*, let me, him, or them have.

POTENTIAL MODE.

Singular.

PRESENT TENSE.

Plural.

1. I may or can have,
2. Thou mayst or canst have,
3. He may or can have.

1. We may or can have,
2. You may or can have,
3. They may or can have.

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

1. Might, could, would, or should have,
2. Mightst, couldst, &c., have,
3. Might, could, &c., have.

Plural.

1. Might, could, would, or should have,
2. Might, could, &c., have,
3. Might, could, &c., have.

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. May or can have had,
2. Mayst or canst have had,
3. May or can have had.

Plural.

1. May or can have had,
2. May or can have had,
3. May or can have had.

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. Might, could, would, or should have had,
2. Mightst, &c., have had,
3. Might, &c., have had.

Plural.

1. Might, could, would, or should have had,
2. Might, &c., have had,
3. Might, &c., have had.

CONTINGENT MODE.

Singular.

PRESENT TENSE.

Plural.

1. If I have,
2. If thou have,
3. If he have.*

1. If we have,
2. If you have,
3. If they have.

* The remaining tenses of the Contingent Mode, are, in every respect, similar to the correspondent tenses of the Indicative Mode, with the addition to the verb, of a conjunction, expressed or implied, denoting a condition, motive, wish, supposition, &c.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT, To have,

PERFECT, To have had.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Having,

PAST, Had.

PERFECT, Having had.

THE IRREGULAR VERB "TO BE."

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES., *Am*,PAST, *was*,PRES. PAR. *being*,PER., PAR. *been*.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

1. I am
2. } Thou art
- } You are
3. He, she, or it is

Plural.

1. We are
2. } Ye are
- } You are
3. They are

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

1. I was,
2. Thou wast,
3. He was..

Plural.

1. We were,
2. You were,
3. They were.

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. I have been,
2. Thou hast been,
3. He has been.

Plural.

1. We have been,
2. You have been,
3. They have been.

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. I had been,
2. Thou hadst been,
3. He had been.

Plural.

1. We had been,
2. You had been,
3. They had been.

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

1. I shall or will be,
2. Thou shalt or wilt be,
3. He shall or will be.

Plural.

1. We shall or will be,
2. You shall or will be,
3. They shall or will be.

PRIOR FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

1. Shall or will have been,
2. Shalt or wilt have been,
3. Shall or will have been.

Plural.

1. Shall or will have been,
2. Shalt or wilt have been,
3. Shall or will have been.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
2	} Be thou, or		} Be ye, or, Do ye be,
	} Do thou be.		} Be you, or Do you be.

POTENTIAL MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I	may or can be,	1. We	may or can be,
2. Thou	mayst or canst be,	2. You	may or can be,
3. He	may or can be.	3. They	may or can be.

PAST TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Might,	&c. be,*	1. Might	be,
2. Mightst	be,	2. Might	be,
3. Might	be.	3. Might	be.

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. May	or can have been,	1. May	or can have been,
2. Mayst	or canst have been,	2. May	or can have been,
3. May	or can have been.	3. May	or can have been.

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Might	have been,	1. Might	have been,
2. Mightst	have been,	2. Might	have been,
3. Might	have been.	3. Might	have been.

CONTINGENT MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. If I	be,	1. If we	be,
2. If thou	be,	2. If you	be,
3. If he	be.	3. If they	be.

PAST TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. If I	were,	1. If we	were,
2. If thou	wert,	2. If you	were,
3. If he	were.	3. If they	were.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT, To be.

PERFECT, To have been.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Being.

PAST, Been.

PERFECT, Having been.

* See Conjugation of "To have," the same Mode and Tense.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Auxiliary Verbs.

He is idle.—I am hungry.—You can come.—James may ride.
 —She would not hear me.—Will George be there?—Thou must depart.—If I go, will you stay?—I have it.—I will send the boy.
 —He might have been successful, had he regarded my advice.—Did you hear the story?—He was lost, and could not find his way back.—Cease to do evil; and learn to do well.—Let him go, and you will have peace.—Do not insult me.—They have been saved.
 —I have heard him.—God has given you much to enjoy.—If I forgive you be thankful.—My project may be deluding me.—He must be making his fortune.—He certainly is.—I wish I was.—Will you shake hands with me?—O Lord, do thou preserve my life.
 —If he shall neglect to hear them, they must appeal to the church.—You should do that.—Will you do so?

EXERCISE II.

Select the Modes and Tenses of the Verbs in Exercise I

EXERCISE III.

Select the Present, the Past, and the Perfect Participles.

Having a book, he was content.—Having had kind patrons, he is rich.—Being rich, he can be liberal.—I was then writing.—While I was lamenting his absence he came.—I have reflected.—Having been patronized, he might well succeed.—My bleeding country.—He is doing it.—He has done it well.—He has learned it. He is working in the field.—I have written the book.—Have you been good?—She is sewing.

EXERCISE IV.

Repeat the First Person Singular of each Mode and Tense of the following Verbs:—

Am, arise, begin, blow, come, cut, do, drink, eat, fly, go, hold, know, lay, lie, make, neglect, need, owe, ought, practise, purchase, quiet, qualify, receive, reject, select, touch, use, wish.

Repeat the Third Person Plural of the same.

EXERCISE V.

Supply the following Verbs wanting.

Now the shades of night gone.—The bell's deep tones swelling.—The palace wrapped in flames.—How my heart smitten.—Every thing misplaced.—Science raise thee to eminence.—But I alone guide thee to felicity.—

*AT Supply two Auxiliaries:—*John not gone to the river.
 —We finished our task at five.—How we reconciled?—The boy injured by it.—Who thought it?—You fatigued.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. What is meant by the Conjugation of Verbs? | 5. What is a Defective Verb? |
| 2. How are Verbs distinguished? | 6. What is an Auxiliary Verb? |
| 3. How are Regular Verbs formed? | 7. What is an Impersonal Verb? |
| 4. What is an Irregular Verb? | 8. Describe the Active and the Passive Voice. |

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs, (as stated before) do not form their Past Tense and their Perfect Participle, by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the Present Tense.

The following are the Irregular and the Redundant Verbs of the English language.

✱ Those marked with a star (*) are not much used by modern writers.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Abide	abode	abiding	abode
Am or be	was	being	been
Arise	arose	arising	arisen
Awake	awoke or awaked	awaking	awoke or awaked
Bear	bore or bare	bearing	born
Bear, <i>to sustain</i> }	bore or bare	bearing	borne
Beat	beat	beating	beaten or beat
Begin	began or begun	beginning	begun
Behold	beheld	beholding	beheld
Belay	belayed or belaid	belaying	belayed or belaid
Bend	bent or bended	bending	bent or bended
Bereave	hereft or bereaved	bereaving	bereft or bereaved
Beset	beset	besetting	beset
Beseech	besought or beseeched*	beseeching	besought or beseeched*
Bet	bet or betted	betting	betted or bet
Betide	betided or betid*	betiding	betided or betid*
Bid	bade or bid	bidding	bidden or bid
Bind	bound	binding	bound
Bite	bit	biting	bitten or bit
Bleed	bled	bleeding	bled
Blend	blended or blent	blending	blended or blent
Bless	blessed or blest	blessing	blessed or blest
Blow	blew or blowed	blowing	blowed or blown

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Break	broke	breaking	broken
Breed	bred	breeding	bred
Bring	brought	bringing	brought
Build	built or builded*	building	built or builded*
Burn	burned or burnt	burning	burned or burnt
Burst	burst or bursted*	bursting	burst or bursted*
Buy	bought	buying	bought
Cast	cast	casting	cast
Catch	caught or catched*	catching	caught or catched*
Chide	chid	chiding	chidden or chid
Choose	chose	choosing	chosen
Cleave	clove or cleft	cleaving	cloven or cleft
Cleave	clave or clove	cleaving	cleaved or cloven
Cling	clung	clinging	clung
Clothe	clothed or clad	clothing	clothed or clad
Come	came	coming	come
Cost	cost	costing	cost
Creep	crept or creeped*	creeping	crept or creeped*
Crow	crowed or crew	crowing	crowed
Curse	curled or curst	cursing	curled or curst
Cut	cut	cutting	cut
Dare	dared or durst	daring	dared or durst
Deal	dealt or dealed*	dealing	dealt or dealed*
Dig	dug or digged*	digging	dug or digged*
Dive	dived	diving	dived
Do	did	doing	done
Draw	drew	drawing	drawn
Dream	dreamed or dreamt	dreaming	dreamed or dreamt
Dress	dressed or drest	dressing	dressed or drest
Drink	drank	drinking	drunk
Drive	drove	driving	driven
Dwell	dwelt or dwelled*	dwelling	dwelt or dwelled*
Eat	ate or eat	eating	eaten or eat
Fall	fell	falling	fallen
Feed	fed	feeding	fed
Feel	felt	feeling	felt
Fight	fought	fighting	fought
Find	found	finding	found
Flee	fled	fleeing	fled
Fling	flung	flinging	flung
Fly	flew	flying	flown
Forbear	forbore	forbearing	forborne
Forget	forgot	forgetting	forgotten
Forsake	forsook	forsaking	forsaken
Freeze	froze or freezed*	freezing	frozen or freezed*
Geld	gelded or gelt*	gelding	gelded or gelt*
Get	got	getting	got or gotten
Gild	gilded or gilt	gilding	gilded or gilt
<i>Gird</i>	<i>girded or girt</i>	<i>girding</i>	<i>girded or girt</i>
<i>Give</i>	<i>gave</i>	<i>giving</i>	<i>given</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Go	went	going	gone
Grind	ground	grinding	ground
Grow	grew	growing	grown
Hang	hung or hanged	hanging	hung or hanged
Have	had	having	had
Hear	heard	hearing	heard
Heave	heaved or hove	heaving	heaved or hoven
Hew	hewed	hewing	hewed or hewn
Hide	hid	hiding	hidden or hid
Hit	hit	hitting	hit
Hold	held	holding	held or holden*
Hurt	hurt	hurting	hurt
Keep	kept	keeping	kept
Kneel	kneeled or knelt	kneeling	kneeled or knelt
Knit	knit or knitted	knitting	knit or knitted
Know	knew	knowing	known
Lade	laded	lading	laded or laden
Lay	laid or layed*	laying	laid or layed*
Lead	led	leading	led
Leap	leaped or leapt	leaping	leaped or leapt
Leave	left	leaving	left
Lend	lent	lending	lent
Let	let	letting	let
Lie	lay	lying	lain
Light	lighted or lit	lighting	lighted or lit
Lose	lost	losing	lost
Make	made	making	made
Mean	meant or meanted*	meaning	meant or meanted*
Meet	met	meeting	met
Mow	mowed	mowing	mowed or mown
Mulct	mulcted or mulct*	mulcting	mulcted or mulct*
Outdo	outdid	outdoing	outdone
Pass	passed or past	passing	passed or past
Pay	paid or payed*	paying	paid or payed*
Plead	pleaded or pled	pleading	pleaded or pled
Prove	proved	proving	proved or proven
Put	put	putting	put
Quit	quitted or quit	quitting	quitted or quit
Read	read	reading	read
Rend	rent	rending	rent
Rid	rid	ridding	rid
Ride	rode	riding	rode or ridden
Ring	rung or rang	ringing	rung
Rise	rose	rising	risen
Rive	rived	riving	riven or rived
Rot	rotted	rotting	rotten or rotted
Run	ran or run	running	run
Saw	sawed	sawing	sawn or sawed
Say	said	saying	said
See	saw	seeing	seen

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Seek	sought	seeking	sought
Sell	sold	selling	sold
Send	sent	sending	sent
Set	set	setting	set
Shake	shook or shook*	shaking	shaken or shaken*
Shape	shaped	shaping	shaped or shapen
Shave	shaved	shaving	shaved or shaven
Shear	sheared	shearing	sheared or shorn
Shed	shed	shedding	shed
Shine	shined or shone	shining	shined or shone
Show	showed	showing	showed or shown
Shoe	shod	shoeing	shod
Shoot	shot	shooting	shot
Shred	shred	shredding	shred
Shrink	shrank or shrank	shrinking	shrank
Shut	shut	shutting	shut
Sing	sung or sang	singing	sung
Sink	sunk or sank*	sinking	sunk
Sit	sat	sitting	sat
Slay	slew	slaying	slain
Sleep	aslept	sleeping	aslept
Slide	alid	aliding	alidden or alid
Sling	alung	alinging	alung
Slink	alunk or alank	alinking	alunk
Slit	alitted or slit	alitting	alitted or slit
Smell	smelled or smelt	smelling	smelled or smelt
Smite	smote	smiting	smitten or smit
Sow	sowed	sowing	sowed or sown
Speak	spoke or spake	speaking	spoken
Speed	sped	speeding	sped
Spell	spelled or spelt	spelling	spelled or spelt
Spend	spent	spending	spent
Spill	spilled or spilt	spilling	spilled or spilt
Spin	spun or span	spinning	spun
Spit	spit or spat*	spitting	spit or spitten
Split	split	splitting	split
Spoil	spoiled or spoilt	spoiling	spoiled or spoilt
Spread	spread	spreading	spread
Spring	sprung or sprang	springing	sprung
Stand	stood	standing	stood
Stave	stove or staved	staving	stove or staved
Stay	stayed or staid*	staying	stayed or staid*
Steal	stole	stealing	stolen
Stick	stuck	sticking	stuck
Sting	stung	stinging	stung
Stink	stunk or stank*	stinking	stunk
Stride	strode or strid	striding	stridden
Strike	struck	striking	struck or stricken
String	strung or stringed	stringing	strung or stringed
Strive	strove	striving	striven

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Strow	strowed or strewed*	strowing	strowed or strown
Swear	swore or sware	swearing	sworn
Sweat	sweated or sweat	sweating	sweated or sweat
Sweep	swept	sweeping	swept
Swell	swelled	swelling	swelled or swollen
Swim	swam or swum	swimming	swam
Swing	swung	swinging	swung
Take	took	taking	taken
Teach	taught	teaching	taught
Tear	tore	tearing	torn
Tell	told	telling	told
Think	thought	thinking	thought
Thrive	thrived or throve	thriving	thrived or thriven
Throw	threw or throwed	throwing	thrown or throwed
Thrust	thrust	thrusting	thrust
Toss	tossed, or tost	tossing	tossed, or tost
Tread	trod	treading	trodden or trod
Wake	waked or woke	waking	waked or woke
Wax	waxed	waxing	waxed or waxen
Wear	wore	wearing	worn
Weave	wove	weaving	woven or wove
Wed	wedded or wed	wedding	wedded or wed
Weep	wept or weeped	weeping	wept or weeped
Wet	wet or wetted	wetting	wet or wetted
Whet	whetted or whet	whetting	whetted or whet
Win	won	winning	won
Wind	wound or winded	winding	wound or winded
Work	worked or wrought	working	worked or wrought
Wrap	wrapped	wrapping	wrapped, or wrapt
Wring	wrung or wringed	wringing	wringed or wrung
Write	wrote	writing	written or writ

THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

Regular Verbs (as previously stated) form their Past Tense of the Indicative Mode, and Perfect Participle, by adding to the Verb *e*, or *ed*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
I walk,	I walked,	Walked.
I aspire,	I aspired,	Aspired.
I love,	I loved,	Loved.

ACTIVE VOICE.

ACTIVE VERB.—TO LEARN.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

1. I learn,
2. Thou learnest,
3. He she, or it learns or learneth.

Plural.

1. We learn,
2. You learn,
3. They learn.

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

1. I learned,
2. Thou learnedst,
3. He learned.

Plural.

1. We learned,
2. You learned,
3. They learned.

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. I have learned,
2. Thou hast learned,
3. He has or hath learned.

Plural.

1. We have learned,
2. You have learned,
3. They have learned.

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. I had learned,
2. Thou hadst learned,
3. He had learned.

Plural.

1. We had learned,
2. You had learned,
3. They had learned.

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

1. I shall or will learn,
2. Thou shalt or wilt learn,
3. He shall or will learn.

Plural.

1. We shall or will learn,
2. You shall or will learn,
3. They shall or will learn.

PRIOR FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

1. Shall or will have learned,
2. Shalt or wilt have learned,
3. Shall or will have learned.

Plural.

1. Shall or will have learned,
2. Shall or will have learned,
3. Shall or will have learned.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2. Learn, or learn thou, or do
thou learn. | 2. Learn, or learn ye or you, or
do ye learn. |
|---|--|

POTENTIAL MODE.

PRESENT.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I may or can learn | 1. We may or can learn |
| 2. Thou mayst or canst learn | 2. You may or can learn |
| 3. He may or can learn | 3. They may or can learn |

- | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>PAST.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. Might, &c. learn | | 1. Might learn |
| 2. Mightst learn | | 2. Might learn |
| 3. Might learn | | 3. Might learn |

PERFECT.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. May or can have learned | 1. May or can have learned |
| 2. Mayst or canst have learned | 2. May or can have learned |
| 3. May or can have learned | 3. May or can have learned |

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. Might, &c. have learned | 1. Might have learned |
| 2. Mightst have learned | 2. Might have learned |
| 3. Might have learned | 3. Might have learned |

CONTINGENT MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. If I learn | 1. If we learn |
| 2. If thou learn | 2. If you learn |
| 3. If he learn | 3. If they learn |

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT, To learn

PERFECT, To have learned


PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Learning. PAST, Learned. PERFECT, Having learned.

The Present and Past Indicative may be conjugated by the help of *Do*, in order to express energy and positiveness. This may be called the EMPHATIC FORM:—Thus,

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| <i>PRESENT.</i> | <i>PAST.</i> |
| 1. I do learn | 1. I did learn |
| 2. Thou dost learn | 2. Thou didst learn |
| 3. He does learn | 3. He did learn, &c. |

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB, TO RECITE.

 An Active or a Neuter Verb may be conjugated through all its Modes and Tenses by adding its *Present Participle* to the Verb *To be*. It may be called *The Progressive Form*. Sometimes it has a peculiar propriety, and contributes to the harmony and precision of language. It is included in the following Conjugation :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present,—*Recite*,—*Past*,—*Recited*—*Present Participle*,—*Reciting*—*Past Participle*,—*Recited*.

PRESENT TENSE,.....*Recite*.

	<i>Simple Form.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Progressive Form.</i>
1.	I recite		I am reciting
2.	{ Thou recitest		{ Thou art reciting
	{ You recite		{ You are reciting
3.	He recites		He is reciting
<i>Plural.</i>			
1.	We recite	We are reciting	
2.	{ Ye recite	{ Ye are reciting	
	{ You recite	{ You are reciting	
3.	They recite	They are reciting	

PAST TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
1.	I recited	I was reciting
2.	{ Thou recitedst	{ Thou wast reciting
	{ You recited	{ You were reciting
3.	He recited	He was reciting
<i>Plural.</i>		
1.	We recited	We were reciting
2.	{ Ye recited	{ Ye were reciting
	{ You recited	{ You were reciting
3.	They recited	They were reciting

PERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
1.	I have recited	I have been reciting
2.	{ Thou hast recited	{ Thou hast been reciting
	{ You have recited	{ You have been reciting
3.	He has recited	He has been reciting

Plural.

- | | | | | |
|----|------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. | We | <i>have recited</i> | We | <i>have been reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Ye | <i>have recited</i> | { Ye |
| | | You | <i>have recited</i> | { You |
| 3. | They | <i>have recited</i> | They | <i>have been reciting</i> |

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | | |
|----|----|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. | I | <i>had recited</i> | I | <i>had been reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Thou | <i>hadst recited</i> | { Thou |
| | | You | <i>had recited</i> | { You |
| 3. | He | <i>had recited</i> | He | <i>had been reciting</i> |

Plural.

- | | | | | |
|----|------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. | We | <i>had recited</i> | We | <i>had been reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Ye | <i>had recited</i> | { Ye |
| | | You | <i>had recited</i> | { You |
| 3. | They | <i>had recited</i> | They | <i>had been reciting</i> |

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | | |
|----|----|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. | I | <i>shall recite</i> | I | <i>shall be reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Thou | <i>will recite</i> | { Thou |
| | | You | <i>will recite</i> | { You |
| 3. | He | <i>will recite</i> | He | <i>will be reciting</i> |

Plural.

- | | | | | |
|----|------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. | We | <i>shall recite</i> | We | <i>shall be reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Ye | <i>will recite</i> | { Ye |
| | | You | <i>will recite</i> | { You |
| 3. | They | <i>will recite</i> | They | <i>will be reciting</i> |

PRIOR FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | | |
|----|----|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. | I | <i>shall have recited</i> | I | <i>shall have been reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Thou | <i>will have recited</i> | { Thou |
| | | You | <i>will have recited</i> | { You |
| 3. | He | <i>will have recited</i> | He | <i>will have been reciting</i> |

Plural.

- | | | | | |
|----|------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. | We | <i>shall have recited</i> | We | <i>shall have been reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Ye | <i>will have recited</i> | { Ye |
| | | You | <i>will have recited</i> | { You |
| 3. | They | <i>will have recited</i> | They | <i>will have been reciting</i> |

POTENTIAL MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | | |
|----|----|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. | I | <i>may recite</i> | I | <i>may be reciting</i> |
| 2. | { | Thou | <i>mayst recite</i> | { Thou |
| | | You | <i>may recite</i> | { You |
| 3. | He | <i>may recite</i> | He | <i>may be reciting</i> |

Plural.

- | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------|------|----------------------------|
| 1. We | <i>may</i> recite | We | <i>may be</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Ye <i>may</i> recite | { | Ye <i>may be</i> reciting |
| | You <i>may</i> recite | | You <i>may be</i> reciting |
| 3. They | <i>may</i> recite | They | <i>may be</i> reciting |

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|-------|----------------------------|----|---------------------------------|
| 1. I | <i>might</i> recite | I | <i>might be</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Thou <i>mightst</i> recite | { | Thou <i>mightst be</i> reciting |
| | You <i>might</i> recite | | You <i>might be</i> reciting |
| 3. He | <i>might</i> recite | He | <i>might be</i> reciting |

Plural.

- | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| 1. We | <i>might</i> recite | We | <i>might be</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Ye <i>might</i> recite | { | Ye <i>might be</i> reciting |
| | You <i>might</i> recite | | You <i>might be</i> reciting |
| 3. They | <i>might</i> recite | They | <i>might be</i> reciting |

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------|----|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I | <i>may have</i> recited | I | <i>may have been</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Thou <i>mayst</i> have recited | { | Thou <i>mayst have been</i> reciting |
| | You <i>may</i> have recited | | You <i>may have been</i> reciting |
| 3. He | <i>may</i> have recited | He | <i>may have been</i> reciting |

Plural.

- | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------------|------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. We | <i>may have</i> recited | We | <i>may have been</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Ye <i>may</i> have recited | { | Ye <i>may have been</i> reciting |
| | You <i>may</i> have recited | | You <i>may have been</i> reciting |
| 3. They | <i>may have</i> recited | They | <i>may have been</i> reciting |

PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------|----|--|
| 1. I | <i>might have</i> recited | I | <i>might have been</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Thou <i>mightst</i> have recited | { | Thou <i>mightst have been</i> reciting |
| | You <i>might</i> have recited | | You <i>might have been</i> reciting |
| 3. He | <i>might</i> have recited | He | <i>might have been</i> reciting |

Plural.

- | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. We | <i>might have</i> recited | We | <i>might have been</i> reciting |
| 2. { | Ye <i>might</i> have recited | { | Ye <i>might have been</i> reciting |
| | You <i>might</i> have recited | | You <i>might have been</i> reciting |
| 3. They | <i>might have</i> recited | They | <i>might have been</i> reciting |

CONTINGENT MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------------|-------|----------------------------|
| 1. If I | recite | If I | <i>be</i> reciting |
| 2. { | If thou recite | { | If thou <i>be</i> reciting |
| | If you recite | | If you <i>be</i> reciting |
| 3. If he | recite | If he | <i>be</i> reciting |

Plural.

1.	If we recite	If we be reciting
2.	{ If ye recite	{ If ye be reciting
	{ If you recite	{ If you be reciting
3.	If they recite	If they be reciting

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

1.	Though I recited	Though I were reciting
2.	{ Though thou recited	{ Though thou wert reciting
	{ Though you recited	{ Though you were reciting
3.	Though he recited	Though he were reciting

Plural.

1.	Though we recited	Though we were reciting
2.	{ Though ye recited	{ Though ye were reciting
	{ Though you recited	{ Though you were reciting
3.	Though they recited	Though they were reciting

IMPERATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

2.	{ Recite thou, or	{ Be thou reciting, or
	{ Do thou recite	{ Do thou be reciting

Plural.

2.	{ Recite ye or you, or	{ Be ye reciting, or
	{ Do ye or you recite.	{ Do ye be reciting.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.

To recite.

To be reciting.

PERFECT.

To have recited.

To have been reciting.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Reciting.

PERFECT.

Having recited.

Having been reciting.

*Synopsis of the Verb "STUDY."**Active Voice.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

First Person.

DECLARATIVE FORM.

DECLARATIVE FORM.—*Negative.*

PRESENT.....	I study.....	I study <i>not</i> , or I do not study
PAST.....	I studied.....	I studied <i>not</i> , or I did not study
PERFECT.....	I have studied.....	I have <i>not</i> studied
PRIOR PERFECT..	I had studied.....	I had <i>not</i> studied
FUTURE.....	I shall study.....	I shall <i>not</i> study
PRIOR FUTURE..	I shall have studied..	I shall <i>not</i> have studied

POTENTIAL MODE.

PRESENT.....	I may study.....	I may <i>not</i> study
PAST.....	I might study.....	I might <i>not</i> study
PERFECT.....	I may have studied.....	I may <i>not</i> have studied
PRIOR PERFECT..	I might have studied.....	I might <i>not</i> have studied

CONTINGENT MODE.

PRESENT.....	If I study.....	If I study <i>not</i>
PAST.....	If I studied.....	If I studied <i>not</i>

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Second Person.

PRESENT.....	Study, or	{ Study <i>not</i> , or Do <i>not</i> study
„Do thou study }	

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT.....	To study.....	<i>Not</i> to study
PERFECT.....	To have studied.....	<i>Not</i> to have studied

PARTICIPLES.

SIMPLE.....	Studying.....	<i>Not</i> studying, or studying <i>not</i>
COMPOUND..	Having studied.....	<i>Not</i> having studied

*Synopsis of the Verb "TURN."**Active Voice.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

DECLARATIVE FORM.

INTERROGATIVE FORM.*

I turn.....	Do I turn?
I turned.....	Did I turn?

* The CONTINGENT, IMPERATIVE, and INFINITIVE MODES are not used in Interrogative Sentences.

I have turned	Have I turned?
I had turned	Had I turned?
I shall turn	Shall I turn?
I shall have turned	Shall I have turned?

POTENTIAL MODE.

I may turn	May I turn?
I might turn	Might I turn?
I may have turned	May I have turned?
I might have turned	Might I have turned?

Synopsis of the Verb "SELL."

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Third Person.

INTERROGATIVE FORM.

INTERROGATIVE FORM.—*Negative.*

PRESENT	Is it sold?	Is it not sold?
PAST	Was it sold?	Was it not sold?
PERFECT	Has it been sold?	Has it not been sold?
PRIOR PERFECT	Had it been sold?	Had it not been sold?
FUTURE	Will it be sold?	Will it not be sold?
PRIOR FUTURE ..	Will it have been sold?	Will it not have been sold?

POTENTIAL MODE.

Third Person.

May it be sold?	May it not be sold?
Might it be sold?	Might it not be sold?
May it have been sold?	May it not have been sold?
Might it have been sold?	Might it not have been sold?

EXERCISE I.

Select the Active, and the Participial Conjunctions, and also the Emphatic forms of the Verbs.

I recite.—Thou learnest.—I am working.—We do weep.—He might have been receiving wages.—I was much gratified.—I have been serving him.—I shall have been reading two hours before you rise.—I do admire it.—He promises to reform.—Do not venture too far.—The woman is weeping.—I will love thee.—I did my work in time.—He had arrived.—He is calling the dog.—Follow me soon; I shall be waiting for you.—You ought to have been more enterprising.—He is groaning and dying.—I do pity him.—Pity him, O friends.—To do good and to communicate, forget not.—They are fond of being praised.—They have received their reward.

EXERCISE II.

Put the following Verbs in the Indicative Mode into the corresponding Tenses of the Potential and Contingent Mode.

William learns.—The boys laugh.—Thy father respects me.—
I do respect you.—The man labours.—The farmer is ploughing.
—The apples are ripe.—The children were naughty.—My friend
and I correspond.—We obey you.—We are watching the birds.
—She walks slowly.—I have kept thy portrait.

EXERCISE III.

Put the Verbs in Exercise II into the Future Tense.

EXERCISE IV.

Parse the following Sentences :—

He calls me.—We praise you.—He may read it.—I will go.—
Will you be there?—It rains fast.—John has beaten Robert.—
Be quiet.—I heard the cuckoo.—Snakes infest the woods.—He
is walking.—The woods look beautiful.—Let me see them.—He
was reading his letter.—Shout, ye victorious warriors.—My brother
and I correspond.—I can do it.—He ought to go.—He
would have rewarded me.—I am writing.

Parse thus :—"He calls me."—*He* is a personal pronoun, singular number, third person, masculine gender, declined thus; Singular Nom. I—Poss. mine—Objec. me. Plural Nom. We—Poss. ours—Objec. us. *I* is the Nom. to the Verb "Calls." *Calls* is a regular Verb, Active Voice, formed thus,—Present, call; Past, called; Perfect Participle, called. *Called* is in the Indicative Mode, Present Tense, conjugated thus;—Sing. First Per. I call; Second Per. Thou callest; Third Per. He, she, or it calls. Plural First Per. We call; Second Per. You call; Third Per. They call. *Calls* is the Third Per., Sing. Num., and agrees with its Nom. *He* in Number and Person.

PASSIVE VOICE.

A Passive Verb is formed by adding the Perfect Participle of any Verb to the Auxiliary Verb, *to be*, through all its changes of Number, Person, Mode, and Tense.

INDICATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>		PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>		
1.	I	am loved	1.	We	are loved
2.	Thou	art loved	2.	Ye	are loved
2.	You	are loved	2.	You	are loved
3.	He	is loved	3.	They	are loved

<i>Singular.</i>	PAST TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I was loved		1. We were loved
2. { Thou wast loved		2. { Ye were loved
3. You were loved		3. You were loved
3. He was loved		3. They were loved
<i>Singular.</i>	PERFECT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I have been loved		1. We have been loved
2. { Thou hast been loved		2. { Ye have been loved
3. You have been loved		3. You have been loved
3. He has been loved		3. They have been loved
<i>Singular.</i>	PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I had been loved		1. We had been loved
2. { Thou hadst been loved		2. { Ye had been loved
3. You had been loved		3. You had been loved
3. He had been loved		3. They had been loved
<i>Singular.</i>	FUTURE TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall be loved		1. We shall be loved
2. { Thou wilt be loved		2. { Ye will be loved
3. You will be loved		3. You will be loved
3. He will be loved		3. They will be loved
<i>Singular.</i>	PRIOR FUTURE TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall have been loved		1. We shall have been loved
2. { Thou wilt have been loved		2. { Ye will have been loved
3. You will have been loved		3. You will have been loved
3. He will have been loved		3. They will have been loved

IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
2. { Be loved, or		2. { Be ye loved, or
3. Do thou be loved		3. Do ye be loved.

POTENTIAL MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I may be loved		1. We may be loved
2. { Thou mayst be loved		2. { Ye may be loved
3. You may be loved		3. You may be loved
3. He may be loved		3. They may be loved
<i>Singular.</i>	PAST TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I might be loved		1. We might be loved
2. { Thou mightst be loved		2. { Ye might be loved
3. You might be loved		3. You might be loved
3. He might be loved		3. They might be loved

<i>Singular.</i>	PERFECT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I may have been loved	1. We may have been loved	
2. { Thou mayst have been loved	2. { Ye may have been loved	
3. { You may have been loved	3. { You may have been loved	
3. He may have been loved	3. They may have been loved	

<i>Singular.</i>	PRIOR PERFECT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I might have been loved	1. We might have been loved	
2. { Thou mightst have been loved	2. { Ye might have been loved	
3. { You might have been loved	3. { You might have been loved	
3. He might have been loved	3. They might have been loved	

CONTINGENT MODE.

<i>Singular.</i>	PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. If* I be loved	1. If we be loved	
2. { If thou be loved	2. { If ye be loved	
3. { If you be loved	3. { If you be loved	
3. If he be loved	3. If they be loved	
<i>Singular.</i>	PAST TENSE.	<i>Plural.</i>
1. If I were loved	1. If we were loved	
2. { If thou wert loved	2. { If ye were loved	
3. { If you were loved	3. { If you were loved	
3. If he were loved	3. If they were loved	

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE	To be loved
PERFECT TENSE	To have been loved

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.....	Being loved
PAST.....	Loved
PERFECT.....	Having been loved

EXERCISE I.

Select the Active, Passive, and Neuter Verbs.

Hay is made for horses and cattle. — It is kept in a shed. — The common metals are heavy. — I like drawing when I am alone. — On a mountain you may have a very wide prospect. — I shall be allowed to go. — Shall I give it you? — Cowper wrote the Task. — He was the author of other Poems. — I am approved. — He will be rewarded. — She has been loved. — If we love to be useful, we are sure to be happy. — I had been recommended before I was appointed to the place. — We should strive to believe as we pray, to think as we pray, to feel as we pray, and to act as we pray. — Dogs have an acute

* Instead of *if*, the Pupil may substitute *unless*, *though*, *whether*, &c.

sense of smelling.—Fruit trees growing without support are called standards; but those that are trained against a wall are named wall-trees.—Read, and you will obtain knowledge.—Fear God, and serve him.

EXERCISE II.

Tell the Mode, Tense, Number, and Person of the Verbs in Exercise I.

EXERCISE III.

Give the Passive, and the Progressive Forms of the following Verbs:—

Esteem, grieve, hate, envy, covet, learn, drill, praise, promote, advance, produce, overflow, scorch, maintain, import, punish, steal, release, hire, engage, regard, deceive, heal, recover, bind, inform, instruct, tell, constrain, reach, observe, perceive, reject, accept, avoid.

EXERCISE IV.

Parse the following Sentences.

I am happy.—The water is frozen.—Thou art industrious.—You should be cautious.—Avoid the appearance of evil.—Perspiration if checked suddenly, may be serious.—His conscience was troubled.—Proud people are not esteemed by the intelligent.—The flood will have destroyed much property.—I will investigate the affair.—He has been rewarded.—To reverberate is to beat back again, and the term is applied to sound which returns to us like an echo.

EXERCISE V.

Select the Irregular Verbs.

Tell John to come.—You are unwell.—He is bent on mischief.—Do thyself no harm.—He fought the storms.—Captives weep.—Behind him rode two gallant knights.—He lay, like a warrior taking his rest.—Then shook the hills.—The combat deepens.—Draw the sword.—I am he.—Make the signal.—Rise, and begone.—Bind up my wounds.—The aged forget.—Lend me money.—Marathon looks on the sea.—Thy tread is an empire's dust.—Leaps the live thunder.—The swift river cleaves its way. Its beams ever shine.—Many efforts were made to slay him.—Thus fell Napoleon.—Knew you not Pompey?—He was clinging to the mast.—The army was sadly cut up, and could not hold out.

EXERCISE VI.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Active Voice.

Love, support, I am to blame, he believes me, fight, sail, forgive, engage, dislike, suspect, admire, respect, command, he plays, Thou hearest me, traduce, denote, combine, converse, comfort, possess, obtain, inspect, obey, receive, describe, come, go, depart, rise.

EXAMPLE.—*Support*—is a Verb Active, Regular, *formed* thus, *Present*, support; *Past*, supported; *Perfect Participle*, supported; *conjugated* thus, Indicative Mode, *Present Tense*, *Singular*, 1 Per. I support, 2 Per. Thou supportest, 3 Per. He she, or it supports; *Plural*, 1 Per. We support, 2 Per. Ye, or you support, 3 Per. They support; support is of the *third person*.

He believes me.—*He* is a Personal Pronoun, third person, singular number, masculine gender, declined thus: *Singular* Nom. He, Pos. his, Obj. him; *Plural* Nom. They, Pos. theirs, Obj. them; *he* is the Nom. Case to the Verb *believes*. *Believes* is a Verb Active Regular, *formed* thus, *Present*, believe, *Past*, believed, *Perfect Participle*, believed; Indicative Mode, *Present Tense*, *conjugated* thus; *Singular*, 1 Per. I believe, 2 Per. Thou believest, 3 Per. He, she, or it believes; *Plural*, 1 Per. We believe, 2 Per. Ye or you believe, 3 Per. They believe; *believes* agrees with its Nom. *he*, in number and person. *Me* is a Personal Pronoun, first per. sing. num. com. gender, declined thus, *Sing.* Nom. I, Pos. mine, Obj. me; *Plural*, Nom. we, Pos. ours, Obj. us; *me* is the Objective Case.

EXERCISE VII.

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Passive Voice.

Support, grieve, censure, maintain, blame, surround, try, suspect, survey, rejoice, praise, call, oppose, sting, work, win, provoke, restore, inform, prepare, strike, wed, teach.

EXAMPLE.—*I am censured*.....*I* is a Per. Pro. first per. sing. num. declined thus; *Singular* Nom. I, Pos. mine, Obj. me; *Plural*, Nom. We, Pos. ours, Obj. us; *am censured* is a Verb Passive, Regular, compounded of the Neuter Verb *to be*, and the Perfect Participle of the Verb *censure*, formed thus, *Present*, censure, *Past*, censured, *Perfect Participle*, censured; *conjugated* thus; Indicative Mode, *Pres. Tense*, *Singular*, 1 Per. I am censured, 2 Per. Thou art censured, 3 Per. He is censured; *Plural*, 1 Per. We are censured, &c. *Am censured* agrees with its Nom. *I* in Num. and Per.—namely, the first Per. and Sing. Num.

ADVERBS.

1. An Adverb* is a word added to a Verb, an Adjective, or to another Adverb, to express some quality or circumstance of *time*, *place*, or *manner*, respecting it; as, "A *truly* good man;" "Martha writes *well*;" "He spoke *fluently*."

2. An Adverb may generally be known by its answering to the question, when, where, how, &c., as, "The ship will sail to-morrow." *When* will it sail? *To-morrow*; this word is an Adverb. "He fought bravely;" How did he fight? *Bravely*.

3. Adverbs modify or qualify *Verbs*; thus, "William reads *carelessly*;" *carelessly* expresses the manner, or quality of his reading.

4. Adverbs modify or qualify *Adjectives*, thus, "He is a *very* rich man;" "The rose is *always* fragrant;" *very* and *always* qualify *rich* and *fragrant*.

5. Adverbs modify or qualify *Adverbs*, thus, "The enterprise will *most* certainly succeed;" "You write *too* quickly." Here the Adverbs *most* and *too* qualify *certainly* and *quickly*.

6. Many Adverbs end in *ly*, and are generally formed from Adjectives; as, wise, *wisely*, honest, *honestly*, true, *truly*. Some Adverbs are formed from Nouns; as, from hour, *hourly*, day, *daily*, &c.

7. An Adverb formed from an Adjective ending in *y*, the *y* is changed into *i* and *ly* added; as, merry, *merrily*, happy, *happily*. When Adjectives

* From *ad* to, and *verbum*, a word or Verb.

end in *le*, the Adverb is formed by changing *e* into *y*; as, single, *singly*, double, *doubly*.

8. Some Adverbs are compared as Adjectives, by adding *er* for the Comparative, and *est* for the Superlative; and also, by *more* and *most*, *less* and *least*; as, *soon*, *sooner*, *soonest*; nobly, *more nobly*, *most nobly*; *less affectedly*; *least sensibly*.

Some Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison; as, *well*, *better*, *best*; *badly*, or *ill*, *worse*, *worst*; *little*, *less*, *least*; *much*, *more*, *most*; *far*, *farther*, *farthest*; *forth*, *further*, *furthest*.

LIST OF ADVERBS.

Aboard	Aye	Haply	Oftentimes
Above	Back	Hence	Once
Accordingly	Backward	Here	Only
Across	Before	Heretofore	Onward
Adown	Behind	Hither	Otherwise
Afar	Daily	Hourly	Out
Afloat	Doubly	How	Outright
Afterward	Doubtless	However	Outward
Again	Down	Ill	Outwards
Ago	Downright	In fine	Peradventure
Aground	Downward	Indeed	Perchance
Alike	Early	Least	Perforce
Almost	Eastward	Less	Perhaps
Aloof	Else	Likewise	Quaintly
Already	Elsewhere	Little	Quarterly
Alone	Enough	More	Quite
Alternately	Ere	Most	Rather
Altogether	Especially	Much	Scarcely
Always	Even	Namely	Seldom
Amen	Ever	Nay	Sideways
Amiss	Evermore	Never	Since
Anew	Exceedingly	Nevertheless	So
Apace	Far	No	Sometimes
Apart	Farther	No more	Soon
Aright	Fast	Northward	Southward
As	First	Not	Still
Aside	Forth	Not at all	Then
Ashore	Forthwith	Now	Thence
Asleep	Forward	Nowise	There
Asunder	Further	Off	Thither
Away	Furthermore	Of	Thrice
Awry	Gratis	Often	Thou

To-day	Until	When	Whither
Too	Upwards	Whence	Why
Together	Verily	Where	Yea
Two	Very	Wherefore	Yes
Twice	Well	While	Yesterday
Thrice	Westward	Whilst	Yet

CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs of time.—These Adverbs answer to the question *when, or how often?*—After, again, ago, at, before, daily, directly, early, ere, ever, immediately, late, never, next, now, often, once, presently, seldom, since, sometimes, soon, then, to-morrow, when, while, whilst, yesterday.

Adverbs of Place.—These Adverbs answer to the questions *where? whither? whence?*—Above, apart, asunder, backward, below, downward, for, forth, forward, here, left, near, off, right, sideways, thence, there, thither, to and fro, upward, whence, where, whither, wide, within, without, yonder.

Adverbs of Number.—These Adverbs answer to the question *how?*—Often, once, twice, thrice. Those of *Order* are firstly, secondly, thirdly, &c.

Adverbs of Manner.—As,* ill, least, less, little, more, most, politely, poorly, quickly, quite, rather, richly, scarcely, slowly, so, this, very, well, &c., &c.

Adverbs of Degree.—Almost, already, besides, chiefly, enough, especially, exceedingly, expressly, extremely, far, generally, greatly, highly, how, mainly, much, nearly, quite, scarcely, too, very.

Adverbs of Affirmation, and Negation, and of Doubt.—Aye, nay, no, not, not at all, peradventure, perchance, perhaps, possibly, probably, yea, yes.

Adverbs of Combination are those which are joined to Prepositions; as, *herein, hereof, herewith, thereof, therewith, wherein, whereof, wherewith, &c.*

Compound Adverbs are those which consist of two or more simple words; as, as soon as possible, at last, at length, by-and-by, by all means, by no means, ever and anon, here and there, in and out, inasmuch, now-a-days, now and then, so so, up and down.

* *As* and *so* without a corresponding *as* or *so* are Adverbs.

REMARKS ON ADVERBS.

Adverbs sometimes become Nouns; as, *Yesterday* is gone; *to-day* is going; *to-morrow* may never come.

When *more* and *most* qualify Nouns, they are *Adjectives*; but in every other situation they are *Adverbs*.

Much is used, 1st, As an *Adverb*; as, It is *much* better to give than to receive.

2nd, As an *Adjective*: as, In *much* wealth, there is *much* care.

3rd, As a *Noun*; as, Where *much* is given, *much* is required.

Strictly speaking, however, *much* can never be a *Noun*, but an *Adjective*; for were the question to be proposed, *Much what* is given? It would be necessary to add a noun, and say, Where *much* grace is given, *much* gratitude should be expressed.

Adverbs are of great utility in rendering the language *concise* and *spirited*. They are commonly substituted for phrases.

EXAMPLES.—*Brilliantly* is used for With a brilliant appearance. —*Solemnly*....for.... In a solemn manner. —*Vainly*....for.... In a vain attempt. —*Here*....for.... In this place. —*Now*....for.... At this time. —Thus the quotations read,

"*Brilliantly* the glassy waters mirror back his smiles."

"*Solemnly* he took the earthly state."

"*Vainly* we offer each ample oblation."

"*Here* sleeps he *now*."

Adverbs sometimes take the place of Verbs, which they modify; as

"Off, off, I bid you." "*To arms!*"

"*Back* to thy punishment, false fugitive!"

Participles become Adverbs when they indicate the manner of an action, or modify a quality; thus,

"The surging billows and the gamboling storms
Come, *crouching* to his feet."

"Now it mounts the wave,
And rises, *threatening*, to the frowning sky."

"'Tis strange, 'tis passing strange!"

Most words used as Adverbs are *derivative words*—their radicals being commonly used as *Nouns* or as *Adjectives*. *From Nouns*.—*Always*—*nightly*—*hourly*—*aloft*—*ashore*. *From Adjectives*.—*Brilliantly*—*rightly*—*softly*—*virtuously*.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Adverbs.

She walks gracefully.—She was here yesterday.—Music sounds sweetly to the ear.—Go to bed, and rise early.—I heard it yesterday.—When my brother comes, I shall be so glad.—I go forward and backward, but find no rest at all.—He flatly denied it.—He discoursed pathetically.—Go down immediately.—He is never too late.—John reads distinctly; he is very diligent.

EXERCISE II.

Distinguish the Adverbs from the Adjectives.

Jane is a careful girl; she acts carefully.—A sweet apple.—The birds sing sweetly.—His pronunciation is very distinct.—He pronounces his words distinctly.—Virtuous persons are an honour.—To act virtuously yields peace.—His employment is profitable.—His friend is profitably employed.—Be you temperate, if you would live healthily.—Live temperately at all times.—I shall be happy to see my cousin.—She lives happily with her friends.—He acted nobly.—He is a noble fellow.

EXERCISE III.

Supply the Adverbs wanting.

John is a... good boy.—The horse runs...—The storm came on....—Do not act....—He was... glad to see me.—He acted....—He was a... benevolent man.... comest thou?... goest thou?—The music sounds....—She dances....—He is... qualified to suit you.—I am... afraid.—He discoursed very....—I love you most....—Thou hast spoken.... and acted....

EXERCISE IV.

Select the Adverbs of Time, the Adverbs of Place, &c., &c., from Exercise I and II.

EXERCISE V.

Correct the following Errors.

George talks wonderful.—I can read distinct.—I understand most clear.—She writes neat.—They conducted themselves very proper.—Sarah acts careful.—He acted noble.—Live temperate and sober at all times.—The birds sing sweet.—The dog barks loud.—He preached uncommon well.—A cheerfully and good man.—Do nothing careless.—Praise no man too free before his face.—The storm howled awful.—The pit is exceeding deep.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What is an Adverb? | how is the Adverb formed from it? |
| 2. Of what use are Adverbs? | 6. How are Adverbs formed from Adjectives ending in <i>le</i> ? |
| 3. How are they sometimes classified? | 7. How do some Adverbs become Nouns? |
| 4. How are Adverbs of quality and manner generally formed? | 8. How are Adverbs compared? |
| 5. When an Adjective ends in <i>y</i> , | |

PREPOSITIONS.

1. A *Preposition** connects words with one another, and shows their relation to each other; as, "Death entered *into* the world *by* sin."

2. Prepositions are so called from their being generally put before other words, especially Nouns and Pronouns.

3. Sentences would be unconnected and devoid of meaning without Prepositions; thus, He writes a pen; (*with* wanting.) They sail the river; (*on* wanting.) The man is the house; (*in* wanting.) Hence Prepositions connect words together.

4. A combination of words has the force of a Preposition; they may be called *Compound Prepositions*. These are,—

According to, along with, by means of, for the sake of, instead of, on account of, out of, on the other side of.

5. Prepositions govern the Objective Case of Nouns or Pronouns understood; as, He went *before*—(*him, or the time, &c.*) He dwells *above* (the bridge, or, the earth, &c.) I came *after* (you, him, the time, &c.)

LIST OF PREPOSITIONS, WITH EXAMPLES.

About	.....	"We walked <i>about</i> town."
Above	.....	"There is a ferry <i>above</i> the bridge."
According	.....	"<i>According</i> to thy faith, so be it."
Across	.....	"<i>Across</i> the ocean came a pilgrim bark."
Aboard	.....	"They came <i>aboard</i> ship."
Aboard of	.....	"We succeeded in getting <i>aboard</i> of her."
After	.....	"He that cometh <i>after</i> me, is preferred before me."
Against	.....	"He that is not for me, is <i>against</i> me."

* *Preposition*, from *præ*, before, and *positus*, put or placed.

Along	"Winds that run <i>along</i> the summits of their hills."
Amid	"We stowed them <i>amid</i> -ships."
Amidst	" <i>Amidst</i> the mists, he thrusts his fists."
Among	"He became a great favorite <i>among</i> the boys."
Amongst	"We made diligent search <i>amongst</i> the rubbish."
Around	"The chill dews of evening were falling <i>around</i> me."
Aslant	"It struck <i>aslant</i> the beam."
Astride	"He sat <i>astride</i> the beam."
As for	" <i>As for</i> me and my house."
As to	" <i>As to</i> that, I have nothing to say."
At	"He was <i>at</i> work <i>at</i> noon."
Athwart	"The dolphin leaped <i>athwart</i> her bows."
Before	"He stood <i>before</i> the people."
Behind	"She stood <i>behind</i> a rick of barley."
Below	"The captain was <i>below</i> decks."
Beneath	" <i>Beneath</i> the mouldering ruins."
Beside	" <i>Beside</i> its embers, red and clear."
Besides	"There was a famine in the land, <i>besides</i> the first famine."
Between	" <i>Between</i> whom, perfect friendship has existed."
Betwixt	"There is no difference <i>betwixt</i> them."
Beyond	" <i>Beyond</i> all doubt."
But for	"And <i>but for</i> these vile guns."
By	"To sail <i>by</i> Ephesus."—"They stood <i>by</i> the cross."
Concerning	" <i>Concerning</i> whom I have before written."
Despite of	"He will rise to fame, <i>despite of</i> all opposition."
Devoid of	"You live <i>devoid of</i> peace."
During	"This has occurred many times <i>during</i> the year."
Ere	"And <i>ere</i> another evening's close."
Except	" <i>Except</i> these bonds."
Excepting	" <i>Excepting</i> that bad habit, the teacher was faultless."
For	" <i>For</i> me your tributary stores combine."
From	"Playful children, just let loose <i>from</i> school."
From among	" <i>From among</i> thousand celestial ardors."
From between	"He came <i>from between</i> the lakes."
From off	"This lady-fly I take <i>from off</i> the grass."
In	" <i>In</i> the beginning."
Instead of	" <i>Instead of</i> the thorn shall come up the fir-tree."
In lieu of	"She has that sum <i>in lieu of</i> dower."
Into	" <i>Into</i> these glassy eyes put light."
Like	"An hour <i>like</i> this may well display the emptiness of human grandeur."
Near	"His residence is <i>near</i> the church."
Next	"Plural Nominatives should be placed <i>next</i> their Verbs."
Nigh	"Come not <i>nigh</i> me."
Notwithstanding ..	" <i>Notwithstanding</i> this, we remain friends."

Of	"Of the arts of peace."
Off	"He fell <i>off</i> the bows."
On	"On a bed of green sea-flowers."
Opposite	"Our friend lives <i>opposite</i> the Exchange."
Over	"High <i>o'er</i> their heads the weapons swung."
Out of	"Out of the cooling brine to leap."
Past	"We came <i>past</i> Avon."
Per	"Twelve hundred pounds <i>per annum</i> ."
Previous to	" <i>Previous</i> to this, his character has been good."
Respecting	"Nothing was known <i>respecting</i> him."
Round	"He went <i>round</i> the parish, making complaints."
Since	" <i>Since</i> Saturday he has not been seen."
Save	"All, <i>save</i> this little nook of land."
Saving	"With habits commendable, <i>saving</i> only this— he chews tobacco."
Through	"Dian's crest floats <i>through</i> the azure air."
Throughout	"Nor once, <i>throughout</i> that dismal night."
Than	" <i>Than</i> whom none higher sat."
Till	"He laboured hard <i>till</i> noon."
To	"We purpose to go to Rochester to-day."
Touching	" <i>Touching</i> these things, whereof I am accused."
Towards	"They returned <i>towards</i> evening."
Under	"Then was my horse killed under me."
Underneath	"And <i>underneath</i> his feet, he cast the darkness."
Unlike	" <i>Unlike</i> all that I had ever before seen."
Until	"We shall not return <i>until</i> Saturday."
Unto	" <i>Unto</i> him who rules the invisible armies of eternity."
Up	"The whole fleet was sailing <i>up</i> the river."
Upon	"He stood <i>upon</i> the highest peak."
Via	"This train is for London, <i>via</i> Birmingham."
With	" <i>With</i> cautious steps and slow."
Within	"Peace be <i>within</i> these walls."
Without	" <i>Without</i> it, what is man?"
Worth	"He possessed an estate, <i>worth</i> five thousand pounds."

REMARKS.

The first syllables of some words are Prepositions incorporated with them. They are of great use in modifying the words to which they are prefixed, and they are called *Inseparable Prepositions*, and as such are Prefixes to words. They are *a, ad, be, com, con, ex, im, in, mis, out, pre, post, re, sub, up, &c.*

Prepositions must sometimes be considered as a part of the Verb, and in that state Neuter Verbs frequently become Active, governing the Objective Case; as, to *look at, cast up, hold out, weep for, fall on.*

Towards is a Preposition. *Toward* is an Adjective, and implies a *readiness for action*; not *froward*. Never use *toward* for *towards*.

The Preposition is often understood—generally when its phrase follows Verbs of *giving, selling, coming, &c.* ; as, “Mary gave [] me a rose,”—that is, Mary gave to me a rose, or a rose to me.——“I sold [] Mr. Shepardy my wheat,”—that is, sold my wheat to Mr. Shepardy.

Prepositions introducing Substantive and Independent Phrases, have no antecedents; as, “As for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.”——“And, on the whole, the sight was very painful.”——“O for a lodge in some vast wilderness.”

EXERCISE I.

Select the Prepositions, and the Nouns and Pronouns which they govern.

My hat is in the hall ; I will go and see for it.——It was upon the table.——He left to-day for Scotland.——The cat is on the wall.——He came to town on horseback.——The vessel lies two miles from the shore.——She stood before the fire.——The earth goes round the sun.——Blind them about thy neck.——Rain fell during the night.——Lovely Kate sits beside thee.——I feel for him notwithstanding his faults.——Above me are the Alps.——Thou art against me.——I went along the beach in silent thought.——He stood behind the door.——Round the vessel were masses of ice.——Within an hour I shall depart.

EXERCISE II.

Supply the Prepositions wanting.

He drew his hand . . . his brow.——Streams . . . earthly joy exhaustless rise.——He writes . . . a pen.——They ran . . . the river.——The tower fell . . . the Greeks.——He died . . . a fever.——He was killed . . . a fall.——The house was built . . . him.——Take the fly . . . liquor.——He was banished . . . England.——There is no need . . . it.——Expert . . . deception.——Streams . . . earthly joy.——He travelled . . . moonlight.——John was taken . . . stratagem.——He loves her . . . her amiable qualities.——A conflict . . . the father and the son.——Sarah is supported . . . industry.——He is . . . disguise.——Which flung its purple . . . his path . . . heaven.——William has gone . . . home to-day ; he will be . . . home to-morrow.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. A Conjunction* is a word used to join words or phrases, or to introduce a sentence.

Bear in mind that Prepositions connect words by showing a relation. The Preposition has always an Objective Case expressed or

* Conjunction, from *con*, together, and *junctus*, joined.

understood. *Conjunctions* have no Objective Case, but simply connect words and phrases similar in construction, and introduce sentences.

EXAMPLE.—“Mary and Sarah have many lessons *because* they study diligently.” In this sentence “*and*” connects “Mary” and “Sarah”—two words having the same construction—and “*because*” introduces an Auxiliary sentence.

2. Conjunctions are *Copulative*, *Disjunctive*, and *Compound*.

Copulative Conjunctions are so called because they unite words in form and meaning; and because they carry on a sentence by some additional part, which agrees with the beginning of the sentence, or depends upon it; as, “Health *and* plenty cheer the mind;”—“My friend came *because* I invited him.”

Disjunctive Conjunctions both unite and divide. They disjoin in meaning, though they connect in form; as, “My sister esteems you, *though* she cannot love you.” “The people esteem his great services, *but* the government will not reward them.”

Compound Conjunctions are formed of two or more words; thus,—as for, as if, as to, as though, as well as, but also, for why, forasmuch as, in order that, not only, so then, and also.

LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL CONJUNCTIONS.

After, again, also, although, and, as, as well as, because, before, besides, both, but, either, else, except, for, further, furthermore, howbeit, however, howsoever, if, inasmuch as, in case, lest, likewise, moreover, nay, neither, nor, now, notwithstanding, or, otherwise, provided, since, so, still, than, that, then, therefore, though, thus, unless, when, wherefore, while, whilst, yet.

EXERCISE.

Supply the Conjunctions.

He . . . she are happy.—Two . . . three are five.—He that is slow to anger is better. . . the mighty.—Friendship is cool. . . deliberate.

—Power to judge....quick....dead.—I fled....I was afraid.—
You may go....by land....water.—He blushes....he is guilty.—
Consider the ravens,...they....sow....reap, which....have store-
house....barn,...God feedeth them.—I study....I may be learn-
ed.—Plato was wise....Stultus was not.—He is rich,...not res-
pected.—....he slay me,...will I trust in him.

INTERJECTIONS, OR EXCLAMATIONS.

An *Interjection** or *Exclamation* is a word used to express a sudden or intense emotion of the mind; as, "Oh! what a scene is here!" "Lo! I bring you glad tidings!" "Oh! Cassius, I am sick of many griefs!"

The term *Exclamation* is preferred to *Interjection*, as being more appropriate to its office.

Exclam—"to cry out." This we do with the use of Exclamations.

Interject—"to cast between." We very seldom cast these words between others—they are generally placed before other words.

EXCLAMATIONS MAY CONSIST

1. Of Letters—as, *O! Oh! Ah! Lo!*—2. Of Words—commonly used as Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Adverbs—as, *Wo! Strange! Hark! Really! Behold! Shocking!*
3. Of Phrases.—*For shame!*—4. Of Sentences.—"*O, Ephraim! How can I give thee up!*"

Exclamations are followed by *Words*—"O, Liberty!" "Ah, the treasure!"—By *Phrases*—"O, for a lodge in some vast wilderness!"—By *Sentences*—"O, bear me to some solitary cell!"

LIST OF EXCLAMATIONS.

Adieu! ah! ah me! aha! alas! alack! avault! away! begone!
bravo! dear me! eh! foh! fye! or fie! ha! hail! halloo! hark!
heigh! heigho! hem! hey-day! hist! ho! hollo! holloa! hoy! hul-
loh! hum! hurrah! hush! huzza! lo! mum! no more! O! Oh dear!
pooh! pshaw! really! revenge! see! so! soho! stop! strange! tush!
welcome! well-a-day! zooks!

* *Interjection*, from *interjectus*, thrown in between.

EXERCISE.

Parse the following Sentences :—

Hark ! how sweetly the lark sings ! Adieu ! my dearest friend.—Remove far from me vanities and lies.—Out of the heart proceed evil thoughts.—They were all against me, and said, Aha ! aha !—Hist ! said one of them.—Ah ! the delusions of hope.—O ! Caledonia, stern and wild.—O ! heaven, my bleeding country save !—Alas ! my friends, I must leave you.—Welcome ! to my dear friend.—Revenge ! revenge ! Timotheus cries.—Stop ! thou art near a precipice.—O dear ! these ruined lands !—Hush ! hark ! what means that sound ?—No more ! I'll hear no more !—What conduct ! Fie upon you !—Heigh ho ! I am tired of waiting.—Lo ! I come !—Behold ! I come quickly !

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. What is a Preposition ? | 6. What is a Conjunction ? |
| 2. Why are they so called ? | 7. How many kinds of Conjunctions are there ? |
| 3. What is the use of a Preposition ? | 8. Describe them. |
| 4. What is a Compound Preposition ? | 9. What is an Exclamation ? |
| 5. When does a Preposition become an Adverb ? | 10. By what are they followed ? |

SYNTAX.

1. Syntax* teaches how to construct Sentences† properly out of words.

2. A Sentence is a collection of words presenting a perfect sense or thought.

EXAMPLE.—Thus the words, "From honour to dishonour," do not contain a complete proposition ; therefore they do not form a sentence. But the words, "From honour to dishonour the progress is gradual," form a sentence, because they express an entire proposition. "George is diligent," is a sentence, because the meaning is complete.

3. Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

4. A *Simple Sentence* contains only one subject

* Syntax, from *syn*, together, and *taxis*, arrangement. It is applied to the agreement and government of words.

† Sentence from the Latin *sententia*, a thought, or meaning.

(or Nominative), one finite Verb, and one Noun or Pronoun for its Object, if the Verb is Active; as, "Henry loves me." Here *Henry* is the subject; *loves* is the Verb, and *me* the object.

There are several sorts of simple sentences.

1. An *Explicative* or *Affirmative* Sentence, explains or asserts something; as, "I love virtue."

2. A *Negative* Sentence, is one in which the Adverb *not* is used; as, "I do not fear him."

3. An *Interrogative* Sentence asks a question; as, "Does he write?"

4. An *Imperative* Sentence commands; as, "Do this work."

5. A *Compound Sentence* consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected by Relatives or Conjunctions; as, "Richard plays, but Henry is diligent." "His benevolence is great;" "His benevolence is applauded;" are two Simple Sentences, which may be rendered Compound by saying, "His benevolence, which is great, is applauded."

6. Sentences are divided by stops. The parts separated by commas, are called *Clauses*. A Clause is a division of a Compound Sentence, which division must have a Verb; as, "I will go with the cheap trip, if I can afford;" "*if I can afford*" is the Clause, connected with the former part by the Conjunction *if*.

7. A *Phrase** consists of two or more words united, without a Verb. It does not make complete sense by itself, but is put into the Sen-

* Phrase, from *Phrasis*, meaning, a mode of speech.

tence to assist the meaning ; as, "*In truth ;*" "*In good earnest ;*" "*without doubt ;*" "*I often walk, by myself, in St. James's Park ;*" *by myself*, is a Phrase.

8. The principal parts of a Sentence are, the *Subject*, (or *Nominative*), the *Attribute*, (or *Verb*), and the *Object* ; or, in other words, a Sentence must consist of three parts, the *Subject*, the *Predicate*, and the *Object*.

Thus,—“ The sun shines ;”—here “ sun ” is the *Subject*, and *Nominative* to “ shines.” “ *Shines* ” is the *Predicate* of the *Subject* ; that is, *affirms* or *asserts* something concerning the *sun*, namely, *it shines*.

The word which affirms, or asserts, is called *Predicate*. The *Predicate* must always be a *Verb*, and an *Adjective*, or part of a Sentence which is equivalent to a *Verb*.

Take another example :—“ *Napoleon conquered Prussia ;*”—“ *Napoleon* ” is the *Subject*, “ *conquered* ” is the *Predicate*, and “ *Prussia* ” is the *Object*.

Bishop Whateley observes in his *Logic*, “ A Sentence divided logically has three parts ; the *Subject* (or thing spoken of)—the *Predicate* (that which you say of it)—and the *Copula*, (meaning a *bond* or *tie*, and which joins the *Subject* to the *Predicate*). Thus, “ Religion [is] bliss.” The subject is “ *religion* ;” the copula “ *is* ;” and the predicate “ *bliss*.” Some sentences may be resolved thus—“ *Kindness conquers opposition*,” is equivalent to “ *Kindness is conquering opposition*.”—But it is simpler to regard the *predicate* as containing the *copula*.”

9. The principal part of a Sentence may have an *Adjunct*, or a word or words added to the *Subject*, the *Predicate*, and the *Object*.

To the *Subject* ; as, “ The good farmer ploughs his ground.” To the *Predicate* ; as, “ The good farmer yearly ploughs his ground.” To the *Object* ; as, “ The good farmer yearly ploughs his fertile ground.” “ The moon shines by night ;” the words, *by night*, form an *Adjunct of Time*, answering to the question, *When does the moon shine ?*

10. Syntax consists of three parts, *Concord*, *Government*, and the *Proper Arrangement of Words*.

Concord is the agreement which one word has with another, in *Gender*, *Person*, or *Case*; as "*He works*."

The Verb *works* agrees with *he* in Number and Person.

Government is that power which one part of speech has over another, in directing its Mode, Tense, or Case; as, "*My mother loves me*."

In this Sentence, *me* is in the Objective Case, governed by the Active Verb, *loves*.

Proper Arrangement respects the placing of words in a Sentence, so as to convey the sense in the clearest manner.

Words used to explain or modify the Subject, Attribute, or Object, are placed as near as possible to the words to which they belong.

All words that are omitted by *ellipsis*, and that are necessarily understood to complete the construction, must be supplied in parsing.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Simple Sentences and the Phrases.

He has at last returned to us.—He instructed them, and they were thankful.—I found him, and he was glad.—We went, yesterday, to the British Museum.—If you will, you may come in.—Men are apt to be ungrateful for the favours which they have received.—My friend will undoubtedly come.—At all events we shall only be delayed a day.—Necessity is the mother of invention.—Charles studies his lesson.—Above all, be cautious of that man's advice.—Has he not deceived you before?—You should, at least, try to discharge the debt by instalments.—I will write as soon as convenient.—I met him coming in a great hurry.—Without controversy, great is the mystery of godliness.—To protect the evil, is to injure the good.—I love you, because you have befriended me.—In a word, I am bound to love you.—Man wants but little here below.—Silver and copper are metals, and so is gold.—The boy is indolent.

EXERCISE II.

Select the Compound Sentences, and the Adjuncts in Exercise I.

EXERCISE III.

Select 1, the Subject; 2, the Predicate; and 3, the Object in Exercise I.

EXERCISE IV.


Construct Sentences according to the following Table :—


SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.	OBJECT.	ADJUNCT.
The watchman The nightingale The clock The cow The scholar The soldiers The traveller The magistrate The minister The master The sailor John	guards d:d	the premises it	at night through ignorance

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. What is Syntax? | 9. What are Adjuncts? |
| 2. What is a Sentence? | 10. Describe the Subject, Predicate, and Object of a Sentence? |
| 3. How many kinds of Sentences are there? | 11. Of how many parts does Syntax consist? |
| 4. What is a Simple Sentence? | 12. What is Concord, and Government, and Arrangement? |
| 5. What is a Compound Sentence? | 13. What is to be done with words that are omitted? |
| 6. What are the principal parts of a Sentence? | |
| 7. How are Sentences divided? | |
| 8. What is a Phrase? | |

EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.

 To produce the agreement, the proper government and right disposition of words in a sentence, Rules are necessary. The following, with the annexed observations, are given.

 The Rules in the larger type must be committed to memory; and as most of the observations and notes in the smaller type are very important, the learner should give particular attention to them.

RULE I.—ARTICLES.

1. The Indefinite Article, *a*, or *an*, which means *one*, is placed only before Nouns in the Singular Number; *as*, a peach, *an* orange.

2. The Definite Article is placed before Nouns in either the Singular or Plural Number ; as, *The* man ; *the* boys.

3. *A*, *an*, and *the* should not be used before Nouns taken in a general sense ; as,

"*Man* needs but little here below ;" "*Confidence* is a plant of slow growth ;" "*Truth* crushed to earth shall rise again."

4. They are seldom used before Proper Nouns ; as,

"*Wellington* was the most skilful general." "*Peel* was a great statesman." Occasionally the Articles may be used before a Proper Noun ; as, "*He* is *a* Nero ;"—"Where are *the* Cæsars now?" "*The* Douglasses were heroes."

5. The Article being once expressed is sufficient, except when one word in the same construction begins with a vowel, and another with a consonant ; also when a particular emphasis is intended, the Article must be repeated to each word ; as, *A* dog, *a* cat, *an* owl. "The day and the hour were appointed."

6. The Article is omitted before a Noun that stands for a *whole species*, and before the names of minerals, metals, arts, and sciences. But this does not generally apply ; see page 14, Remark 3 ; as,

"*Gold* is ductile ;" "*Iron* is very useful ;" "*Silver* is valuable ;" "*Optics* is a science treating of vision."

7. The latter of two Nouns after a Comparative should have no Article, when they both refer to the same individual ; thus, "He is *a* better tradesman than farmer."

1. Great care must be taken in this portion of the rule. Were I to say, "He makes *a* better painter than *a* musician," I should mean,

"He makes a better painter than a musician would." But were I to say, "He makes a better painter than musician," I should mean, "He makes a better painter than he does a musician."

2. *A* or *an* is sometimes used for *each*, *every*, or *per*; as, "A crown a day;" "Ten pounds a year;" that is, *each* day; *each* year.

3. *A* or *an* before the words *few* and *little* serve to increase the number; as, "He has gained a *few* friends," means he has gained *some* friends. The omission of the Article before such words tends to diminish the number; as, "His behaviour gained *few* friends."

4. When there is a peculiarity in the manner of using the Adjective, the Article is sometimes placed between the Adjective and the Noun; as, "Too careless *an* author."

5. The Definite Article is often elegantly put for the Pronoun Possessive; as, "She looked him full in *the* face;" that is, in *his* face; "He has a wound on the neck," that is, on his neck.

The Definite Article and an Adjective are sometimes used instead of the Adjective and a Noun; as, *The* wise, *the* benevolent, *the* enterprising.

We properly repeat the Definite Article before two or more Nouns specifically distinct; as, "Man knows neither *the* day nor *the* hour of his death." "*The* North and *the* South lines are parallel."

It may be used when two or more Nouns are joined in the same construction and taken severally,—especially if some of the Nouns are suppressed; as, "We have sold *the* black, *the* bay, and *the* white horse;" "*The* first, *the* third, and *the* fifth child were sons."

6. The repetition of the Article before several Adjectives, denotes that they refer to *different* subjects, though these subjects have the same name; as, "*The* old and *the* new Deed of Settlement;" "*A* blue and a red flag *were* hoisted;" that is, one of each kind, a blue flag, and a red flag.

EXERCISE I.

Supply the Appropriate Articles.

He has betrayed....confidence of his friends.—...love of virtue.—Let me taste....orange.—He brought back....book which he borrowed.—John has....nicer top.—I had never seen so tall....man.—At....best, he is only feeble.—Some evils affect both....monarch and....people.—Milk is....food for little children.—In the field I saw....horse....cow, and....ass.—This is....sweeter *apple* than....other; and it is....larger of the two.—It would be too *serious*....undertaking.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

An hundred pounds.—A horse, owl, and sparrow.—The pious and the learned Newton.—The English and Irish nation.—The fire, the air, the earth, and the water, are the four elements of the philosophers.—Reason was given to a man to subdue his passions.—Wisest and best men sometimes err.—He is much better writer than reader.—We are placed here under a trial of our virtue.—At best, his gift was but a poor offering.—He was impelled by a just and generous principle.—Such behaviour called for little severity in punishing him.—The gold and silver are corrupting.—The painting is a nobler art than music.—Many an one has been in adversity.—I bought a black and a white cow; it cost me twelve pounds.—I had a white and red cow; they cost me thirty pounds.

RULE II.—NOUNS.

1. The Subject of a Sentence must be in the Nominative Case; as, "*Alfred studies astronomy.*"

2. The Subject of a Sentence may be a *word*, a *phrase*, or a *sentence*:—

EXAMPLES.—1. It may be a *word*; as, "*Virtue secures happiness*;" "*He plants his footsteps in the sea.*"—2. A *phrase*; as, "*His being a minister, prevented his rising to civil power*;" "*To give good gifts, and to be benevolent, are often very different things.*"—3. A *Sentence*; as, "*That all men are created equal, is a self-evident truth.*"

THE Subject of a sentence may be ascertained by its answering the questions *Who?* or *What?* placed before the Predicate or Verb. Thus in the Examples above—*What* "*secures happiness?*" Ans. "*Virtue.*"—*Who* plants his footsteps in the sea? Ans. "*He.*"

3. The Subject of a Sentence usually comes before the Verb; as, "*Animals run.*"—" *Resources are developed.*"—" *The men work.*"

EXCEPTION 1.—In *Interrogative Sentences* the Subject is placed after the Verb, when the Verb constitutes a complete Predicate; as, "*Heeds HE not the bursting anguish?*"

EXCEPTION 2.—When the word *there* or *here*, introduces the sentence; as, "*There is a CALM for those who weep.*"

EXCEPTION 3.—When the Verb is in the Imperative Mode; “*Turn YE, turn YE, at my reproof.*”—In this way also, it is used by the poets and public speakers, for rhetorical effect; as, “*Loud peals the THUNDER;*”—“*Perish the grovelling THOUGHT.*”

§4 The Subject of an Imperative Verb is commonly suppressed; as, “[] Take each man’s censure, but [] reserve thy judgment.”

4. The Subject Phrase generally comes before its Predicate; as,

“*To do good* IS the DUTY of all men;”—“*Managing the household affairs*, now CONSTITUTES the sum of my employments.”

But the Subject Phrase sometimes follows its Predicate; as, “The sure WAY to be cheated IS to *fancy ourselves more cunning than others.*” The Phrase in italics is the Subject, and IS and WAY the Predicate.

This Position generally obtains, when the Pronoun “*it*” is placed instead of the Phrase. “*It*” precedes, and the Phrase follows the Verb; as, “It is the duty of all to *do good to others.*” What is the “duty of all?” Ans. “To do good to others.” “To do good to others” is the Nominative Case, represented by “*it*.”

In parsing examples like these, the Phrase is to be regarded as explanatory of the Pronoun, *it*—used to define the Indefinite word—and is, in its office, analogous to a word used to explain a preceding Noun.

5. A Subject Sentence is placed before its Predicate; as,

EXAMPLE.—“*That we differ in opinion* IS not STRANGE.”

But when the Pronoun IT is substituted for a Subject Sentence, the Pronoun precedes, and the Sentence for which it stands is placed after the Verb; as, “It is probable *that we shall not meet again.*” In parsing, “*it*” is to be considered as the grammatical Subject of the principal Sentence, and the whole Auxiliary Sentence as explanatory of the word *it*—a logical adjunct of it.

EXERCISE I.

Parse the following Sentences:—

Friend after friend departs.—Resources are to be found.—To be able to read well, is a valuable accomplishment.—He plants his footsteps in the sea.—How he came by it, shall be disclosed hereafter.—To see the sun is pleasant.—His parents love him, and they are always glad to see him.—To be submissive, accords with the Divine will.

EXAMPLE.—“*Friend after friend departs.*”

ANALYSIS.

Principal Parts ..	{ “Friend,” Subject	Simple Sentence.
	of “departs,”	
Adjunct.....	{ “Departs” Predicate of	Intransitive, or <i>Neuter</i> .
	“friend,”	

PARSING.

Friend	Is a Name	Hence, a Noun.
“	Name of a class of persons ..	Hence, Common.
“	Male or female, uncertain ..	Hence, Common Gender.
“	Spoken of	Hence, Third Person.
“	Denotes but one	Hence, Singular Number.
“	Subject of “Departs,”	Hence, Nominative Case.
After friend ..	Modifies “departs,” denoting time, or order of time	Hence, an Adverb.
After	Expresses a relation of “de- parts” and “friend”	Hence, a Preposition.
Friend	Is a Name	Hence, a Noun.
“	Name of a class	Hence, Common.
“	Spoken of	Hence, Third Person.
“	Denotes but one	Hence, Singular Number.
“	Object of the relation ex- pressed by “after”	Hence, Objective Case.
Departs	Expresses an action	Hence, a Verb.
“	Action has no object	Hence, Intransitive.
“	Simply declares	Hence, Indicative Mode.
“	Denotes present time	Hence, Present Tense.
“	Predicate of “friend”	Hence } Third Person, Singular Number.

Parse also—“*Who hath not lost a friend.*”—“*When friendship is endearing, the loss is most deeply felt.*”

EXERCISE II.

Select the Nominative Case, according to the Rule, and state whether it is a Word, or a Phrase, or a Sentence.

To play is pleasant.—To possess a good temper is better than wealth.—He delights to do good.—Robert studies all the day.—To be virtuous is to be happy.—Then burst his mighty heart.—Seas roll to waft me ; suns to light me rise.—He resides in London.—To do good is the duty of all men.—That all men are created free and equal is one of the fundamental principles of righteous government.—A desire to excel others in learning is commendable.—Moderation in eating and drinking promotes health.—Not a drum was heard, nor a funeral note.—“Her satin snood, her silken plaid, her golden brooch, such birth betrayed.”

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors.

To speak kindly of our friends are natural.—To be spiritually-minded are life and peace.—That southern latitudes should be favourable to the growth of vegetables, fruits, and flowers, are evident to all.—To be kind to friends and foes, commend us to the esteem of all.—To live soberly, righteously, and godly, are required of all men.—To do unto all men, as we would that they should do unto us, constitute the great principle of virtue.—That every day has its pains and sorrows, are universally admitted.—To live only for our bodies are contemptible.

REMARK. In a Sentence, it is the office of the Predicate to make the assertion. It declares *existence, state, change*, or an *act*, performed or received. A Predicate may consist of one word, or of a *combination* of words. If of one word, it must be a Verb; as, "Robert *studies*." And in addition, it may have a second Verb; as, "Robert *does study*;"—or a Participle; as, "Robert *is studying*;"—or an Adjective; as, "Robert *is studious*;"—or a Noun; as, "Robert *is a scholar*," &c., &c.

EXERCISE IV.

Select the Predicates in the Examples of Exercise II.

RULE III.—NOUNS.

1. One Subject or Nominative in the Singular requires its Verb to be in the Singular.

EXAMPLES.

Word Subjects. . . . "EARTH *keeps* me here awhile."—"MAN *wants* but little here below."—"KNOWLEDGE *reaches* or may reach every home."—"HE *leaps* enclosures, and *bounds* into the world."

Phrase Subjects. . . . "MY LEAVING HOME *does not please* you."—"TO DISPUTE THE DOCTOR *requires* fortitude."—"HIS BEING A SCHOLAR *entitles* him to respect."

Sentence Subjects. . . . "THAT ALL MEN ARE CREATED EQUAL, *is* a self-evident truth."—"HOW HE CAME BACK AGAIN, *doth not appear*."—"THAT I HAVE MADE HIM MY HEIR, *is true*."

2. Two or more Singular Subjects, or Nominatives, indicating the same thing, require the Verb to be Singular; as,

"The SAINT, the FATHER, and the HUSBAND *prays*."

OBS. 1. Nouns of *Singular import*, with Plural forms, require Singular Verbs; as, "The NEWS *has arrived*."—"A new SERIES of the work *has been published*."—"BILLIARDS *is a game in high repute*."—

OBS. 2. Some Nouns of *Singular import*, with Plural forms, require Plural Verbs, and Plural Pronouns; as, "The BELLOWS *have been repaired*: *they blow well now*."—"His *alms relieve the destitute*; for *they are very liberal*."—"My TROUSERS *fit well*: *they are very good*."—"The COMPASSES *were lost*; but I found *them*."—

OBS. 3. Some Nouns having only a Plural termination, must have Plural Verbs; as, "RICHES *please for a time*, but *they do not satisfy long*."—The same may be said of *pains, thanks, classics, physics, politics, mathematics, &c.*—The word *means* is used in both Numbers.

EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors:—

A wise and generous people are roused.—The bellows is out of repair.—A word, an epithet, paint a whole scene.—His lungs was hurt.—The means of retreat were cut off.—The House of Commons have a right to reject the bill.—My leaving home and friends do not please you.—The study of the classics require much time.—This means are the most likely.—What news have arrived?—Molasses come from abroad.—The tongs has fallen down.—Great pains has been taken with that boy.

RULE IV.—NOUNS.

1. Two or more Singular Nouns, connected by the Conjunction *and*, must have a Verb and Pronoun in the Plural; as, "Amelia and Sarah *are beautiful girls*; *they are much admired*."

2. A Plural Verb is required by Word-Subjects, Phrase-Subjects, and by Sentence-Subjects; as,

Word-subjects;—"The *vivacity and sensibility of the Greeks seem to have been much greater than ours*."

Phrase-subjects;—"To be wise in our own eyes, to be wise in the opinion of the world, and to be wise in the sight of our Creator, are three things so very different as rarely to coincide;"—"Chewing tobacco and smoking cigars disqualify a young man for mental improvement."

*Sentence-subjects ;—“ Read of this burges—on the stone appear,
How worthy he!—how virtuous ;—and how dear !*

EXERCISE I.

Supply a suitable Verb or Pronoun.

Francis and Henry....his sons ;...two amiable young men.—
The pies and tarts....excellent ; and I....them.—The king and his
courtiers....there, and....made the town busy.—Gold and silver
....useful ;...much coveted.—My hat and stick....both lost ; will
you...them for me ?—I and he...it.—Wellington and Napoleon....
distinguished commanders.—The Prince and Princess of Wales....
present.—Manchester, Liverpool, and Birmingham....large towns
....densely populated.—Before good seeds....sown, the weeds....
thrown out : and evil passions and tempers....—A good fire and a
good meal....us cheerful.—Sheep and oxen....useful.—The walk
and the lunch....me good.—Richard and Samuel....a quarrel.

EXERCISE II.

Select the Nominatives, or the Subject of a Sentence from Exercise I.

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors :—

The happy and the miserable comes here together.—Where the
citron and olive is fairest of fruit.—The women and the more pre-
cious spoil was taken.—By whom good and evil is distributed.—
Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing.—Idleness
and ignorance is the parent of many vices.—Time and tide waits for
no man.—The cavalry and the infantry was there.—Fire and wa-
ter ministers to our necessities.—Health, competency, gratitude,
and contentment, constitutes the greatest felicity.—Their love and
their hatred is now perished.—Knowledge and humility, meanly ar-
rayed, excels pride and ignorance under costly attire.—The price
and the discount was settled between them.

RULE V.—NOUNS.

Two or more Nouns, separated by *or*, or *nor*,
must have a Singular Verb and Pronoun ; as,
“ *Fear or jealousy affects him.*”

It is only one thing that affects him, namely, *fear*, or it may be
jealousy ; hence *affects*, the Singular Number of the Verb, is required.
“ *William or Warner has my knife ;*”—only one has the knife ; they
cannot both have it.

EXERCISE I.

Supply a suitable Verb or Pronoun, and then tell or select the Nominatives.

Disease or poverty....the lazy track of the sluggard.—Neither beauty nor ornament....so attractive as cheerfulness.—To read or to write....interesting.—Ignorance or inattention....cause of the mistake.—To despise or to reject her....very foolish.—Neither his subject nor his style....interesting.—Neither his age nor his rank....any influence.—When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune....upon us, we shall need succour.—Robert, Henry, or Albert....to go with me.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

Man's happiness or misery are often caused by his folly.—Neither beauty nor ornament look so attractive as cheerfulness.—To shoot or to be shot were my only alternative.—Neither wine nor medicine were to be obtained for him.—Writing letters, or reading novels, occupy her evening hours.—Either the father or the son were to blame.—Not a beam, nor hair, nor leaf, are lost.—Nor want nor cold dishearten him.—There are many faults in spelling, which neither analogy nor pronunciation justify.—Either your uncle or your aunt are expected.—Neither luxury, nor self-indulgence produce happiness.—Neither precept nor discipline are so influential as example.

RULE VI.—NOUNS.

When Singular Nominatives of different persons are separated by *or* or *nor*, the Verb is made to agree with the person next it; as, "Either my sister or I am going to Bristol."

The Verb, though expressed only to the last person, is understood in its proper person to each of the rest. Such sentences are always to be considered as elliptical. The full sentence would read thus, "Either my sister is going to Bristol, or I am going to Bristol." But such a tedious and formal attention to accuracy is not necessary.

Sometimes, however, when the Nominatives require different forms of the Verbs, it is in general more elegant to express the Verb or its Auxiliary in connection with each of them; as, "Either you *are* wrong, or I *am*." "You *are* in error, or I *am*."

But when the Verb is not varied to denote the person, it should not be repeated; as, "You or I *MUST* GO."—"The doctors or you *ARE* in error."—"Was *IT* thou?"—"It *was* the students."

EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors:—

It were the students.—Neither I nor thou **am** very learned.—
 Either I or thou **am** greatly mistaken.—He or I **is** sure of a reward.
 —She or you **is** certain to be called for.—Either thou or he **art** the
 cause of this trouble.—He or I **is** sure of his recommendation.—
 Richard or I **has** cause to be angry.—Either thy brother or thou **has**
 injured my reputation.—Neither I nor thou **can** penetrate the
 heart.—Either I or thou **are** involved in this affair.—George or I
has to be there.

RULE VII.—NOUNS.

1. A Singular and a Plural Nominative separated by *or*, or *nor*, require a Verb and Pronoun to be in the Plural; and the Plural Nominative to be placed next the Verb; as, “Neither the house nor the *tenants* were saved; *they* perished in the flames.”

2. When the Verb TO BE stands between a Singular and Plural Nominative, it agrees with the one next it, or with the one which is more naturally the subject of it;—or, the Verb should agree with its subject rather than with the word in Predicate; as,

“The wages of sin *is* DEATH.”—“CLOUDS *are* vapour.”—“A HORSE *is* an animal.”—“THOU *art* the man.”—“Who *art* THOU?”

Should the Pupil find it difficult to decide which of the two Nouns is the Subject or Nominative, and which Noun is in Predicate, the following test will decide:—

When one term is *generic*:—(derived from *genus*, meaning *Class of being*,) and the other *specific*, the former belongs to the Predicate—the latter is the Subject; as, “A horse is an animal;”—“*animal*” is a generic term—“horse” is specific. We cannot say, *an animal is a horse*, for not every animal is a horse; but every horse is an animal. Hence, “horse” is the Subject, “animal” is in Predicate.

3. When a Pronoun refers to two words of *different* Persons coupled with *and*, it becomes

Plural, and agrees with the First Person, if *I* or *We* is mentioned; and with the Second Person, if *I* or *We* is not mentioned; as, "Alfred and I will lend you *our* books;"—"Joseph and you have got *your* hats."

EXERCISE I.

Supply suitable Verbs and Pronouns.

Thou....person whom I want.—He or they....obliged to submit.
—Neither the master nor the servants....in fault.—Neither wealth nor honours....so valuable as health.—Neither the man nor his children....received their share;....are unjustly treated.—The cause of the distress....the commercial restrictions both at home and abroad.—Simeon and you have got....reward.—Thou and he divided the biscuit between....—Emma and I....reading *Shakspere*.—His drink....wine and whey.—You and she....careful of your money;....are rather covetous.—The murmur of tongues....heard.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

He or they is obliged to give way.—Neither the captain nor the sailors was saved.—Neither kindness nor severity seem to have influenced him.—Whether one or more was concerned in the affair, I cannot say.—Neither the minister nor his colleagues has merited your censure.—Reading and writing is my chief employment.—His chief occupation and enjoyment were controversy.—His meat were locusts and wild honey.—Margaret and I is fond of reading.—Some degree of riches are therefore required.

RULE VIII.—NOUNS.

1. A Collective Noun, indicating Plurality, requires its Verb and Pronoun to be in the Plural Number; as,

"The **PEOPLE** are foolish; *they* have not known me."—"The **PEOPLE** *speak*, but do not *act*."

NOT "This Rule refers to one of the most difficult cases. Usage, which gives law to language, is here quite at fault, our best authors being inconsistent with themselves, and with each other. The perplexity is not limited to the English language; the French and others seem equally puzzled. The Polish language appears to be the only consistent one, for it employs a *Singular* Verb with every *Singular* Noun."—*D'Orsey*.

OBS. 1.—Collective Nouns which generally require a Plural Verb, are the following:—Gentry, mankind, nobility, people, (meaning persons,) peasantry, &c.

OBS. 2.—Some Collective Nouns are Singular or Plural, as determined by the words with which they are associated; as *people*, meaning persons, must have a Plural Verb; *people*, a nation, a Singular Verb; as, "The people are unemployed;" "Nor is that barbarous people likely to be subdued."—"He is a promising youth;" "The youth of the present day are bent on worldly pleasure."—"The horse is a noble animal;" "The horse (cavalry) were valiant on the battlefield; they were the king's horse."

EXERCISE.—Make Sentences of the following Collective Nouns, giving to each the Singular and Plural form as Nominatives:—Body, bulk, aristocracy, committee, congress, church, meeting, public, school, army, auditory, remnant, portion, part, majority, senate.

OBS. 3. The Logical Subject of a Sentence is sometimes the Object of a Phrase used to qualify the Grammatical Subject. Then when the Object of the Phrase is Plural in form, and indicates that the parts of which the number is composed are taken severally, the Verb should be Plural. The Subject is frequently composed of several words, and in this case the Verb must agree with the *real*, and not with the *apparent* subject.

EXAMPLES.—"A part of the STUDENTS have left." "A body of soldiers were opposed to them."—"A number of young ladies were also present."

Here "students"—the name of many taken severally—is the Logical Subject of "have left," and requires the Verb to be Plural, although "part," the Grammatical Subject, is Singular. "The part which he has taken in the affair, is disgraceful;" conveys a different idea, and must be in the Singular. Also the following; "The plums are divided, and the greater part falls to me."

OBS. 4. When the Object of the Phrase is Singular, or the name of an aggregate number taken collectively, the Verb should be Singular; as,

"Two-thirds of my HAIR has fallen off."

Here "hair," the name of many taken collectively—is the Logical Subject of "has fallen," and requires the Verb to be Singular, although "two-thirds," the Grammatical Subject, is Plural. It simply means, "My hair has fallen off to the extent of two-thirds."

2. A Collective Noun, indicating *Unity* requires its Verb and the *Pronoun* to be in the Singular Number.

EXAMPLES.—A NATION has been smitten, and it is in great distress."
"The SENATE has rejected the bill; it will meet again to-morrow."

"The PARLIAMENT *is prorogued*; it will meet again the next January or February."

23 "The committee *was sitting*;" here the Noun *committee* represents a number of persons acting in a *single* or united capacity; and therefore the Verb *was* is in the Singular Number. But in the Sentence, "The committee *were* divided in *their* sentiments," the word *committee* represents a number of persons acting in a *disunited* capacity, and therefore the Verb *were*, and the Pronoun *their*, must be in the Plural Number.

EXERCISE I.

Supply suitable Verbs and Pronouns.

The British army....defeated, though....valiant.—The committee....divided in opinion.—The committee....chosen.—The congregation....large.—The class....large.—The army....returned, the enemy having fled;....services were therefore unnecessary.—The mob....dispersed;....very violent.—The party....not respectable. The public....imposed upon.—All the queen's horse....ordered to join, &c.—There....a great number present.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

There are a great number.—This meeting do not recommend the measure.—The peasantry goes barefoot.—The people has no opinion of its own.—The cavalry is ordered to battle.—A portion of the crown jewels are in the tower.—The court of France were not without blame.—The flock, and not the fleece, are, or ought to be, the object of the shepherd's solicitude.—An army of thirty thousand men were assembled.—The cattle has gone into the field.—Send the multitude away, that it may go and buy itself bread.—A majority of the company is shopmen.—The fleet is all arrived, and safely moored.—The corporation consist of a Mayor, Aldermen, and a Common Council.

RULE IX.—NOUNS.

1. When two Nouns come together, the latter of which apparently belongs to the former, the first is put in the Possessive Case; as, "*Alfred's* watch;" "*The sun's* rays."

Watch belongs to Alfred, and *rays* to the sun; hence Alfred's and sun's are in the Possessive Case.

24 Nouns and Pronouns in this Case do not always indicate possession; as,—"*The pedlar deals in boys caps and childrens shoes*;"—*boys* and *childrens* are to be regarded as Adjectives, because they

refer to *size*. They would indicate possession if I were to say, "These are my boys' caps"—"these are my children's shoes;" that is, those which *belong* to them.

2. The Possessive Case is sometimes expressed by the Objective Case with *of*; as, "The eloquence of Brougham," instead of Brougham's eloquence."

3. The sign of the Possessive is not always annexed to the name of the Possessor:—

1. It may be transferred to an attribute following the name of the Possessor; as, "The *Pope* of Rome's legate."—"Whether it be owing to the *Author* of nature's acting upon us every moment."—*Bishop Butler*.

2. When two or more Possessives, immediately following each other, are alike applicable to the same word, it is attached only to the last; as, "George, James, and William's father."—

But if any words intervene, the apostrophic *s* should be annexed to each; as, "The unfortunate men received the *physician's*, as well as the *surgeon's*, and the *apothecary's* aid."—It is also the case when emphasis is required; as, "He not only gained the king's, but also the people's approbation."

4. Sometimes we use *of* and the *Possessive termination*, especially when a selection of a thing or things is made from other things; as,

"It is a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton's;" that is, one of Sir Isaac Newton's discoveries; or, one discovery selected from the others. "A picture of my friend," means a *portrait* of him: but a picture of my friend's, means a portrait selected from his collection of pictures.

It is not proper to say "James' book," "Miss' boots." The absurdity of such expressions will appear by asking, "Is this book James?"—*James's book*, and *Miss's boots*, read much better.

In a Possessive phrase, the last Noun is sometimes understood; as, "He visited *St. Paul's*."—*Cathedral* is understood."

Sometimes the sign of the Possessive Case is left out, and a hyphen is used in its stead; as, "*Smith, the government-spy*," that is, "The government's spy;" or, "The spy of the government." These two, thus joined, are called a *Compound Noun*: and to this compounding of Nouns, the English language is very prone. We say, *chamber-floor, horse-shoe, dog-collar*; for *chamber's floor, horse's shoe, &c.*

The Possessive Case is often improperly used before a Participle; as, "This will be the effect of the *pupil's* composing frequently." This

construction, though endorsed by some Grammarians, is *faulty*, because it confounds the properties of different parts of speech, and *unnecessary*, because the same idea may always be otherwise expressed; as, "This will be the result *if the pupil compose frequently*," or, "This will be the result of the pupil's frequent practice in composition."

Mr. Murray observes, "Little explanatory circumstances are particularly awkward between a Possessive Case, and the word which usually follows it; as, "She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him, excellent understanding;" "the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him." This mode of expression is rare, and ought to be avoided when a better mode can be adopted; as, "*Those colours are the Victory's, the flag-ship of Nelson*," would read better, "*Those are the colours of Nelson's flag-ship, called the Victory*."

EXERCISE I.

Write out a List of Nouns in the Possessive Case, according to this Rule.

EXERCISE II.

Substitute OF and the OBJECTIVE for the Possessive sign.

The zephyr's sigh.—The tempest's roar.—The people's will.—The King's command.—Sheridan's last speech.—My friend's affairs are disastrous.—Heaven's immortal spring shall yet arrive.—Gertrude's acquirements are respectable.—The spider's thread is tender.—I wept over my father's grave.—The source of children's and of parents' bliss.—It was in William the Conqueror's time.—The battle-field's dreadful carnage.—The man's talents were respectable.—England's soldiers have been warriors.—The country's prosperity has been interrupted by the government's folly.

EXERCISE III.

Give to the Nouns the Possessive Sign.

The will of the people.—The rays of the sun.—The last speech of Sir Robert Peel.—The legate of the Pope of Rome.—The tomb of Edward the Confessor.—The reign of George the Fourth.—The Zeal of Whitfield and Wesley was great.—The eloquence of Fox was overpowering.—Such also was the eloquence of Pitt.—The father and mother of the boy were deeply affected.—The property of James is beautifully situated.—The learning of Robert is great.

EXERCISE IV.

Select those Nouns in the Possessive which imply Selection. (See Section 4 of this Rule.)

He is a tenant of my father's.—It is a book of Gertrude's.—This is one of the farmer's fields.—A subject of the emperor's.—A sentiment of my brother's.—That building of the mason's is an excellent one.—This cow is one of the farmer's best.—The statesman of George the Third's time.—The Iliad is a poem of Homer's.—

But this manner of writing is objectionable. Instead of saying, "He is a tenant of my father's," it would be more euphonious to say,

"He is one of my father's tenants." *Æ* Write out the Sentences in Exercise iv. in the best style.

EXERCISE V.

Correct the following Errors:—

The happiness of a man often depends upon a woman's temper.—Victoria's throne.—Napoleon his great ambition was the cause of France disgrace.—Amelias book has been returned.—Great was the veterans skill, and the soldiers daring.—My fathers ancient burial-place.—I bought the oysters at a fishmongers.—A bigots and a tyrant bloody laws.—The Duke of Wellington is buried at St. Paul.—Matthew Henrys Commentary.—That horse is one of my brothers.—Robert and James home.—I admire Emma and Janes attachment to their mother.

RULE X.—NOUNS.

1. When two Nouns signifying the same thing come together, they are in the same Case; as,

"BULWER, the NOVELIST, has written much;"—"Victoria, Queen of Great Britain, is an amiable Sovereign." In the first example, "*Bulwer*" and "*novelist*" are in Apposition, (the two words representing the same person), and therefore both words are in the Nominative to the Verb "*has written*."

2. A Noun or Pronoun which answers a question is in the same Case with the Noun or Pronoun which asks it, as, "Who told you?" "*He*."—"Whose flowers are these?" "*Mine*."

3. Unnecessary Nominatives should be avoided; as,

"Paul the Apostle, *he* was courageous," should be, "Paul the Apostle was courageous." "His teeth, *they* chatter, chatter still."

But this practice is sometimes requisite to produce rhetorical effect; as, "Our fathers, where are *they*? And the prophets, do *they* live for ever?"

4. In the Imperative Mode the Nominative is frequently omitted; as, "*Get up* early in the morning;"—"Arise, he that betrayeth me is at hand."

EXERCISE I.

Select the Nouns in Apposition, (that is, two Nouns representing the same person, but one of them descriptive of that person,) and state their Case.*

The love of money, which is the root of all evil, has ruined multitudes.—I have been in the country, the scene of my former residence.—Thomas, the blacksmith, has repaired the gig.—John, the coachman, is ill.—Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, is now very popular.—Mahomet, the great impostor, wrote the Koran.—William, the Conqueror, was valiant.—Pompey contended with Caesar, the greatest general of his time.—Religion, the support of adversity, adorns prosperity.—It was done by Mr. Chantry, the Sculptor.—I will not forget George, my dearest friend.—He presented me with ten pounds, a sum quite equal to my wants.—Richard, my friend, greatly assisted me.—Victoria, the Queen of England, our beloved Sovereign, has the affections of her people.—Napoleon I, the Emperor of France, was banished to St. Helena, an Island in the Atlantic ocean.—I admire Milton's great work, the *Paradise Lost*.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors :—

Napoleon the Emperor of France were banished to St. Helena.—That theory is Keplers, the great German's astronomer.—The Lord he is omnipotent.—The Lord Mayor of London authority.—That is the duke's of Bridgewater's canal.—Robert he was there.—The Bishop of Llandaff excellent book.—Whose prerogative is it? It is the king's of Great Britain.—The bank it is well stocked with money.—Call at Smith, the draper's.—This is Paul's advice, the Christian soldier's and great apostle's of the Gentiles.—I have a letter of Milton, the poet's.—These Psalms are David's, the king's, priest's, and prophet's of the Jewish people.—The lightning it struck the tower.—I reside at Lord Stormont's, my old patron's and benefactor's.

RULE XI.—ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives belong to the Nouns and Pronouns which they describe; as, "*A good man.*" "*He is happy.*"

Remember that any word whose most important office is to specify, qualify, or otherwise describe a Noun or a Pronoun, is, therefore, an Adjective. [See Definition, page 34.] A word which is sometimes or generally used as some other "part of speech" may, in certain connections, be used Adjectively, and when thus used, it is an Adjective; as, "An iron fence."—"Working oxen."

* *From appositio, putting by the side of.*

In the foregoing Sentences, *good, happy, iron, working*, qualify or describe the Nouns *man, fence, oxen*, and the Pronoun, *he*.

2. Every Adjective having its Noun understood becomes Pronominal,* as, "The rich are envied."

3. Adjectives describe Nouns in two distinct methods :—

(1.) As an ordinary epithet, in which the attribute is not asserted, but implied or assumed.

EXAMPLES.—A *sweet* apple—A *few* inhabitants.—

"Night, *sable* goddess, from *her* *ebon* throne,
In *rayless* majesty, now stretches forth
Her *lead*en sceptre o'er a *slumbering* world."

(2.) By asserting the attribute with the aid of a Verb or a Participle.

EXAMPLES.—The apple is *sweet*—The inhabitants are *few*—The world is *slumbering*.

Observe 1.—Many words in the English language are primarily Adjectives; as, *hard, soft, sour, sweet, good, bad, old, young*.

Obs. 2.—But most words used as Adjectives are Derivative Words; as, *Arabian, virtuous, hopeful, masterly, &c.*

Obs. 3.—Many Adjectives have the same form as the Noun; as, A *silver* pencil—a *gold* pen—an *iron* vessel—a *stone* bridge.

4. That form of the Adjective should be used which is in accordance with reputable usage.

EXAMPLES.—A *gold* pen—not a *golden* pen.—A *silver* pencil—not a *silvery* pencil. "Golden ears, though richly waving, must, in harvest fall."—"The *silvery* tide will leave thee."

5. Two or more Adjectives are often used in common as Adjuncts of the same Noun.

EXAMPLES.—"The *tall dark* MOUNTAINS and the *deep-toned* SEA."—"A *TEMPER* *passionate* and *fierce*, may suddenly your joys disperse, at one *immense* EXPLOSION."

In such examples the Adjectives severally qualify or belong to the

* That is, standing for a Noun. Some Grammarians term it the *Adjective Absolute*.

Noun ; as, "He was a *tall, athletic, vigorous* man."—"Lamartine was prominent in the *late French* revolution."

"*Tall*," "*athletic*," "*vigorous*," are Adjectives, each standing in the same relation to "*man*."

EXERCISE I.

Select the Adjectives and the Nouns to which they belong.

The wise and the good are esteemed.—Wisdom and virtue make the poor rich, and the rich honourable.—You are too humorous.—Francis is older than Samuel, but Samuel is the better scholar.—He was a bold, impudent, and daring fellow.—The peaceable stand in awe of the man.—A laurel crown was competed for in the Grecian games.—He is a good, as well as a wise man.—Few are happy.—I love him because he is brave.—A corpulent man is often lethargic.—The temperate are likely to be happy and healthy.—A querulous or resentful disposition is not lovely.—The righteous shall flourish like a green bay-tree.—Good men are happy.

EXERCISE II.

Select the Pronominal, the Primary, and the Derivative Adjectives, in Exercise I.

RULE XII.—ADJECTIVES.

The Adjectives *each, every, either, neither*, qualify Nouns in the Singular Number; and also when they are used as *Subjects* or *Nominatives*; they require their Verbs to be in the Singular Number, as, "Every soldier is enrolled."—"Each believes its own."—"Either is sufficient."—"Every scholar is in his place."

Every sometimes qualifies a Plural Noun, when the things which it denotes are spoken of collectively; as, "*Every* hundred years." Hundred here is regarded as a Collective Noun.—"The jubilee of the Israelites was celebrated every fifty years."

EXERCISE I.

Supply suitable Verbs and Pronouns.

Every tree....known by....fruit.—Every man....now to depart.—Either of the houses....large enough for my residence.—Let each esteem others better than....—Each man....required to mind....own affairs.—Every man....to render an account.—Neither of them....been here.—Either I or my friend....to visit you.—....

of them has told me the same story, but . . . of them is to be believed.
 — . . . man above eighteen years of age is liable to the conscription.
 — I have . . . of the rules in my memory.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors :—

Each* of them, in their turn, receive the benefit to which they are entitled.—Every† one of the letters bear date after his banishment.
 —Every leaf, every twig, every drop of water, teem with life.—
 Are either‡ of these men your friend? Whatever he undertakes, either his pride or his folly disgust us.—On either side of the river was there the tree of life.—And Jonathan, the son of Shimeah, slew a man of great stature, that had on every hand six fingers, and on every foot six toes.

RULE XIII.—ADJECTIVES.

When two things are mentioned in contrast, and severally referred to by Adjective Pronouns—*this* and *these*, refer to the latter, *that* and *those*, to the former.

The one and *the other*, *the former* and *the latter*, are sometimes used in a similar manner, and correspond to *this* and *that*.

EXAMPLES.—“Self-love, which is the spring of action in the soul, is ruled by reason: but for *that*, man would be inactive; and but for *this*, he would be active to no end.” “Virtue and vice produce different effects; the *one* degrades man, the *other* ennobles him;” Or, the *latter* degrades him, &c.

“Here living tea-pots stand, *one arm* held out,
 ONE bent; the handle *THIS*, and *THAT* the spout.”—POPE.

“Farewell, my *friends*; farewell my *foes*;
 My peace with *these*; my love with *those*.”

Some place the bliss in action; *some* in ease:

Those call it pleasure; and contentment *these*;

This and *that* are seldom applied to persons and things indiscriminately. But in most cases the repetition of the Noun is preferable to either of them.

* *Each* relates to two or more objects, and signifies *both* of the two or every one of any number taken singly.

† *Every* relates to more than two objects, and signifies each of them all taken individually.—It is quite correct to say, *Every six miles. Every three years.*

‡ *Either* signifies the *one* or the *other*, but not both. *Neither* imports *not either*.

EXERCISE I.

Supply the appropriate Adjective, or Pronoun.

The father and his son are equally culpable;...committed the crime,...contrived it.—Pride and humility differ in their effects;...leads to honour,...goes before destruction.—True wisdom is more precious than gold;...is transient and unsatisfying,...produces satisfaction, and is coeval with eternity.—Athens and Sparta were the chief states of Greece;...renowned for arms,...for arts.—Every man possesses a casket and a jewel;...is his immortal spirit,...is his frail and perishing body.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

Wealth and poverty are both temptations; this tends to excite pride, that discontent.—Moses and Solomon were men of the highest renown; the latter was remarkable for his meekness, the former was renowned for his wisdom.—Religion dignifies men; irreligion degrades them: that binds them down to a speck of perishable earth; this opens for them a prospect to the skies.—Rex and Tyrannus are of very different characters; the one rules his people by laws to which they consent; the other, by his absolute will and power: this is called freedom, that tyranny.—More rain falls in the first two summer months, than in the first two winter ones; but it makes a much greater show upon the earth in those than in these; because there is a much slower evaporation.

RULE XIV.—ADJECTIVES.

1. The Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns must be of the same Number as the Nouns to which they refer; as,

This man; these men. That sort; those sorts; another way; other ways. "These are the things which defile."—"Those were halcyon days."—"I know several of the men."

EXERCISE I.

Supply the Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns.

I am thankful for...favours.—I shall adopt...ways to reform him....means have proved ineffectual.—Give me...slate.—...kind of company I dislike.—...way is bad; show me...way.—...trees have a beautiful foliage.—It is far superior to....on the trees in the valley.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

Each of them are guilty.—Let each of them in their turn receive the benefits to which they are entitled.—These kind of indulgences

soften and injure the mind.—The chasm made by the earthquake was twenty foot* broad, and one hundred fathoms in depth.—Those sort of favours did real injury, under the appearance of kindness.—He saw one or more persons enter the garden.—How many a sorrow we should avoid, if we were not industrious to make them.—It was by that ungenerous mean† that he obtained his end.—Charles was extravagant, and by this mean became poor and despicable.—Industry is the mean of obtaining competency.

RULE XV.—ADJECTIVES.

1. *Any, all, like, more, none, some, and such*, may have Verbs in the Singular or Plural, according as they indicate unity or plurality.

EXAMPLES.—“If *any* man will follow me,” &c.—“If you meet *any* soldiers, do not be afraid.”—“*All* are but parts of one stupendous whole.”—“What if the field be lost? *All* is not lost.”—“*None* but the upright in heart *are* capable of being true friends.”—“The *like* were never seen before.”—“*Like* produces *like*.”—“*Such* as have grace by things graceful.”—“Nestled at its root is beauty; *such* as blooms not in the glare of the broad sun.”

2. The words *all, few, many, several*, are used with Plural Nouns denoting Number; as,

“All the *tenants* are invited.”—“*Few* persons will come.”—“*Many* persons will regret their obstinacy.”—“I know *several* persons who are disposed to come.”

3. The words, *All, any, enough, no, some*, used with Singular Nouns, denote quantity; as,

“*All* the rubbish was removed.”—“*All* the grass is cut.”—“The

* *Foot* is still used by some persons; but *feet* is better. Plural Numerals are sometimes joined to Singular Nouns; as, *Twenty* sail of the line; *Four* gross of pens; *Three* brace of Partridges; *six* dozen apricots.

† *Means* in the Singular, and the Phrases, *By this means, By that means*, are used by good writers, when they imply instrumentality; as, “*By* means of improvidence, he became insolvent.”

This means, and *That means*, are used only when they refer to one thing—*These means*, and *Those means*, when they refer to several things; as, “He was devoted to his studies, and *by this means* he became learned.” “The servants were attentive and industrious, and *by these means* obtained favour.”

Amends is used in the same manner as *means*; as, “His elevation to office is a proper *amends* for the sacrifices he has made.”

fowls have had corn *enough*."—"Can you give me *any* medicine?"
 "He has brought me some food."

Many is sometimes used with a Noun Singular and the Indefinite Article between them; as, "In that land was *many* a home-sick man."

RULE XVI.—ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives and Adverbs should not be used for each other; because the former specifies the qualities of a Noun, and the latter indicates the circumstances of a Verb.

EXAMPLES.—William feels *badly* to-night.... should be, *bad*.

How <i>beautifully</i> it looks !.....	„	<i>beautiful</i> .
It appears <i>strangely</i> to me	„	<i>strange</i> .
He did it remarkable well	„	<i>remarkably</i> .
He treated me very <i>cruel</i>	„	<i>cruelly</i> .

EXERCISE I.

Correct the following Errors:—

They are miserable poor.—She reads proper, writes very neat, and composes accurate.—He fought bolder than his brother.—He speaks very fluent, reads excellent, but does not think very coherent.—He came agreeable to his promise, and conducted himself suitable to the occasion.—He is exceeding upright; and is like to be very popular.—They hoped for a soon and prosperous issue to the war.—He departed from thence into a desert place.—* From whence come ye?—Where† are you going.—He got up a petition where‡ he too frequently represented his own merit.—I walked there yesterday.—Come here.—He went to Paris last May, since when I have not seen him.—The situation where I found him.

RULE XVII.—ADJECTIVES.—COMPARISON.—

As things are equal or unequal, similar or dissimilar, we have words indicating those differences. Hence,

* *From* should not be used before *hence*, *thence*, and *whence*, because it is implied.—In many cases, however, the omission of *from* would render the language intolerably stiff and disagreeable.

† After Verbs of motion, *hither*, *thither*, and *whither*, should be used, and not *here*, *there*, and *where*.—Murray.

‡ *When* and *while* should not be used as Nouns, nor *where* as a Preposition and a Relative; i. e. for *in which*.

1. COMPARISON OF EQUALITY.

OBS. 1.—Two or more things, similar in any given quality, are compared by the use of the word *As*, placed before the latter term.

EXAMPLES.—"John is *as* tall *as* James."—"Warner is not so fair *as* Arthur."—"England can spare from her service *such* men *as* him."—Lord Brougham.

I object to this sentence of Lord Brougham's. Would it not be better to say, "such a man, and all who are like him," or, "all men of his character," or, "all men like him."

Latham says, "The only Adjective that governs *Case* is the word *like*;" therefore if I say, "She is just *like* her mother," no Preposition is understood.

OBS. 2.—The former term of the Comparison of equality may be preceded by *As* or *So*, and sometimes by *Such*; as, "*Such as* it is."—"Such *as* do good."

Such, in the sense of a consequence, or so great, requires *that*; as, "Her vanity is *such that* she thinks herself above every one."—"Such is the influence of money that few can resist it."

2. COMPARISON OF INEQUALITY.

1. In Comparisons of Inequality, when only *two things* are compared, the former term requires an Adjective of the Comparative Degree.

2. The second term of Comparison is commonly introduced by the word *than*. The words *other* and *rather* also require *than* after them.

EXAMPLES.—"Richer **THAN** you are."—"They are **STRONGER** *than* lions."—"Their instinct is **MORE PERFECT** *than* that of man."—"No other man *than* Wellington could have kept that position."—"Rather *than* abjure his religion he would suffer death."

The second term of a Comparison may be suppressed when the sense is not thereby obscured; as, "We both have fed *as* well."—"I have known *deeper* wrongs."

3. Adjectives of the Superlative Degree are used *when more than two things* are compared.

EXAMPLES.—"The richest treasure is a spotless reputation."—"Thou art the ruins of the *noblest* man that ever lived in the tide of time."—"Robert is the healthiest of the family."

Sometimes among the best authorities the Superlative supersedes the Comparative, when two objects constitute a collective number, or group; as, "The *largest* boat of the *two* was cut loose.—*Cowper*. But this is a violation of Grammar, and should be avoided.

EXERCISE I.

Supply an Appropriate Adjective, Adverb, &c., according to Rule.

London is the... of all cities.—Robert is....rich....John.—
 Louisa is not.... beautiful.... Gertrude.—... is the power of beauty
 many are overcome by it.—He is... than I am.—No... shall
 sit upon the throne of my heart.—He allowed me to fall into poverty
 help me.—She is the.... of them all.—... scheme appears so
 plausible.—He is the... of the two.—Newton was the... of as-
 tronomers.—Solomon was.... all other men.—This is the... house
 of the two.—It was.... than your cousin.—That is the... house
 in the row.—The task was more difficult.... any other.—Rachel
 was more beautiful.... her sister.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

Such that it is.—Her work is perfecter than mine.—The most
 richest treasure is a good conscience.—He is the best of the two.—
 Iron is the most valuable of all other metals.—Iron is more valuable
 of all the metals.*—The largest apple of the two is mine.—This
 is none other but the gate of paradise.—Jane is the wittier of the
 three, but not the wiser.—Such men that act treacherously ought to
 be avoided.—He is the likeliest of any other to succeed.—I under-
 stood him the best of all others who spoke on the subject.—James
 is the wisest of the two.—Be ready to succour such persons who
 need your assistance.—Those barbarous people seemed to have no
 other element but war.—Such sharp replies that cost him his life.—
 Eve was the fairest of all her daughters.—He has little more of the
 scholar besides the name.

* The *Comparative Degree* requires the former term to be excluded from the latter; as, "Iron" is more valuable than "*all other metals*." In this example "Iron" is put as one term of comparison, and "*all other metals*" as the other term—*two things* are compared; "Iron" is included in "*all other metals*," hence the comparative form.—The *Superlative Degree* requires the former term to be included in the latter; as, "Iron is the most valuable of *all the metals*." Here all the metals are taken severally. "Iron" is selected from the list, and put in comparison with the many others—*more than two things* are compared. Hence the use of the Superlative form.

RULE XVIII.—ADJECTIVES.—COMPARISON.

Double Comparatives and Superlatives are improper ; as,

"In the calmest and *most stillest* night."—Some good writers use *lesser* ; as, "The *lesser* co-efficient ;" referring to Algebra.

Chief, universal, perfect, true, boundless, endless, circular, &c. imply the superlative degree without *est* or *most*. In language sublime or passionate, however, the word *perfect* requires the superlative form to give it effect. A lover enraptured with his mistress would naturally call her *the most perfect* of her sex.

Superior, inferior, prior, anterior, &c. always imply comparison, and require to after them.

EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors :—

Act in a more worthier way.—The perfecter our conduct the greater our influence.—More impassable than the perpendicular mountain.—A more serener temper.—The tongue is like a race-horse, which runs the faster the lesser weight it carries. He is the chiefest among ten thousand.—A more superior work.—The most straightest sect.—He gave the fullest and the most sincere proof of the truest friendship.—Tray is the most swiftest dog.—His assertion was most untrue.—My sister is the most loveliest of females.—The Most Highest has created us for his glory.—Arthur's writing was perfect ; Henry's more perfect, and Richard's most perfect of all.

RULE XIX.—NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. In the use of Adjectives that imply Number, such should be employed as agree in Number with their Nouns.

EXAMPLES.—A book—one book—three books—a thousand books.
This book—that book—some books—many books.

OBS. 1.—But a Noun having two or more Adjectives differing in Number, may agree in Number with the one placed next it ; as,

"Full *many* A * GEM of purest ray serene."

* See page 14, last paragraph.

Obs. 2.—One Numeral Adjective may qualify another Numeral ; as,

ONE hundred dollars—a hundred horses—FOUR score years—TWO dozen oranges.

2. A Noun should correspond in form to the Number indicated by its Adjective, when the Adjective is necessarily Singular or Plural.

EXAMPLES.—“The field is *two miles* long and *one mile* broad.”—“*These* hands let useful skill forsake,—*this* voice in silence die.”

EXCEPTION.—A few Nouns are used technically or figuratively in the Singular Number, with Plural Adjectives ; as, A *hundred head* of cattle—*Fifty sail* of the line.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors, and give a reason for each, according to the respective Rule :—

The situation where I found him.—I can do without such men as him.—His pride is so that no one likes him.—No other man but Palmerston could have conducted the government.—I met the tallest man of the two who frightened us yesterday.—Four scores years.—Divine Sovereigntys doctrine.—He saw that writing's truth.—Two hundreds of horses.—Fifty heads of cattle.—Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron took either of them his censer.—The king of Israel, and the king of Judah sat either of them on his throne.—Each of them in their turn, receive the benefits to which they are entitled.—They are greater gainers than us.—Alfred is the wisest of the two.—She is not so learned as him.—Such men that act treacherously ought to be avoided.—I understood him the best of all others who spoke on the subject.—He fought bolder than his brother.—James is a worser scholar than John.—His assertion was most untrue.—And Joshua, he shall go over before thee.

REMARKS ON ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives sometimes qualify the Infinitive Mode, or a part of a Sentence ; as, “*To see* is pleasant.”—“*To walk* is useful.”—“*To be blind* is unfortunate.”

Adjectives should be so placed with respect to their Nouns, as clearly to convey the idea intended. The sense must determine the position of some of them. “The *two first* houses in the row,” means the *two houses* that are placed *first* ; but, strictly, there can be only *one first*. It is more correct to say, “The *first two* houses,” meaning a selection of *two* houses, beginning at the *first*. Gibbon says, “The *seven first* centuries ;” there is only *one first* ; and therefore it ought to be, “The *first seven* ;” or, “From the *first* to the end of the *seventh* century.” “A *good enough* judge,” should be “A judge *good enough*.”

The general position of the Adjective is immediately before the Noun to which it belongs; as, "A *wise* man;" but if the Adjective should be affected by something that follows, then its proper position will be after the Noun; as,

1. When the Adjective expresses title; as, "Saladin the *Great*;" "Alexander the *Great*."—2. When several Adjectives belong to one Noun; as, "A man, *just, wise, and charitable*."—3. When the Adjective denotes extent, time, number, or dimension; as, "A ladder twenty feet *high*."—"An army fifty thousand *strong*."—"A well fifteen yards *deep*."—"Clara is twelve years *old*."—4. When it is emphatical; as, "This day is the *finest* we have had."—5. When preceded by an Adverb; as, "He is known as a man *really benevolent*."—6. When the Verb *To be* comes between a Noun and an Adjective, the Adjective may either precede or follow it; as, "*Great* is the Lord; *just and true* are thy ways, thou King of saints!"—"The Lord is *great*."

Avoid such expressions as the following;—*Very honest, extremely just*. A man may be *wiser* than another wise man; but a man cannot be more honest than another, every man who is not *honest*, must be *dishonest, &c.* *Very right, and very wrong*, are common expressions, but they are both incorrect. With some persons, every thing is *excessively, or immensely, or extremely, or vastly, or surprisingly, or wonderfully, or abundantly, or the like*. The notion of such writers is that these words give *strength* to what they are saying. This is a great error. Strength must be found in the *thought*, or it will never be found in the *words*. Big-sounding words, without thoughts corresponding, are effort without effect.

RULE XX.—ADJECTIVES IN PREDICATE.

Many Verbs take an Adjective with them to form the Predicate or assertion.

EXAMPLES.—"He *looks pale*."—"Glow not her blush the *father*?"—"His palsied hands *waxed strong*."—"Canst thou *grow sad*, as earth *grows bright*?"—"Vanity often *renders man contemptible*."

Obs. 1.—Many English Verbs contain the signification of such Adjectives in themselves. Thus.

"Waxed strong".....has its equivalent, *strengthened*.
 "Grows bright".....,, ,, *brightness*.

Obs. 2.—Participles, like Verbs, sometimes require the use of Adjectives to complete the sense. Adjectives thus used are said to be "in Predicate."

EXAMPLES—"The desire of being happy reigns in all hearts."—"Her *highest happiness* consists in making others happy."

Obs. 3.—Adjectives may be in Predicate. (1.) With Transitive Verbs,—or Verbs in the Active Voice.

EXAMPLES.—"They'll *make me mad*, they'll *make me mad*!"—"The study of science tends to *make us devout*."

(2.) With Passive Verbs.

EXAMPLES.—"He was *made wretched* by his own folly."—"The children were *rendered miserable* by the sins of the father."

(3.) With Neuter and other Intransitive Verbs.

EXAMPLE.—"How *dear* to my heart *are* the scenes of my childhood."

(4.) With Verbs—Infinitive Mode.

EXAMPLE.—"The study of creation tends to *make us devout*."

(5.) With Participles as Adjectives.

EXAMPLES.—"Falling *short* of this, we cannot succeed."—"Our horses *becoming frightened*, we leaped from the carriage."

EXERCISE I.

Parse the following Sentences:—

To err is human.—To be wise and good is to be happy.—These were thy charms, sweet village, sports like these.—The bliss of the happy, the strength of the free.—The door was red-hot.—His strong, proud, and powerful mind gave way at last.—They gained a thousand pounds a man.—Many people were present.—Much needless labour has been bestowed upon him.—There they were in heaps,—the groaning, the dying, and the dead.

EXERCISE II.

Make Sentences according to the preceding Rules.

RULE XXI.—PRONOUNS.

1. A Pronoun must agree with its Antecedent, or the Noun or Pronoun which it represents, in Gender, Number, or Person; as, "*Alfred* is unwell; *HE* is confined to his bed."

Here the Pronoun *he* is the Third Person, Singular Number, Masculine Gender, the same as its Antecedent "*Alfred*."

2. A Pronoun should have a Singular form.

(1.) When it represents one Singular Antecedent ; as, "*Henry* was quite well when I last saw *HIM*."

(2.) When it represents two or more Singular Antecedents taken separately ; as,

"The *oil* of peppermint, or any other volatile *oil*, dropped on paper, will soon evaporate ; no trace of *IT* will be left."

3. A Pronoun should have a Plural ;

(1.) When it has one Antecedent indicating Plurality ; as, "*Few men* are as wise as *THEY* might be."

(2.) When it has two or more Antecedents taken collectively ; as, "*Mary and Anna* always accomplish what *THEY* undertake." "*The council* were divided in *THEIR* sentiments."

EXERCISE I.

Supply the Pronouns.

Charlotte intends to go ; ... will leave to-morrow. — Every tree is known by ... fruit. — The queen put on ... royal attire. — The trees have lost ... foliage. — George put on ... gloves. — The soldiers have got ... new clothes. — Demosthenes conquered great natural difficulties ; ... became one of the greatest orators. — Minos and Thales sung to the lyre the laws which ... composed. ... My friend has arrived ; ... heartily welcome. — I have lost my hat ; have you seen ... — The church is rebuilding ; ... destroyed by fire. — The king and the queen had put on ... robes. — Get wisdom ; exalt ... ; and ... shall promote thee. — Adam and his wife hid ... among the trees ; but the eye of God discovered ...

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors :—

Answer not a fool according to their folly. — I have been here this six days. — Take handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it towards heaven, in the sight of Pharaoh ; and it shall become small dust. — Every tree is known by their fruit. — Those sort of people are very annoying. — Almost the *whole inhabitants were present. — The male amongst birds seem to discover no beauty, but in the colour of their species. — Those sorts of favours did real injury. — Rebecca took goodly raiment, which were with her in the house,

* *Whole* should not be joined to Common Nouns in the Plural ; as, "Almost the *whole* inhabitants were destroyed." It may, however, be joined to *Collective Nouns* in the Plural ; as, "*Whole* nations were scourged by the plague."

and put them upon Jacob.—Thou hast been absent this three hours.—The chasm made by the earthquake was twenty foot broad, and one hundred fathom in depth.—The fair sex, whose task is not to mingle in the labours of public life, has its own part assigned it to act.—He has been afflicted this many years.—The mind of man cannot be long without some food to nourish the activity of his thoughts.

4. The *form* of a Personal Pronoun should indicate Person and Number.

The Pronouns *I* and *We* denote the person or persons speaking or writing—"I," Singular—"We," Plural.

"*We*," "*ours*," and "*us*," are used in the Singular by Editors and Emperors; as,

"We, Alexander II., Emperor of all the Russias."—"We shall present *ourselves* as candidate at the next election." But this style is ungrammatical and objectionable, especially in ministers of the gospel.

Thou is used in Solemn Style to denote a person addressed; as, "*Thou* didst weave this verdant roof."

RULE XXII.—PRONOUNS.

1. When a Pronoun has two or more Antecedents separated in construction by *or* or *nor*, or in any other way, it must agree with them singly, and not as if taken together; as,

"Neither *Minos* nor *Thales* gained *his* reputation by arms."

2. The pronoun "*it*" often has an Indefinite or undetermined Antecedent; and may then represent any Gender, Person, or Number.

It is applied to persons as well as things; to the First and Second Persons, as well as to the Third Person, and to the Plural Number as well as to the Singular.—~~See~~ See Paragraph 5, page 41.

EXAMPLES.—"It rains."—"It was the students."—"A pleasant thing *it* is, to behold the sun."—"If ever there was a 'people's man,' in the true sense, *it* was Dr. Chalmers;"—yet it would be better to say, "*that man* was Dr. Chalmers."

RULE XXIII.—PRONOUNS.

1. Pronouns of different Persons, used in the same connection, should have their appropriate position.

The Second Person is placed first—the Third next, and the First last, as, “*You and James and I* have been invited.”

But when a fault is confessed this order is sometimes reversed; as, “*I and my people* have sinned.”

This position obtains also when we acknowledge a defeat or a common calamity; as,

“Then *I and you and all of us* fell down,
While bloody Treason flourished over us.”

2. The Pronoun and its Antecedent must not be introduced together as subjects of the same Verb; as, “*My trees they* are planted.” “*They*” is superfluous.

When strong emphasis is required, the use of the Pronoun is not only allowable, but even elegant; as, “*The LORD HE* is GOD.”

3. The Pronoun “them” must not be used Adjectively; as, “Bring me *them* books.”

EXERCISE I.

Supply Suitable Verbs and Pronouns.

Neither I nor you....courage sufficient.—You and my friends....loved me.—George is here;....came at noon.—The lamp is broken;....fell down.—It is impossible for us to be guilty; for....not present at the time.—Hugh and I would have gone to Leeds, if....could have left home.—John, Robert, and myself intend to speculate when....got sufficient money.—He and I have become rich,....want not your aid now.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

And all the persons they passed by me.—Francis he is a good scholar.—I do not like them persons.—Who rings the bell? Ma.—Whom did you call? He.—Them books are not worth reading.

—It were a little old fellow.—The wind it blew down the trees.—My people and I are wrong.—Your friend and you are come too late.—The great philosopher and statesman continued in public life till they were old.—The council was divided in its sentiments.—Every tree is known by their fruit.—Can any man, on their entrance into life, be fully secure that they shall not be deceived?—The mind of man cannot be satisfied long without food to nourish the activity of his thoughts.—The men they were there.

RULE XXIV.—PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun after *as* or *than*, either agrees with a Verb, or is governed by a Verb or Preposition understood; as, "She is taller than I," (*am*, understood.) "He rewarded him more than (*he rewarded*) me."

EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors:—

Louisa can write better than me; but I can read better than her.—We know how to trade as well as them.—I know how to write as well as him, but he is a better mathematician than me.—Thomas is more agreeable than him.—The work was much better executed by his brother than he.—We have reaped greater profits than them.—If permitted, we may fill the office as well as them that do.—Of whom was the dress bought? Of a draper; he whose shop is near St. Paul's.—Was any besides the draper present? Yes, both him and his clerk.—Who was the money paid to? To the draper and his clerk.—Who counted it? Both the clerk and him.

* Who despises me? Not me.—Who managed the business? Not him; for he was incompetent.—Who sent me the letter? Mary; it was her.—Whom did you meet? He and his father.—Who has borrowed your book? Him.

RULE XXV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Relative Pronouns agree with their Antecedents

* *Who*, following *than*, is used improperly in the Objective Case; as, "Sir Robert Peel, *than whom* no man is better qualified to conduct the affairs of the nation." This style is used by some eminent writers. They appear to substitute *than whom* for *compared with whom*. A superior arrangement may be adopted; as, "I speak of Sir Robert Peel, *who was better qualified than any other person to conduct*," &c.

in Gender, Number, and Person; as, "The man *who* is idle comes to ruin."

Here "*man*," the *Antecedent*, is Singular, Third Person, Masculine Gender; "*who*," the *Relative*, must also be Singular, Third Person, and Masculine Gender, to agree with "*man*." "*Man*" is the Nominative Case to the Verb "*comes*," and "*who*" is the Nominative Case to the Verb "*is*."

A *Relative Pronoun* always performs a double office, and is used *Substantively*; as, "He *who* studies will improve." "*Who*" relates to "*he*" and is the subject of "*studies*," hence it is used *Substantively*. Also *Conjunctively*—introducing an *Adjective Sentence*; as, "He *who* studies will improve." "*Who studies*" is a *Sentence* used to describe "*he*." "*Who*" introduces the *Sentence*—hence it is used *Conjunctively*.

2. *Who* and *whom* are applied to man, and to other intelligent beings; *which* to things; *that* to persons or things.

EXAMPLES.—"He *THAT* attends to his interior self, has business." "Too low *they* build, *WHO* build beneath the stars."—"He *WHOM* sea-severed realms obey."—"The books *WHICH* I had lost have been returned."—"Where is the *patience* now, *THAT* you so oft have boasted to retain?"

But the name of a person, taken as a *name merely*, or as a *title*, may be represented by the *Relative which*.

EXAMPLE.—"Shylock,—*WHICH* is but another name for selfishness."

EXERCISE I.

Supply suitable Pronouns, and tell which are the Antecedents.

The child.... is good will be rewarded.—Here is the person.... you wanted.—He.... all the servants obeyed.—The book.... you gave me is interesting.—Thou.... writest.—The man.... he blamed is not guilty.—The luggage.... I took with me is lost.—He.... thou lovedst is dead.—Is this the path.... leads out of the wood?—My sister.... lived with me, is gone to Ireland.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

The engine killed another man, which is the sixth which have lost their lives by this means.—That is the vice whom I hate.—They which seek wisdom will certainly find her.—This is the friend which I love.—This moon who rose last night.—Thou who has been a witness of the fact, can give an account of it.—Moses was the

meekest man whom we read of in the Old Testament.—The child *whom we have just seen is wholesomely fed.—It is the same picture which you saw before.—He is like a beast of prey †who destroys without pity.—They are the same persons who assisted us yesterday.—Solomon was the wisest man whom ever the world saw.—The child who I saw is the image of his father.

RULE XXVI.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The *Relative* is the Nominative Case to the Verb, when no Nominative comes between it and the Verb; as, “The man *who* rewarded me.” “The flowers *which* are fragrant.”

Which has sometimes a *clause* for its Antecedent; as, “*He is fond of learning, which* affords me much pleasure.” The clause, “He is fond of learning,” is the Antecedent to *which*.

2. When a *Nominative* comes between the Relative and the Verb, the *Relative* is governed by some word in its own member of the sentence.

EXAMPLES.—“He *who* preserves me, to *whom* I owe my being, *whose* I am, and *whom* I serve, is eternal.”—Here the Relative, in the first member denotes the Agent, “*He who* ;”—in the second it is governed by the Preposition “*to* ;”—in the third, it represents the possessor, “*whose I am* ;”—and in the fourth, the object of an action, “*whom*,” governed by the Verb “*serve*.”

3. When the Relative refers to two Antecedents of different persons, it agrees with either, according as the meaning of the sentence requires; as, “I am the person *who* have charge of the

* Sometimes *Who* and *which* are applied to children. But *that* seems preferable to either. In our translation of the Bible, *who* or *that* are applied to children, but never *which*.

† *That* is used instead of *who* or *which*,—1. After Adjectives of the Superlative degree.—2. After the words *same* and *all*, and frequently after *some* and *any*.—3. After two antecedents, the one requiring *who*, and the other *which*; as, “The lady and the dog *that* we saw in the park.”—4. After the Interrogative *who*? as, “Who *that* believed in a future life, would misspend the present one?”

slates;" or, "I am the person who has charge of the slates."

But such a mode of expression is seldom required, and, on account of its ambiguity, ought to be avoided.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Relatives and the Verbs to which they are the Nominatives.

My friend, who has just left me, is soon to return.—The master who teaches me is very kind.—I have good health now, which makes me glad.—We know whom we serve, and whom we love.—He is handsome and clever, which is a great recommendation.—The gentleman whom you met, and to whom you spoke, is my particular friend.—I acknowledge that I am the person who maintains the propriety of such measures.—I verily am the man who am a Jew.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors—

Thou **art* the Lord who did choose Abraham, and broughtest him forth out of Ur of Chaldees.—I am the man who command you.—I am the man who approves of wholesome discipline, and who recommend it to others; but I am not a person who promotes useless severity, or who object to mild and generous treatment.—I am the teacher who adopt that sentiment and maintains it.—I am a person who speaks but seldom.—Thou art the friend that hast often relieved me, and that hast not deserted me now in the time of peculiar need.

The king dismissed his minister without any inquiry, who had never before committed so unjust an action.—I sold my house, for a good sum, which was not large.—He is no friend to me in my distress, who has done this.

RULE XXVII.—POSITION OF PRONOUNS.

1. The Position of Relative Pronouns should be such as most clearly to indicate their Antecedents.

When a relative is the Subject or the Object of an Auxiliary Sentence, it should be placed next its Antecedent; as, "The *grave* **THAT** never spoke before."

To this rule there are exceptions;—"O *they* love least **THAT** let men know their love."

* When the Deity is addressed, it is more direct and solemn, to make the Relative agree with the second person.

When the Relative is the Object of a Prepositional Phrase, it comes between its Antecedent and the Auxiliary Sentence with which that Phrase is construed ; as, "We prize *that* most FOR WHICH *we labour* most."—"For *which*" modifies "*labour*," "*which*" relates to "*that*."

The Relative *that*, used as the Object of a Preposition, is placed before the Preposition ; as, "I have meat to eat *that* ye know not of." "The world *in which* we sojourn is not our home."

2. The Relative, whether the Subject or the Object of a Sentence, or the Object of a Phrase, can rarely be omitted without weakening the force of the expression.

EXAMPLES.—"For is there aught in sleep [] can charm the wise ?"—"The time may come [] you need not fly."—"It is a question [] I cannot answer."

But the suppression of the Relative is allowed when the position of the words is such as to prevent ambiguity or weaken the expression : as, "History is all the light we have in many cases ; and we receive from it a great part of the useful truths we have."

EXERCISE.

Supply the Relatives which are wanting or understood.

He undertook the noblest cause mankind can have at stake.—The throne we honour is the British throne.—Can all optics teach unfold thy form to please me so ?—I regretted to part with the friend I love.—The grave I visited was my father's grave.—The Plays Shakspeare wrote are immortal.—Some of the books we read will be read by the latest posterity.—I admired the trees I saw, and enjoyed the walk I had in the flower-garden.—Ah ! when shall we again have the pleasure we had then ?

RULE XXVIII.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Interrogative Pronouns are construed like Personal Pronouns.

EXAMPLES.—As the Subject of a Sentence—WHO *has* the lesson ?
As the Object of a Sentence—WHOM *seek* ye ?
As the Object of a Phrase—for WHAT *do we labour* ?

2. The word which answers a question has a construction similar to that of the word which asks it.

EXAMPLES.—*Whose book have you got? Mary's.*
How long were you going? Three days.
Where did you see him? In Birmingham.
Whence came they? From Ireland.

3. The Interrogative *what*, followed by the Conjunctions, *though*, *if*, and some others, commonly belongs to a principal Sentence understood, and on which the following Sentence depends for sense.

EXAMPLES.—“*What if the foot aspired to be the head?*” Meaning What [would be the consequence] if the foot, &c.—“*What though Destruction sweep these lovely plains?*”—Implying What [occasion have we to despair] though Destruction [should] sweep these lovely plains?

REMARKS ON PRONOUNS.

Sometimes *what* is improperly used for *that*; as, “They will never believe but *what* I have been entirely to blame.” “I am not satisfied but *what*,” &c. instead of “but *that*.” *Somewhat* is sometimes used improperly; as, “These punishments seem to have been exercised in *somewhat* an arbitrary manner.” It ought to be, “in a manner which is, in some respects, arbitrary.”

An Antecedent of the Third Person is sometimes omitted; as, “Who lives to nature, rarely can be poor.” “He who,” &c.

What is always equivalent to “*that which*,” or “*the things which*.” (Page 43.) *What* is sometimes a Simple Relative; as, “And *what* love can do, that dares love attempt.”

Whoever, *whosoever*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, and *who* (used for *whoever*), have a construction similar to *what*: as, “*Whatever* purifies, fortifies also the heart.”—“*Who* lives to Nature, rarely can be poor.”—“*Who* lives to Fancy, never can be rich.”

What, *which*, *whatever*, and *whatsoever*, are often used Adjectively; as, “*What* book have you?”—“*Whatever* object is most dear.”—“*Whatsoever* things are honest.”—“*Which* hope we have.”

That is sometimes improperly used for the Relative *what*; as, “Take *that* is thine.”

What is sometimes substituted for an Adverbial Phrase; as, “*What* [in *what* respect] shall it profit a man?”

What is sometimes used as an Exclamation or Interjection ; as, "What ! Is thy servant a dog ?"

Whosoever, whosoever, whomsoever, whatsoever, whichsoever, follow the rules applicable to the original words. The *so* is an Adverb, which, in its general acceptation, means *in like manner* ; and *ever*, which is also an Adverb, means, at *any time, at all times, or always*. These two words thus joined in *whosoever*, mean, *who in any case that may be* ; and so of the other words.

We sometimes omit the *so*, and say, *whoever, whatever*, and even *whoever*. But this is a mere abbreviation. The *so* is understood ; and, it is best not to omit to write it. Sometimes the *soever* is separated from the Pronoun : 'What man *soever* he might be.' But the main thing is to understand the *reason* upon which the use of these words stands : for, if you understand that, you will use the words properly."—COBBETT.

As, when it has the force of a Relative Pronoun, has for its Antecedent the word "*such*"—used Adjectively, or, as an Adjective Pronoun. See page 44, third paragraph.

RULE XXIX.—VERBS.

A Verb must agree with its Subject or Nominative in Number, and Person ; as, "*I teach* ;" "*thou teachest* ;" "*he teaches*."

The form of a Verb is determined by its Subject or Nominative. Strictly speaking, Verbs have no Number and Person. The term is used to denote a variation in the form of a Verb to correspond with the Number and Person of its Nominative. Thus,

In the Singular Number no Affix is used for the First Person ; as, *I walk*.

Est, or *st* is added for the Second Person, solemn style ; as, *Thou walkest*.

s is added for the Third Person ; as, *John walks*.

In the Plural Number, Verbs are not varied to denote the Person of their Nominatives.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Verbs and the Nominatives.

The boy was rude.—The man labours well.—The apple is good.—Great calamities have come upon me.—Thou actest wisely.—We wish thee success.—She is misrepresented.—Thou wilt be promoted.—They are mistaken.—Thou art foolish.—You have been deceived.—I ride on the moor daily.—She will come next Midsummer.—I am respected.

EXERCISE II.

Supply several appropriate Verbs to each Nominative.

You....said it.—I....done it.—Thou....prudently.—He....loved by all.—The regiment....return.—The army....returned.—The criminal....executed last week, and a great crowd....present.—Thou....made a mistake.—The prevalence of infidelity..alamentable circumstance.—I....commended by him.—Thou....respected.

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors:—

A slaughter-house is a place where cattle is killed.—Sick people speaks languidly, because their voices is weak.—I loves my sister.—He came upon me unawares, for I were not thinking of him.—Thou shall not follow a multitude to do evil.—Idle boys learns their lessons badly.—Them people alarmed us, and thou did not pity us.—The days of man is but as grass.—Him and her was married.—So much both of ability and merit are seldom found.—All things was created by him.—In him were happily blended true dignity with softness of manners.—In him we live and moves.—What avails the best sentiments, if persons do not live suitably to them?—He dare not act contrary to his instructions.—Not one of those whom thou sees clothed in purple are happy.—The mechanism of clocks and watches, were totally unknown a few centuries ago.—A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.—There's two or three of us who have seen the work.—The sincere is always esteemed.

RULE XXX.—VERBS.

The Infinitive Mode, or a part of a Sentence, may be the Subject, or Nominative Case to a Verb; as, "To SLEEP *is* refreshing." "His PRODIGAL CONDUCT *was* the cause of his ruin." (See Rule iv. 2.)

What is refreshing? *To sleep.* What was the cause of his ruin? *His prodigal conduct.* The Infinitive Mode, and the Phrase, are Nominatives, or the Subjects of the Verbs *is* and *was*.

EXERCISE I.

Point out the Infinitive, the Clause, and the Verb agreeing with each.

To live virtuously, is to live happily.—To be temperate in eating and drinking, to use exercise in the open air, and to preserve the *mind* free from tumultuous emotions, are the best preservatives of *health*.—To play without quarrelling *is* pleasant.—To be good *is*

to be happy.—To see the sun is pleasant.—To err is human, to forgive, divine.—A desire to excel others in learning, is very praiseworthy.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

To do unto all men, as we would that they, in similar circumstances, should do unto us, constitute the great principle of virtue.—To be of pure and humble mind, to exercise benevolence towards others, and to cultivate piety towards God, is the sure means of becoming peaceful and happy.—To live soberly, righteously, and pliously, are required of all men.—To be spiritually-minded, are life and peace.—The erroneous opinions which we form concerning happiness and misery, gives rise to all the mistaken and dangerous passions that embroils our life.—That warm climates should accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration, are very reasonable to believe.

RULE XXXI.—VERBS.

The Verb *to be* has the same Case after it as it has before it, when the Nouns or Pronouns mean the same person or thing.

EXAMPLES.—"It is I, be not afraid." "I am he." "Who do men say that I am?" "Whom do they represent me to be?"

"It" before the Verb *is*, is in the Nominative, and therefore "I," after it, meaning the same person, must also be in the Nominative. *It* and *I* are in Apposition.

The following expressions are incorrect:—"It is me," should be, "*It is I.*"—"It was him," should be, "*It was he.*"—"If I were her," should be, "*If I were she.*"—"If I were him," should be, "*If I were he.*"—"Was it him?" should be, "*Was it he?*"

The omission of *to be* is not improper. When understood, it has the same case before and after it, as when it is expressed; as, "He seems (i. e. *to be*) the leader of the party."

The Verb *to be* sometimes comes between two Nouns of different Numbers; as, "The great evil is the taxes." That is, the taxes constitute the evil; but we cannot say, The evil are the taxes. Avoid, then, the use of the Verb *to be* in all such cases. Say, The great evil consists of, or arises from, or is produced by, the taxes.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Noun and Pronouns in Apposition according to the Rule, and state the Case of each.

It is he.—She is a young girl.—All men are animals.—You are the persons.—I took it to be him.—This is a beautiful hat.—

That gentleman was the person.—He was a bad boy.—Great Britain is an island.—The lion is the king of the forest.—The dog is a useful animal.—This is a magnificent palace.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

He so much resembled my brother, that, at first sight, I took it to be he.—Search the Scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life; and they are them which testify of me.—I know not whether it were them who conducted the business; but I am certain it was not him.—After all their professions, is it possible to be them?—Be composed: it is me.—It could not have been her, for she always behaves discreetly.—Well may you be afraid; it is him indeed.—I cannot tell who has befriended me, unless it is him from whom I have received many benefits.—I would act the same part if I were her.—If it was not him, who do you think him to be?—Whom do the people say that we are?—It might have been him, but there is no proof of it.

RULE XXXII.—VERBS.

1. Transitive or Active Verbs govern Nouns and Pronouns in the Objective Case; as, “She *assists me*.” “They *despise us*.”

Some Verbs are both Active and Neuter; as, “He *broke a window*.” “The window *broke*.” “Cold *blows* the wind.” “The wind *blows* the dust.”

Transitive or Active Verbs do not admit Prepositions after them to complete the Predicate.

2. The Object of an action or relation must be in the Objective Case; as, “Virtue *secures happiness*.”

The Object of a Sentence may be,

1. *A Noun* “Now twilight lets her *curtain* down,
2. *A Pronoun* .. And pins *it* with a star.”
3. *A Phrase* “I doubted *his having been a soldier*.”
4. *A Sentence* “But Brutus says, *he was ambitious*.”
“I saw *how you cheated me*.”

3. *A Verb* necessarily Intransitive or Neuter,

should not have an Object, except by poetic license, or for other rhetorical purposes.

EXAMPLE.—“I sit *me* down, a pensive hour to spend.”

4. Some Intransitive Verbs may have Objects of their own signification.

EXAMPLES.—“I have *fought* a good *fight*.”——“I *dreamed* a *dream* that was not all a dream.”——“We ran a *race*.”——“He walked the horse to the field.”

5. Some Verbs become Transitive or Active by means of a Preposition or Prepositional Prefix.

EXAMPLES.—“John goes to school;” *goes* is Intransitive.——“John *undergoes* punishment;” *undergoes* is Transitive.——“The tower looks well;” *looks* is Intransitive.——“The tower *overlooks* the city;” *overlooks* is Transitive.

Obs. 1.—In such examples of Compound Verbs in Predicate, it is generally—not always—the *Preposition in Composition* that makes the Verb Transitive. The Substantive following is, logically, the Object of the Preposition; grammatically considered, it is the Object of the Predicate, and should be parsed accordingly.

Obs. 2.—Verbs made Transitive by this use of Prefixes, cannot elegantly be used in the Passive Voice.

EXAMPLES.—“John undergoes punishment.”—We may not say, “Punishment *is undergone* by John.”——“The tower overlooks the city.” We may not say, “The city *is overlooked* by the tower.”

Obs. 3.—Prepositions *not in composition*, used with Intransitive Verbs to introduce Adjunct Phrases, are construed with the Predicate when the Verb becomes Passive.

EXAMPLES.—“The children laughed at him.” “He *was laughed at* by the children.”——“We often thought of our friends at home.”——“Our friends at home *were often thought of*.”

But such expressions are not elegant, and should be avoided when the same thought can be otherwise expressed. Thus,

“He *was derided* by the children.”

“Our friends at home *were often remembered*.”

Obs. 4.—When a Neuter Verb expresses *state*, and not *action*, it is better to use the Verb *be* instead of *have*.

EXAMPLES.—“He *has* gone,” “he *has* returned,” “he *has* come,” imply previous *activity*; but “he *is* gone,” “he *is* returned,” “he *is* come,” imply the result of that activity—a *state*.

EXERCISE I.

Point out the Objective Case, and the governing Verb.

He praised me.—I rewarded him.—He thanked me.—Virtue rewards her followers; vice degrades men.—Truth ennobles her.—He held me fast.—Alexander conquered the Persians.—Brutus stabbed Cæsar.—He has wounded me.—Hold my hand; support my head.—Let me lean upon thee.—Thou hast helped me, and I love thee.

EXERCISE II.

Supply the Objective Case.

I have been wanting.... a long time.—I censured....—Did you tell.... I was here?—This is the man.... the king delighteth to honour.—The man.... I raised from obscurity is dead.—.... did you entertain so freely?—That is the person.... you must receive cordially.—He invited my brother and.... to inspect his books.—.... I highly esteem.—I must dismiss....—He is killing ... by intemperance.—Close study wearies....—If sinners entice.... yield not to....

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors:—

We should fear the Almighty, even he who can save or destroy.—Thou I will not forsake.—He has injured himself.—She loves he.—They that honour me, I will honour.—Let thou and I try the experiment.—My friend who I esteem.—She for a long time I have known.—Ye only have I known.—George loves we.—He will one day repent him of evil indulgences.—It will be very difficult to agree his conduct with the principles he professes.—Who did they entertain so freely?—She who is indolent, reprove sharply.—He ingratiates with some, by traducing others.

REMARKS.

In *position*, the Object of a Sentence commonly follows the Predicate; as, “Virtue SECURES HAPPINESS.”

But by the poets, and for rhetorical effect, the Object is often placed before the Predicate; as, “*Him* from my childhood I HAVE KNOWN.” “We serve a Monarch *whom* we LOVE,—a God *whom* we ADORE.”

Some Transitive Verbs take two or more Objects after them; as, “In the beginning God created the *heaven* and the *earth*.”—The two *Objectives* are *heaven* and *earth*.—“By this dispensation we HAVE LOST a *neighbour*, a *friend*, a *brother*.”

The Verbs *appoint, call, choose, constitute, create, elect, make, dub, name, and proclaim*, sometimes have two Objects; as, "They named him JOHN." "They dubbed him KNIGHT;" that is, "They KNIGHTED him."

As Active Transitive Verbs require an Objective Case, and Neuter Verbs seldom admit an Objective Case, the Active Verbs *lay, set, and raise*, cannot properly be substituted for the Neuter Verbs *lie, sit, and rise*. Such expressions as, "I will go and *lay* down," "He *set* on the sofa," "She *rose* the box from the floor," are therefore incorrect.

Transitive, or Active Verbs may have, as their Objects, Substantive Phrases; as, "I doubt *his having been a Soldier*."—Doubted what? Not "*his*," nor "*having*," nor "*been*," nor "*a*," nor "*soldier*," but the fact asserted by the whole Phrase—"His having been a soldier."

RULE XXXIII.—VERBS.

1. A Verb in the Infinitive Mode is governed by a Verb, an Adjective, or a Noun.

EXAMPLES.—1. By a Verb, as, "Alfred LOVES to read."—2. By an Adjective; as, "It is PLEASANT to walk in the fields."—3. By a Noun; as, "It is a PLEASURE to assist you."

"To read," is the Object of the Verb "*loves*," and is governed by it in the Infinitive Mode. "To walk" is the Object of the Adjective "*pleasant*," and "to assist" is the Object of the Noun "*pleasure*."

2. Infinitive Verbs following the Verbs *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see*, and sometimes *behold, have, help, know, observe, perceive*, and some others, do not require the Preposition *to*.

EXAMPLES.—"I plunged in, and BADE him follow;" (*to understood*).—"He DARES not touch a hair of Cataline."—"LET me hear thy voice awake."—"I would not have you go to day."

But *to* is generally used after the Passive of most of these Verbs; as, "*He was made to perform it.*" "*He was seen to go.*" and sometimes *to* is used after the Active, in the Past Tense, especially of *have*, a principal Verb; as, "*I had to run all the way.*"

An Infinitive Phrase may be 1. The Subject of a Sentence; (as already stated); as, "*To be able to read well*, is a valuable accomplishment."—2. The Object of a Preposition; as "*We were ABOUT to retire.*"—3. A Logical Adjunct; as, "*It is our duty to make good use of our time.*"

3. The Infinitive, like other Phrases, is some-

times *independent* in construction; as, "And, *to be plain with you*, I think you the more unreasonable of the two."

"For" must not be used before the Infinitive; as, "They came ~~for~~ to reprove me;" should be, "They came *to reprove* me."

EXERCISE I.

Supply the Infinitive Mode, and underline the governing word.

I heard him.... a discourse.—He can see the enemy....—Thou lettest him.....—The sun was seen.... with splendour.—I heard him.... a great noise.—I saw the sun....—I heard him.... that it was not true.—Ye dare not.... it.—I dare.... in the ship.... The Canary was heard.....—I saw him.... it.—I have observed him.... very prudently.—I wish.... to America.—I dare not.... that.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

I need not to solicit him to do a kind action.—He dares not to assert it.—You ought not walk too hastily.—I dare not to proceed so hastily, lest I should give offence.—We heard the thunder to roll.—I have seen some young persons to conduct themselves very discreetly.—It is pleasing to see him to resist such temptations.—It is the difference of their conduct which makes us to approve the one, and to reject the other.—I dare not to walk too hastily.—I heard them to sing very harmoniously.—They need not to call upon her.—I bid my servant to do this, and he doeth it.—Bid her to return that book.—It is pleasing when we see the mind to maintain its patience and tranquillity, under injuries and affliction, and to cordially forgive oppressors.

RULE XXXIV.—VERBS.—MODE AND TENSE.

1. That Mode and Tense of a Verb should be used which will most clearly convey the **SENSE** intended.

Obs. 1.—A Verb used to denote a conditional fact, or a contingency should have the Contingent or the Potential form.

EXAMPLES.—"WERE I Alexander I would accept the terms."—"So would I, WERE I Permento."—"If we *would* improve, we must study."

Obs. 2.—But if the condition is assumed as unquestionable, the Verb must be in the Indicative Mode.

EXAMPLES.—"If thou *hadst* known."—"If John *has* offended you, he will make due apology."

2. That form of the Verb should be used which will most clearly express the **TIME** intended.

Obs. 3.—In constructing Complex Sentences, the Tense of the Principal Sentence does not necessarily control the Tense of the Verb in the Auxiliary Sentence.

EXAMPLES.—"I *said* in my haste, all men *are* liars."—"He *has* been so long *idle*, that he *knows* not how to work."—"Copernicus first *demonstrated* that the earth *revolves* upon its axis."—"Those that *seek* me early shall *find* me."

"And when we *are parted*, and when thou *art dead*,
O, where *shall* we *lay* thee? his followers said."

Obs. 4.—The Infinitive Present generally indicates indefinite time—the Finite Verb on which it depends commonly determines its Tense.

EXAMPLES.—"I *went* TO SEE him."—Present in form, but Past in sense.—"I *shall go* TO SEE him."—Present in form, but Future in sense.

Obs. 5.—But generally, to indicate past time, the Past Infinitive is used, *except when the Infinitive follows Verbs denoting purpose, expectation, wish, &c.*

EXAMPLES.—"We *ought* to HAVE GONE."—"I *purposed* TO WRITE many days ago;" (not TO HAVE WRITTEN).—"I *expected* TO MEET him yesterday;" (not TO HAVE MET.) ~~§~~ However long it now is since I thought of *meeting* him, "to meet" was then present to me, and must still be considered as present when I recall that time, and the thoughts of it.

3. That form of a Verb should be used which will correctly and fully express the **fact** intended.

Common Errors.—"There let him *lay*."—Byron.

"To you I *fly* for refuge."—Murray,

Corrected.—"There let him *lie*."—"To you I *flee* for refuge."

~~§~~ This Rule will apply also to Participles; as, "He was *laytng* in bed;"—Should be, "*lying* in bed."

Obs. 1.—The form of the *Active Voice* is properly used when the Agent of the action expressed is made the Subject of the Sentence.

EXAMPLES.—"Columbus discovered America."—"Caesar invaded Gaul."

OBS. 2.—The *Passive form* is used when the Object of the act is made the Subject of the Sentence.

EXAMPLES.--"America *was discovered*."—"Gaul *was invaded*."

OBS. 3.—The Agent of the action is made the Object of an Adjunct Phrase, when the Verb takes the Passive form.

EXAMPLES.—*Active Voice*.—"William **HAS SOLVED** the problem."—"Mary **GAVE** me a rose."

Passive Voice.—"The problem *has been solved* by William."—"A rose *was given* [to] me by Mary."

§ 35 Action is sometimes improperly predicated of a Passive Subject.

EXAMPLES.—"You are mistaken"....for...."You mistake."
"The house *is building*"....for...."The house *is being built*;"....which means, "The house *is be* [com] *ing* built," i. e. people are at work upon it. The "house cannot act—it cannot "build."

But some Verbs in the Passive Voice are sometimes followed by an Object:—as, "He *was offered* a large sum for the farm."—"He *was asked* too great a price."

REMARK.—This is one of the instances in which *authority* is against *philosophy*. For an act cannot properly be predicated of a Passive Subject. Many good writers properly reject this idiom; as,

"Mansfield's prophecy *is being realized*;"—not—is realizing.

Therefore the above sentences would read better thus; "A large sum was offered for his farm."—"The price asked of him was too great." Also the following:—"He was much pleased with the ship, when he was shown her by the officers," should be, "When the officers showed him the ship, he was much pleased with it."—"I have been offered a book for my knife,"—should be, "I have had a book offered for my knife."

EXERCISE I.

Place the Verb according to the order of time.

He expected me (*verb*, employ) him.——It was their duty (*interpose*) their good offices.——He was better than I expected (*find*) him.——The last week I intended (*come*).——It would have afforded me no pleasure, if I (*purchase*) it.——From his biblical knowledge, he appears (*study*) the Scriptures with great attention.——It was difficult (*use or manage*) such machines.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors :—

Was I in your place, I would submit. — If Richard have offended you, he will apologize. — I purposed to have seen him many days ago. — I expected to have visited you last week. — He was a coward, and I saw him fly. — It is a bold assertion, but you are mistaken. — The beautiful palace is building. — I have been offered a reward for my services. — It was difficult to have managed such machines. — I always intended to have remembered him in my will. — To be censured by my father would have distressed me. — After we visited the continent, we were glad to return to England. — George had been in Turkey several months, and seen the Sultan. — I should be obliged to you, if you will remit me the money. — It was a pleasure to have heard him commend me. — The next May I shall be in this country five years.

RULE XXXV.—VERBS.

1. Verbs in the *Indicative Mode* simply indicate, point out, declare a state or circumstance, or ask a question; as “He *respects* me;” “Who *has built* the house?”

2. Verbs in the *Contingent Mode* express doubt, contingency, supposition, or condition, connected with futurity; “If he be industrious, he will be rewarded;” “He will not be happy *unless* he fear God.”

Conjunctions are generally used in the *Contingent Mode*, and sometimes in the *Indicative Mode*. See page 152, Obs. 1, 2.

The *Contingent Mode* does not, therefore, depend on the *Conjunction*, but on the *contingent* or *doubtful* nature of the statement, and the *auxiliary* which is understood. See page 57, Sec. 4.

Lest and *that* joined to a command require the *Contingent Mode*; as, “Be not slothful, *lest* thou come to poverty.”

If, followed by *but*, when *futurity* is implied, requires the *Contingent Mode*; as “If he *do but* frown upon thee, thou art undone.”

The Past Contingent is often used without a Conjunction, the order of the Nominative Verb being inverted as, "*Had he been present, he would have entertained us.*"

EXERCISE I.

Point out the Contingent and Indicative Modes and their Nominatives.

If he thinks I have done it, he is mistaken.—If he acquire riches they will corrupt his mind.—If Richard gain the esteem of his friends, he will delight his parents.—Though he is high, he hath respect to the lowly. Though he is nobly born, he is very humble.—As the steward was present, the servants behaved themselves.—If he be present, ask him to visit me.—Oh! that his heart were tender!—If he do promise he will certainly perform.—If thou livest virtuously thou art happy.—Though I die I will venture.—Take heed that thou speak not angrily to him.—If the weather be fine I shall come.

EXERCISE II.

Supply the Verbs of the proper Mode.

Unless he (to exert) himself, he will not succeed.—If it (to rain) to-morrow, I shall not come.—Take care that your amusements (to be) of an irreproachable kind.—If he (to call) it cold now, in September, what will he call it in January?—Unless he (to mean) what he says, he is faithless.—Watch, lest, coming suddenly the master (to find) you sleeping—I can give no answer until he (to decide).—Wherever he (to go) I shall accompany him.—If he (to be) industrious, he will succeed, though he only (to possess) moderate talents.

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors:—

If he speak as he thinks, he may be trusted.—He will be punished if he transgresses the law.—If he be but in health, I am content.—Unless he learns faster, he will be no scholar.—If thou have promised, be faithful to thy engagement.—I shall walk in the fields to-day unless it rains.—Despise not any condition, lest it happens to be your own.—His apology was so plausible, that many befriended him, and thought he were innocent.—Remember what thou wert, and be humble.—However that affair terminates, my conduct will be unimpeachable.—If he is but expert in the business, he will find employment.—If he does promise, he will certainly perform.—If the day is fine, I shall walk.—Whether he improve or not, I cannot say.—Let him that is sanguine, take heed lest he miscarries.—Though he be high, he hath respect to the lowly.

RULE XXXVI.—PARTICIPLES.

1. A Participle has the same construction as *the part of speech* for which it is used.

2. A Participle used as a Noun, may be the Subject of a Sentence.

EXAMPLES.—“The *ploughing* of the wicked *is* sin.”—“The *beginning* of strife *is* as when one letteth out water.”

3. A Participle used as a Noun may be the Object of a Verb.

EXAMPLE.—“I doubted *his having been a soldier*.”—“While you strive to bear BEING LAUGHED AT.”

4. A Participle used as a Noun may be the Object of a Preposition.

EXAMPLES.—“In the BEGINNING.” “Poverty turns our thoughts too much *upon* the SUPPLYING of our wants; riches *upon* ENJOYING our superfluities.

5. The Present Participle used as a Noun takes an Article before it, and after it in the same manner as the simple Noun: as, “*The spending of money, and the ruling of the tongue are too hard for most people.*”

Such phrases would sometimes be right, were the *article* and *of* both omitted: as, “The sum of the moral law consists in *obeying* God, and *loving* your neighbour.” This mode of expression is in many cases preferable to the other.

The Present Participle with a Possessive before it sometimes takes *of* after it, and sometimes not: as, “*Their* blaming of the man led to his discharge.”—“By *his* studying the Scriptures he became wise.”

A Noun before the Present Participle is put in the Possessive Case: as, “Every thing will depend on *the bill's* passing immediately.” “A fair wind is the cause of a *vessel's* sailing.”

EXERCISE I.

Select the Participles, and state which are the Subjects of Sentences, the Object of a Verb or Preposition.

He was sent to prepare the way by the preaching of repentance.—He was blessing the multitude.—The mourning for the dead continued.—The taking of the medicine was difficult.—He is forgetting his vows.—The farmer is ploughing his field, and his boy is tending the cattle.—In the beginning of the disease there was hope.—He is bent upon gratifying his desires.—He displeased me by playing too long.—His insulting me was the cause of my severity.—My leaving him distressed him.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

The thief coughing awoke them.—Success will depend on the pupil composing frequently.—For his escaping of that stratagem, he is indebted to me.—Our approving their folly, may cause them to be more foolish.—Who I am obeying.—I said little respecting you, he, and they.—He is a man who I am far from thinking happy.—Commending of others makes him envious.—The not attending to my advice is the cause of his suffering.—He realizes pleasure in educating of others.—By observing of these cautions, you may escape danger.—By the exercising our memories, they become more retentive.—Learning of languages is very difficult.

RULE XXXVII.—PARTICIPLES.

1. The Perfect Participle, and not the Past Tense, must follow the Verbs *have* and *be*; as, "The peasants *have risen*," (not *rose*.) "He *had forsaken* his home," (not *forsook*.)

2. The Perfect Participle must not be used for the Past Tense. It is improper to say, "He *be-gun*," for "He *began*," "He *drunk*," for "He *drank*."

EXERCISE I.

Supply suitable Verbs and Participles according to the Rule.

I have (*verb*, to read) a letter.—I have (to forbear) to punish.—He (to ring) the bell violently.—I have (to catch) the bird.—I (to swim) across the river.—He (to drink) greedily.—He had (to mis-take) his true interests; he had not (to choose) the part of honour and virtue; and he found himself (to forsake) by his former friends.—I was (to overcome) with fatigue.—All my kindness (to forget).—I (to speak) to him on the subject.—He let the glass (to fall) and (to break) it.—She (to sing) the song sweetly.—While running, he (to fall) and (to break) his leg.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors:—

They begun to applaud.—When he came to the well, he drunk greedily.—The laws of Draco are said to have been wrote with blood.—Above yon hills the sun has rose.—Had I been near, he would have spoke to me.—He had shook hands with my friend.

—He begun very pathetically; and his language was interwoven with sighs.—Alas! he has mistook the way to success.—I have wrote him a severe letter.—He withdrew from the contest, because his courage forsaked him.—The cloth is wove well; the tailor has began to cut it.—He eat all the pears.—Mr. Smith taught me.—The Serpentine was froze over.—All the bread was eat.—The price of corn has rose very high.—He heapt* up vast wealth; but his life and death were miserable.

REMARKS ON PARTICIPLES.

Participles are often Absolute; as, "*Generally speaking*, he is kind."

A Participle used as an Adjective belongs to a Noun or Pronoun which it describes, and may be modified by Adverbs; as, "Those visages do cream and mantle like a *STANDING pond*."

"We saw *it plunging* 'mid the billowy strife,
And *dashing* madly on to fearful doom."

"Mid the billowy strife" is an Adjunct of "plunging." "Madly," and "on," and to "fearful doom" are Adjuncts of "dashing;" hence they are *Adverbs*.

Participles are seldom used Adverbially without the termination *ly*; as, "He spoke *FEELINGLY* on that subject."

A Participle used as a Preposition shows a relation of its Object to the word which its Phrase qualifies; as, "He *said* nothing *concerning* his temporal affairs."

To determine whether a Participle is used as a Preposition or an Adjective, observe,—

1. A Participle used as a Preposition, does not relate to a Noun or a Pronoun, it generally introduces an Adverbial Phrase.

2. A Participle used as an Adjective, always relates to a Noun or Pronoun, it generally introduces an Adjective Phrase.

A Participle used in Predicate asserts an act, being, or state, and may be modified by Adverbs; as, "We are *anxiously* *EXPECTING* to hear from William."

The Participial Phrase should not be employed when the use of the Infinitive Phrase would be more elegant; as, "It deserves *remarking*."—better "It deserves *to be remarked*."—"He refused *complying* with the regulations"—better,....to comply with the regulations.

* Participles ending in *ed*, must not be contracted by changing *ed* into *t*; as, *surpass* for *surpassed*: *walkt* for *walked*, &c.

RULE XXXVIII.—ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs belong to Verbs, Adjectives, and other adverbs which they modify.

2. Two Negatives in the same Clause or Sentence, destroy each other, and convey the sense of an affirmative; as, "*Nor* did they *not* understand him;" that is, they did understand him."

Negative Prefixes in derivative words have the same force as Negative Adverbs; as, "He was not unmindful of his obligations." "That custom would not be inappropriate to the occasion." In such cases two Negatives are correct, and form a pleasing and a delicate variety of expression; as, "His language, though simple, is *not inelegant*;" that is, *It is elegant*.

3. Adverbs are usually placed before Adjectives, after Verbs, and between the Auxiliary and the Participle; as, "She is *very* intelligent."—"He spoke *well*, and was *attentively* heard by the whole assembly."

Most Adverbs are *derivative words*, and are generally formed by adding *ly* (formerly written *lie*—a contraction of *like*) to its primitive; as, "A *just* man will deal JUSTLY"—*justlike*.—"A *foolish* man will act *foolishly*."

When an Adjective supplies the place of an Adverb by representation, the Adjective form should be retained; as, "The house was painted *green*."—*Expanded*; "The house was painted *with green paint*."

Adverbs sometimes supply the place of Verbs which they modify; as, "*Back* to thy punishment, false fugitive."—"I'll *away* to the pleasant land."

4. The Position of Adverbs should be such as most clearly to convey the sense intended. The following directions should be observed:—

Adverbs which modify Verbs generally precede a Single Verb in Predicate; as, "Man *naturally* SEEKS his own happiness."—"Then, *when I am thy captive*, TALK of chains."

5. The Adverb is sometimes placed before the Verb to give emphasis, and sometimes at a distance after it; as, "The people **FREELY** contributed to the funds." "He *left* the meeting **ABRUPTLY**."

When the Predicate consists of more than one word, the Adverb is commonly placed after the first word in Predicate; as, "We **CAN** not HONOUR our country with too deep a reverence."—"I **HAVE** always BEEN an admirer of happy human faces."

Adverbs modifying Adjectives are placed before their Adjectives; as, "The *very* **RICH** man can never be *truly* **HAPPY**."—"The *selfish* man can never be *truly* **POLITE**."

Adverbs are placed before other Adverbs which they modify; as, "*How* **LIGHTLY** mounts the muse's wing."—"Too **LOW** they build, who build beneath the stars."

23 The judgment and taste of the writer are required to decide in many cases as to the Position of Adverbs.

EXERCISE I.

Write out the Adverbs, and the Words which they qualify.

O my friend, I love thee well, and I will never forsake thee.—My sister is very poorly.—Wretchedness is ever an attendant on intemperance.—The horse was very severely treated.—Few persons have risen so rapidly.—He is very studious.—She sews neatly, and is always diligent.—She is truly a noble lady.—I seldom see him now.—I succeeded badly at the market to-day.—When once aboard that ship, I shall see this land no more.—Always rise early.—How have I loved thee? O most dearly.—None could love so well.

EXERCISE II.

Change the two Negatives into an Affirmative.

Neither riches nor honours, nor no such perishing things, can satisfy the immortal mind.—The king nor the queen was not all deceived in the matter.—Precept nor discipline is not so forcible as example.—Do not be undecided.—The measure is so exceptionable, that we cannot by no means permit it.—Do not let your letter be incorrect.—He is not an impartial judge.—Such conduct is not disreputable.—He was not unable to travel.—He was neither uninvited nor unwelcome.

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors:—

He has been exceeding good to me.—Nor did they not believe him.—He was extreme indolent, and is now very bad off.—The conspiracy was the easier discovered on account of its being known

to so many.—We may happily live though we are poor.—He does not act wisely, nor take no proper measures to effect his purpose.—From these indications, we may hope for a soon and prosperous result.—I never regretted doing good, nor shall not now.—I cannot by no means allow such conduct.—I have received no letter neither from him nor his father.—Be upright, nor take no semblance or disguise.—I cannot eat no more.—Neither the honours of this world, nor no such evanescent things can satisfy an immortal mind.

REMARKS ON ADVERBS.

The Adverbs *yes, yea, no, nay*, are independent in construction.

Enough is always placed after its Adjective; as, "The box is large enough."

Never generally precedes a single Verb; except *be*, which it follows, but not in all cases; as, "He never is idle."—"We are never neglected." We may with propriety say, "Never be you intemperate."

Not only, not merely, should be so placed as to indicate the clauses which they qualify; as, "He received *not only* the approval of his constituents, but also their hearty support."

Although Mr. Murray and other Grammarians have recommended *hither, whither, thither*, to follow Verbs implying motion, that use of them is now deemed unnecessary. It is a matter of indifference whether we say, "Come hither," or "Come here;" probably the latter is more elegant and familiar.

Not when it qualifies the Present Participle comes *before* it; as, "Not having known the scheme proposed."

Never is often improperly used for *ever*; as, "If I make my hands *never* so clean;" should be "*ever* so clean."

From should seldom be used before *hence, thence, and whence*, because it is implied. "*Hence*," means "*from this*;" "*thence*" means "*from that place*." In some cases, however, the omission of *from* would render the language stiff and disagreeable.

Some Grammarians say that "*while*" should not be used as a Noun; yet it was so used by our best writers. Addison says, "It might be here worth our *while* to examine—."

Where is only used in reference to time. "*Since when*" ought to be "*Since which time*."

RULE XXXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

1. A Preposition shows a relation of its Object to the Word which its Phrase qualifies; as, "This *is the isle of* beauty."

Here the Preposition *of* governs the Noun "*beauty*," and shows the relation between "*isle*" and "*beauty*."

OBS. 1. Pupils often find it difficult to determine the Antecedent term of a relation expressed by a Preposition—examples sometimes occur in which the relation of the Object of a Preposition seems to exist, not to any word, but to the whole Sentence. Generally this question can be settled by ascertaining *which word is qualified by the Phrase* introduced by a Preposition—that Word is the Antecedent term of relation.

EXAMPLE.—"A flood *of* glory bursts *from* all the skies."

Here the Phrase "*of* glory" specifies "*flood*;" hence "*flood*" is the Antecedent term of the relative expressed by "*of*"; and the Phrase is Adjective. "*From* all the skies" modifies "*bursts*"; hence "*bursts*" is the Antecedent term; and the Phrase is Adverbial.

2. Prepositions govern Nouns, Pronouns, and Present Participles in the Objective Case.

OBS. 2.—The Object of a Preposition may be a *Word*; as, "The time *of* my departure is *at* hand."—It may be a *Phrase*; as, "A habit *of* moving quickly is another way *of* gaining time."—It may be a *Sentence*; as, "And cries *of* Live for ever! struck the skies."

OBS. 3.—Prepositions connect *Nouns to Nouns*; as, "The horse *in* the field:"—And *Adjectives to Nouns*; as, "Indifferent *to* contempt:"—And *Verbs to Nouns*; as, "He resides *in* Birmingham."

OBS. 4.—Sometimes Prepositions become Adverbs or Conjunctions, that is, when they govern no Case. Prepositions are known by governing Case.

OBS. 5.—Double Prepositions are sometimes allowed; as, "Out *of* every grove the voice of pleasure warbles."

But two Prepositions should not be used, when one of them will fully express the sense intended; as, "Near *to* this dome is found a path so green."—*Shenstone*.—"Not *for to* hide it in a hedge."—*Burns*.—"to and *for* are superfluous."

OBS. 6.—The proper place for a Preposition is (as its name implies) before the Word or Phrase which it introduces; as, "In *danger*, *in* *danger*, and alone..." "Famished and chilled *through* ways unknown."

But by the poets, it is often placed after its object; as, "From peak *to* peak, the rattling crags *among*," &c.

And sometimes in colloquial style; as, "You will have no mother or sister to go *to*."—*Abbott*. "Who do you object *to*?" "Whom will you give it *to*?" This idiom is inelegant, and not to be recommended. Better say, "*to whom*," &c. Also avoid the following style;—"He was refused entrance *into*, and rudely driven *from*, the hall." Rather, "He was refused entrance *into* the hall, and rudely driven *from* it."

ONS. 7.—Many words commonly used as Prepositions, are sometimes employed, not as Elements of Phrases, but as Word Elements in Sentences. These are commonly Adverbs.

EXAMPLES.—"Come *on*, my brave associates."—"Lift *up* thy voice like a trumpet."—"Down, down, the tempest plunges on the sea, and the mad waves rise *up* to buffet it."

Mr. Murray justly observes that "*to*," is used after Verbs and Participles of *motion* before places; as, "She went *to* Manchester." "I am going *to* Matlock."—*In* is used before the names of countries, cities, districts, streets, &c.; as, "He is resident *in* Spain." We say *in* the borough, *in* the city, *in* the district of, &c., *in* Queen street, *in* Cheapside, &c. "*At*" is generally used after the Verbs *touch*, *arrive*, *land*; as, "We touched *at* Madeira;" "We arrived *at* home last night." "We landed *at* the Cape."

ONS. 8.—Prepositions are frequently omitted, especially before Nouns indicating time, space, and dimension, and before Personal Pronouns; as, "Give him his due;" that is, give *to* him.—"Give me the pen;" for Give the pen to me, or Give *to* me the pen.

EXERCISE I.

Select the Prepositions and the Words which they govern.

We live in the land of freedom.—I shall go from Leeds to York.—His conduct is above all praise.—He has a prejudice against me.—I remonstrated against his conduct; but he turned a deaf ear to me.—A frown was upon his face.—I went across the plain.—Will you act according to your promise?—I came over the bridge.—Render tribute to whom tribute is due.—The balloon floats over the earth.—I sent a book to him.—We can now descend into Pompeii.—The plague raged in London during the reign of the second Charles.—Take the talents from him, and give them to another person.

EXERCISE II.

Make Sentences containing Prepositions.—See List of Prepositions.

EXERCISE III.

Correct the following Errors :—

Who servest thou under?—The temper of mind he was then in.—
They were refused entrance into, and forcibly driven from the house.
—Who have you sent for?—They spoke against both he and she.
—I hope it is not I you are displeased with.—This is the school he
goes to.—I was at London at that time.—Flattery can hurt none
but those it is agreeable to.—My book is different to yours.—Wait
for the evening.—I have been living at Paris.—Do not allow him
to get in your debt.—Put my writing in the drawers.

Care should be exercised in the choice of Prepositions. Certain words and Phrases must be followed by appropriate Prepositions, as the following list will indicate.—

Abhorrence of	Conformable to	Enclose <i>within</i>
Abound in	Congenial to	Encroach upon
Abridge of	Conscious of	Endeared to
Accede to	Consonant to, with	Endue with
Acceptable to	Contiguous to	Engaged in
Accuse of	Conversant in, with	Enjoin upon
Acquiesce in	Correspond to, with	Equal to
Adapted to	Credulous of	Equivalent to
Adequate to	Crouch to, under	Estrange from
Adverse to	Decide on	Exception to, from
Affinity to, between	Deficient in	Exempt from
Ambitious of	Depart from	Expostulate with
Amenable to	Depend upon, on	Extricate from
Antipathy to, against	Derogate from	Faithful to
Assent to	Derogatory to	Fall upon, under, into, from
Averse to	Desist from	Familiar with
Beholden to	Destitute of	Favourable to
Beset with	Deviate from	Flattered by
Bestow upon	Devolve on, upon	Free from, of
Blush at	Differ with, from	Gaze at, upon
Boast of	Different from	Gifted with, by
Bound by	Diminution of	Glad of
Call on, upon	Disagree with	Glory in
Change for, on, upon	Disapprove of	Govern by
Compatible with	Disinclined to	Grapple with
Compete with	Disseminate among	Grateful for, to
Competent to	Dissent from	Greedy after, of
Compliance with	Distinguish from	Guarded by
Conduce to	Due to	Guilty of
Confess to, with	Dwindle away, from	Habituated to
Confide in	Eager in	Harmonise with
Confident of	Enamoured of	

Heap up	Perplex with	Stimulated by, with
Headless of	Persist in	Stoop to, beneath
Hostile to	Please with	Stray among, about,
Identical with	Preclude from	from
Impatient of	Prejudicial to	Strive against, to, for
Impose upon	Prejudice against	Subsequent to
Impress upon	Preparatory to	Subsist upon
Inadequate to	Prepossess by, with	Successful in, with
Inclusive of	Preside over	Sufficient for
Incompatible with	Prohibit from	Superior to
Inconsistent with	Provide for, with	Supplicate for
Inculcate on, upon	Pursuant to	Surprised at, by
Independent of	Qualify for	Susceptible of
Indicative of	Quench with	Swerving from
Inflict upon	Radiant with	Sympathize with
Initiate into	Ramble among, along	Taste for, of
Inquire about, into, of	Reconciled to	Temperate in
Insensible to, of	Recreant from	Tenacious of
Inseparable from	Reduce under, to	Tendency to
Insist upon	Reflect upon, on	Tested by
Intent on, upon	Rely on, upon	Think of, on
Intercede with	Remarkable for	Thirst for, after
Interfere with	Remonstrate with	Tickled by, with
Intrench upon	Remote from	Tottering on, to
Intrude upon	Replete with	Traffic with
Invest with	Resemblance to	Transacted by, with
Irritate with	Reside at, in	Translate into
Jealous of	Resolve upon	Transmitted from, to
Judge of	Resort to	Treatise on
Land at, in	Revel in	Trespass against, on
Liken to	Revenge upon	Triumph in, over
Limited to	Sacred to	Troubled with
Lounge about	Scatter among	Trudge on, along
Maintain by	Search into, for	True to
Mention of	Secede from	Typical of
Mindful of	Separate from	Unable to
Mingle with	Sever from	Unaccustomed to
Mistrustful of	Signify by	Unacquainted with
Multiply by	Significant of	Unaffected by
Muse on, among	Sink in, below	Unauthorised by
Natural to	Skilled in	Unbecoming of, in
Neglectful of	Smile at, upon, on	Unbosom to
Obnoxious to	Soak in, through	Unbridled in
Observant of	Soar above	Uncertain to
Operate upon	Sojourn at	Underserving of
Opposite to	Sparkle with	Undulating towards
Partake of	Speckled with	Uneasy in
Patient in, under	Spread over, about	Unequal to
Peerless among	Sprinkled with	Unfaithful to
Penetrate into	Stamp with, upon	Unfavourable to
People with, by	Stick to, on, in, at	Unfeeling in, towards

Uniform <i>with</i>	Variegate <i>with</i>	Ward off, <i>aside</i>
United to, <i>with</i>	Vary from, <i>by</i>	Watch for
Unjust <i>towards</i>	Vengeance on	Wear out
Unprovided for, <i>with</i>	Versed in	Wedded to
Unqualified for	Vested in	Winged with
Unsuitable to	Vie with	Witness of, to
Unsupported by	Void of	Worthy of
Untainted with	Vulnerable to, <i>by</i>	Wrestle with
Unthankful for	Wade in, <i>through</i>	Yearning for
Urgent to, in	Waft over	Zeal for
Usurped by	Wall for	Zealous for, <i>towards,</i>
Vacuum in	Wait for, on, upon	in
Vanish from		

EXERCISE I.

Supply the Appropriate Prepositions.

He spoke....my favour.—I shall wait....him to-morrow.—He has a great resemblance....his father.—That report will militate....him.—Bestow your charity....them.—Be not conversant....such men.—He has an antipathy....me.—I dissent....those opinions.—Important duties have devolved....me.—She smiled....her brother.—It is irrelevant....the subject.—They will initiate me....their society.—I am very mistrustful....you.—Do not repine....misfortune.—Reflect....the future.—The man who falls....virtue, falls....happiness.—It has not fallen....my notice.—Gaiety is not very congenial....my mind.—The discourse was replete....interest.—He has a prejudice....me.—Thirst....knowledge.—He is true....his promise.

EXERCISE II.

Correct the following Errors :

It is more than they thought for.*—To who shall I give it?—Tell to me your name.—He advanced with sword in hand.—She departed from this life.—He died for thirst.—I have no occasion of his services.—This is a principle in unison to our nature.—Tell to me the truth.—It is to be divided between you and I.—I have a great prejudice for that kind of writing.—He intends to reside at Paris.—This remark is founded in truth.—His excuse was admitted of by his master.—What went ye out for to see?—The Saxons reduced the greater part of Britain to their own power.—I have been to Brussels, after having resided a year at France; and I now live in Bristol.—They have just landed in Hull, and are going for Liverpool.—She has lodgings at George's Square.—He is well versed with Greek.—That is a different account to what you gave.—Let

* The authorities for *think of* and *think on* are nearly equal. The latter is prevalent in the Scriptures; as, "Think on me when it shall be well with thee."—"Think upon me for good."—"Think on these things." "*Think of*" is now more polite.

us not repine for misfortune.—Success is incompatible to negligence.
 —This prince was naturally averse from war.—We insist for it.—
 Agreeable with the sacred text.

RULE XL.—CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Conjunctions connect the same Modes and Tenses of Verbs; as, “He *reads* **AND** *writes* well.”

2. Conjunctions connect Words, Phrases, and Sentences:

1. *Words*....“God created the **HEAVEN AND** the **EARTH**.”—2. *Phrases*....“To **GIVE GOOD GIFTS and** **BE BENEVOLENT**, are often different things.”—3. *Sentences*; as,....

“Thou art perched aloft on the beetling crag,
 And the waves are white below.”

In some cases, Conjunctions connect different Modes and Tenses of Verbs; but the Nominative is generally repeated; as, “He *may return*, but he *will not stay long*.” The Nominative is generally repeated, even to the same Mode and Tense, when a contrast is stated, with *but*, *not*, or *though*, &c.; thus, “He is rich, but *he* is not esteemed.”

EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors:—

She sews and played equally well.—Neither he nor her can attend.—If he understand the subject, and attends to it, he can scarcely fail of success.—You and us enjoy many privileges.—My brother and him are good mathematicians.—Between him and I there is some disparity of years; but none between him and she.—He does not want courage, but he is defective in sensibility.—Neither I nor thee can be spared.—You or him must attend the meeting.—A great and good man have fallen.

RULE XLI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

Many Conjunctions correspond to Adverbs, to Prepositions, and to other Conjunctions; as,

Asas“John is *as* intelligent *as* James.”
 Asso“Amelia is not *so* cheerful *as* usual.”
 Bothand“Both good and bad were gathered in one group.”

Either ....or	"Either you mistake, or I was misinformed."
Neither ....nor	"Neither Jane nor Louisa has been here to-day."
If.....then	"If you will take the right, then I will go to the left."
So .....as.....	"He was so kind as to give it to me." (Expressing a consequence.)
So .....as.....	"He is not so content as I." (Comparison.)
So .....that	"He called so loud that all the hollow deep."
Such .....that	"My engagements are such that I cannot go."
Not only ..but also....	"She was not only vain, but also ignorant."
Though ....yet	"Though he hate me, yet I will pray for him."
Because ..therefore ..	"Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life."
Whether ..or	"I care not whether you go or stay."

EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors :—

It is neither cold or hot.—He could not have done more, nor offer to do less.—It is so clear as I need not explain it.—She is not as pretty as her sister.—I will present it to him myself, or direct it to be given to him.—He was as good as to tell me.—Neither despise or oppose what thou dost not understand.—Be ready to succour such persons who need thy assistance.—The house is not as commodious as we expected it would be.—This is an event, which nobody presumes upon, or is so sanguine to hope for.—As far as I am able to judge, the book is well written.—There is no condition so secure as cannot admit of change.—He is not as eminent, and as much esteemed as he thinks himself to be.

REMARKS ON CONJUNCTIONS.

The position of Sentences often determines their connection, without the use of Conjunctions ; as,

"Milton ! thou shouldst be living at this hour—
[For] England hath need of thee."

"But Brutus says, he was ambitious."

Conjunctions that introduce Auxiliary Adverbial Sentences, and some others, indicate the offices of the Sentences which they introduce.

If, Unless, &c., indicate condition.—*As, When, Before, &c.*, indicate time.—*For, Hence, Therefore, &c.*, indicate an inference or cause.—*But, Yet, Nevertheless, &c.*, indicate restriction, or opposition.—*Neither, nor, &c.*, indicate a negation.

EXAMPLES.—"If sinners entice thee, consent thou not."—"Speak of me as I am—nothing extenuate, nor set down aught in malice."—"Then, when I AM THY CAPTIVE, talk of chains."—"I go, but I return."

As should not be used for *that*; as, "Not as I care;" should be "Not *that* I care."

Conjunctions may be omitted only when the connection is sufficiently clear without them; as, "Unnumbered systems, [] suns, and worlds, unite to worship thee."

The poets often use *Or—or*, for *Either—or*; and *Nor—nor*, for *Neither—nor*.—In prose *not—nor* is often used for *Neither—nor*.

The Adverb "*how*" is sometimes improperly used instead of the Conjunction "*that*;" as,

"She tells me *how*, with eager speed,
He flew to hear my vocal reed."

Conjunctions sometimes introduce the remnant of a Sentence; as, "*Though* [] *afflicted*, he is happy."

Double Conjunctions are sometimes used.

EXAMPLES.—"*As though* he had not been anointed with oil."

And yet, fair bow, no fabling dreams,
But words of the most High
Have told why first thy robe of beams
Was woven in the sky.

But two are not to be used when one will fully express the connection.

EXAMPLE.—"There would be no doubt *but that* they would remain."

The word "*but*" is unnecessary and improper.

RULE XLII.—EXCLAMATIONS, OR INTERJECTIONS.

1. Exclamations, or Interjections, have no dependent construction. They may be followed by Words, Phrases, or Sentences.

EXAMPLES.—"O Scotia! my dear, my native soil! Adieu! to thee, and my friends!"—"Woe! woe! to the riders that trample thee down!"

"O that I could again recall
My early joys, companions all!"

2. An Exclamation expresses a particular feeling

or emotion completely, and so is equivalent to a proposition.

Thus *O*, sometimes spelled *Oh*, means, "*I desire, I wish, I feel pain, or anguish*; and also delight and astonishment, when it amounts to an exclamation; as, *O! how beautiful! O! how glorious!* When combined with *for*, it indicates *intense* desire; as, "*Oh! for the friends so dear to me.*" "*Oh! that I had wings like a dove!*" means *I wish* that I had, &c. *Ah!* means *I am filled with wonder, surprise, sympathy, &c.*—*Alas....I feel grief, sorrow, anguish, pity, &c.* See page 101.


EXERCISE.

Correct the following Errors:—

O happy us, surrounded with so many friends! Ah! unhappy thee, the author of thine own ruin! Woe unto I! I am undone! Alas! for I, the unlucky one!

WORDS OF EUPHONY.

1. By Euphony* is meant an agreeable sound; smooth enunciation.

 The principles of Euphony are much required in the structure of all languages; for Euphony, words are altered in form, position, and office,—and they are, for Euphony, created, or omitted.

2. Euphony allows the omission or repetition of words.

(1.) The omission &c. of Words.—Unnecessary words may be omitted; as, "He gave his flute, books, and papers to his brother;" not *his* books, *his* papers.

Emphasis sometimes requires repetition, as, "Even *his* health, *his* trade, and *his* circumstances are against him."

Articles, Nouns, Adjectives, &c. are frequently omitted; as, "A delightful garden and [] orchard."

* From the Greek, *eu*, well, easily, and *phone*, sound....*well sounding.*

And so with Pronouns, Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions; as, "I love [] and fear him."—"The man was old and [] crafty."—"He spoke [] and [] acted wisely."—

By this elliptical mode of expression, the communication of ideas is much facilitated, both in writing and in speaking. No more words should be used than are necessary to convey our ideas in a clear and concise manner.

- (2.) The transposition of Words in a Sentence; as,
"From peak to peak, the rattling *crags* **AMONG**,
Leaps the live thunder."
- (3.) The omission of a letter or syllable; as,
"Hark! 'tis the breeze of twilight calling."
- (4.) The substitution of one letter for another; as,
 1. Collect, . . . for . . . *Con*lect.
 2. Syllogism, . . . for . . . *Sun*logism.
 3. Immigrant, . . . for . . . *Im*migrant.
- (5.) The addition of a letter, or syllable; as,
"It was his bounden duty thus to act."
- (6.) A word separated into parts, and another word inserted between them; as,
"How **MUCH** *soever* we may feel their force."
- (7.) A word to be used not in its ordinary office; as,
 1. "And there lay the steed with its nostril **ALL** *wide*."
 2. "The more I see of this method, **THE** *better* I like it."

3. Words of Euphony should be placed in their appropriate connection.

In the following examples, this principle is violated;—

- (1.) "To think of others, and not *only* of himself."

Here "only" is used to render "himself" emphatic. A better position would be—" . . . and not of himself *only*."

- (2.) "Joyous Youth, and manly Strength, and stooping Age are *even* here."

Better—"Joyous Youth, and manly Strength, and *even* **STOOPING AGE** are here."

(3.) "When our hatred is violent, it sinks us *even* beneath those we hate."

Better—"....it sinks us beneath *even* THOSE WE HATE."

A word *repeated* in the same connection is to be regarded as a word of Euphony; as,

"Down! down! the tempest plunges on the sea."

"For life! *for life*, their flight they ply!"

GENERAL RULES.

1. In constructing a Sentence, such words should be chosen as will most clearly convey the sense intended—regard being had also to variety and other principles of taste.

2. In expressing complex ideas, judgment and taste are to be exercised in the use of Phrases and Sentences when they may equally convey the sense.

3. That modification of words should be adopted which is in accordance with the most reputable usage.

4. The relative *position* of words, phrases, and sentences, should be such as to leave no obscurity in the sense.

5. Involved Complex Sentences should not be used, when simple or independent Sentences would better convey the sense.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

EXAMPLE OF PARSING.—See Page 50.

"The British Constitution stands among the nations of the earth, like an ancient oak in the wood, which, after having overcome many a blast, overtops the other trees of the forest, and commands respect and veneration."

"THE"is the Definite Article specifying the Noun "*Constitution*," according to Rule I.

"BRITISH"is a Proper Adjective, (see Page 37,) which qualifies and belongs to the Noun "*Constitution*," according to Rule XI.

"CONSTITUTION" ... is a Common Noun, Neuter Gender, Third Person, Singular Number, and Nom. Case to the Verb "stands;" being the Subject of the Sentence, according to Rule II; declined thus;—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom.	Constitution		Nom.	Constitutions	
Pos.	Constitution's		Pos.	Constitutions'	
Objec.	Constitution		Objec.	Constitutions	

"STANDS" ... is a Neuter Verb, Irregular, formed thus; *Present*, stand; *Past*, stood; *Perfect*, stood;—conjugated thus; *Indicative Mode*, *Present Tense*—Singular, First Per. I stand; Second Per. Thou standest; Third Per. He, she, or it stands. Plural, First Per. We stand, &c. (See Page 73.) *Stands* is the Third Per. Sing. Num., and agrees with its Nom. Case *Constitution* in Number and Person, according to Rule XXIX.

"AMONG" is a Preposition.

"THE" Definite Article, (as before.)

"NATIONS" is a Common Noun, Neuter Gender, Third Per. Plural Num. declined thus;—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom.	Nation		Nom.	Nations	
Pos.	Nation's		Pos.	Nations'	
Objec.	Nation		Objec.	Nations	

Nations is in the Objec. Case, governed by the Preposition *among*, according to Rule XL. Sec. 2.

"OF" is a Preposition.

"THE" Definite Article, (as before.)

"EARTH" is a Common Noun, (decline it as before, like "*nations*") in the Objective Case, governed by the Preposition *of*, according to Rule XL. Sec. 2.

"LIKE" is an Adjective, but here is used as a Preposition. (See Page 130, "Latham says," &c.)

"AN" Indefinite Article, placed before its Noun *oak*, according to Rule I.

"ANCIENT" is an Adjective of the Positive Degree, compared thus;—Positive, Ancient; Comparative, *more* ancient; Superlative, *most* ancient; Diminutive, *less* ancient. *Ancient* belongs to the Noun *oak*, according to Rule XI.

"OAK"is a Common Noun, (declined as before, like "nations") in the Objective Case, governed by *like*, according to Rule XL. Sec. 2.

"IN"is a Preposition.

"THE"Definite Article, (as before.)

"WOOD"is a Common Noun, (declined as before, like "nations") Objective Case, governed by the Preposition *in*, according to Rule XL. Sec. 2.

"WHICH"is a Relative Pronoun, and agrees with its Antecedent "*Oak*" in Gender, Number, and Person, according to Rule XXV. *Which* is the Nom. to the Verbs *overtops* and *commands*.

"AFTER"is a Preposition.

"HAVING OVER-COME"is a Perfect Participle, composed of the Auxiliary Verb, *to have*, and the Active Verb, *to overcome*.—Participles, *Present*, overcoming; *Past*, overcome; *Perfect*, having overcome.

"MANY"is an Indefinite Adjective Pronoun, which belongs to the Noun *blast*, according to Rule XI.

"A"Indefinite Article.

"BLAST"is a Com. Noun, (declined as before, like "nations,") Objective Case, governed by the Active Verb, *overcome*, according to Rule XXXII.

"OVERTOPS"is an Active Verb, Regular, formed thus, *Present*, overtop; *Past*, overtopped; *Perfect*, overtopped.—Indicative Mode, Present Tense, conjugated thus, &c., (as before, like "*stands*.")

Overtops is the Third Per. Sing. Num., and agrees with its Nom. Case, *which*, according to Rule XXIX.

"THE"Definite Article.

"OTHER"Indefinite Adjective Pronoun, Reciprocal, (See Page 47—4,) declined thus;

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	Other	Nom.	Others
Pos.	Other's	Pos.	Others'
Objec.	Other	Objec.	Others

Other belongs to the Noun *trees*, according to Rule XI.

"TREES"Com. Noun, (declined like "nations,") Objective Case, governed by the Active Verb, *overtops*, according to Rule XXXII.

"OF"Preposition.

"THE"Definite Article.

"FOREST"Common Noun, (state and decline as before)
jective Case, governed by *of*, according
XL. Sec. 2

"AND"Conjunction, Copulative.

"COMMANDS"Active Verb, Regular, (form it, or give the
pal parts, and conjugate it, like "*is*"
Commands, Third Per. Sing. Num., and
with its Nom. *which*, according to Rule

"RESPECT AND
VENERATION" ..Common Nouns, (declined like *nations*;)
Objective Case, governed by the Active
commands. And, Conjunction, Cop

PARSE ACCORDING TO RULE.

RULE 1.—ARTICLES.—Page 106.

It would be too serious an undertaking. — This is a
pear than the other. — He has betrayed the confidence
friends. — I had never seen so tall a man. — At t
he is only feeble.

RULE 2.—NOUNS.—Page 109.

Virtue secures happiness. — George studies the s
— He plants his footsteps in the sea, and rides up
storm. — His being a poor man, prevented his elevatio
To do good is the duty of all men.

RULE 3.—NOUNS.—Page 112.

Earth keeps me here awhile. — My leaving my
land does not please you. — His being a scholar entitl
to respect. — That I have befriended her is true. — Th
is very favourable.

RULE 4.—NOUNS.—Page 113.

John and Thomas are good boys ; they are esteeme
The intelligence and industry of my friend have secur
independence. — A good fire and a good meal make us
ful. — Wellington and Napoleon were great command

RULE 5.—NOUNS.—*Page 114.*

Fear or jealousy affects him.—Robert or George has obtained my ticket.—Robert, Henry, or Alfred is to go with me.—Neither precept nor discipline is so influential as example.—I shall go either to-day or to-morrow.

RULE 6.—NOUNS.—*Page 115.*

Either my sister or I am going to Liverpool.—Either you are mistaken or I am.—Thomas or I have to be there.—Either thy brother or thou hast injured my reputation.

RULE 7.—NOUNS.—*Page 116.*

Neither the house nor its inhabitants were saved ; they perished in the flames.—Edgar and I will lend you our books.—Joseph and you have got your hats.—Neither the captain nor the sailors were saved.

RULE 8.—NOUNS.—*Page 117.*

The people are foolish ; they have not known me.—The people are unemployed.—He is a promising youth.—The youth of the present day are devoted to pleasure ; they neglect the good and the useful.—A number of men were appointed.

RULE 9.—NOUNS.—*Page 119.*

This is George's book.—He sells mens hats.—These are my children's clothes.—The eloquence of Pitt was captivating.—The poor man received the physician's, and also the surgeon's assistance.

RULE 10.—NOUNS.—*Page 122.*

Paul the Apostle was courageous.—Get up early every morning.—I have been in the country, the scene of my former residence.—I admire Milton's great work, the *Paradise Lost*.—Robert, my friend, greatly assisted me.

RULE 11.—ADJECTIVES.—*Page 123.*

This is a good house.—He is happy.—The wise and the virtuous should be esteemed.—The apple is sweet.—

The young men are healthy. — My reward is a gold pen. — We ascended a steep bold mountain, and looked down on the valley deep and wide.

RULE 12.—ADJECTIVES.—Page 125.

Every tree is known by its fruit. — Every scholar is in his place. — Neither of them has been here. — I have several of the rules in my memory. — Each man is required to mind his own affairs.

RULE 13.—ADJECTIVES.—Page 126.

Industry and idleness produce different effects ; this degrades and impoverishes, that ennobles and enriches him.

Some place the bliss in action ; *some* in ease :
Those call it pleasure ; and contentment *these*.

RULE 14.—ADJECTIVES.—Page 127.

I am thankful for these favours. — Give me that slate. — These books are mine. — These trees have a beautiful foliage. — Those were pleasant days which we spent in that village. — This kind of fruit I dislike.

RULE 15.—ADJECTIVES.—Page 128.

What if the field be lost, all is not lost. — I have no opinion of such persons ; the like were never seen before. — All the rubbish was removed. — Peace of mind is an honourable amends for the sacrifice of interest.

RULE 16 AND 17.—ADJECTIVES.—Page 129, 131.

It appears strange to me. He treated me very cruelly. — She is just like her mother. — I am richer than you are. — I have known deeper wrongs. — The richest treasure is a spotless reputation. — The task was more difficult than any other. — No other shall sit upon the throne of my heart.

RULE 18 AND 19.—ADJECTIVES.—Page 132, 133.

In the calmest and stillest night. — He is the chief among *ten thousand*. — George can read better than I can. — Sam-

uel is the wiser of the two.—And Joshua shall go over before thee.—A servant good enough.—His assertion was untrue.

RULE 20.—ADJECTIVES IN PREDICATE.—Page 134.

Canst thou grow sad as earth grows bright?—The desire of being happy reigns in all hearts.—The study of science tends to make us devout.—Falling short of this we cannot succeed.—To be wise and good is to be happy.

RULE 21.—PRONOUNS.—Page 135.

Alfred is unwell; he is confined to his bed.—He was quite well when I last saw him.—Few men are as wise as they might be.—The council were divided in their sentiments.—The king and the queen had put on their robes.

RULE 22.—PRONOUNS.—Page 137.

Neither Minos nor Thales gained his reputation by arms.—A pleasant thing it is to behold the sun.—If ever there was a people's man, that man was Dr. Chalmers.

RULE 23.—PRONOUNS.—Page 138.

You and Henry and I have been invited.—Neither I nor you have courage sufficient.—Richard is here; he came at noon.—We cannot be guilty; for we were not present at the time.—The lamp is broken; it fell down.

RULE 24 AND 25.—PRONOUNS.—Page 139.

She is taller than I.—I know how to read as well as he.—James is more agreeable than he.—The man who is idle comes to ruin.—The books which I had lost have been returned.—The child that is good will be rewarded.

RULE 26.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—Page 141.

The parent who brought me up.—The flowers which are fragrant.—He is fond of learning, which gratifies me.—My friend who has just left me is soon to return.—He who has *done this* is no friend to me in my distress.

RULE 27.—POSITION OF PRONOUNS.—*Page 142.*

The grave that never spoke before.—O they love least that let men know their love.—The world in which we sojourn is not our home.—The time may come you need not fly.—The throne which we honour is the British throne.

RULE 28.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.—*Page 143, 144.*

Whose book have you got? I have got John's book.—What if the foot aspired to be the head?—What though destruction sweep those lovely plains?—Who lives in your house?—How long was he in going? Three days.

RULE 29.—VERBS.—*Page 145.*

The boy was rude.—I ride on the moor every day.—Sick people speak languidly, because their voices are weak.—God is our Creator and Preserver.—He is merciful and gracious, and slow to anger.

RULE 30.—VERBS.—*Page 146.*

To sleep is refreshing.—To live virtuously, is to live happily.—To err, is human; to forgive, divine.—His prodigal conduct was the cause of his ruin.—To be spiritually-minded is life and peace.—Associating with evil persons was the cause of his ruin.

RULE 31.—VERBS.—*Page 147.*

It is I, be not afraid.—Whom do they think me to be?—I took it to be him.—This is a beautiful hat.—Who do men say that I am?—He seems the leader of the party.

RULE 32.—VERBS.—*Page 148—151.*

Cold blows the wind.—The wind blows the dust.—I doubted his having been a soldier.—I saw how you cheated me.—I sit me down a pensive hour to spend.—I have fought a good fight.—The tower looks well.—The tower *overlooks* the city.—Our friends at home were often remembered.

RULE 33.—VERBS.—*Page 151.*

Charles loves to study.—It is pleasant to walk in the garden.—It is a pleasure to assist you.—I plunged in, and bade him follow.—He was made to perform it.—To be able to read well is a valuable accomplishment.—And, to be plain with you, I think you very unreasonable.

RULE 34.—VERBS.—*Page 152.*

Were I Alexander, I would accept the terms.—If John has offended you, he will make due apology.—He has been so long idle that he knows not how to work.—Those that seek me early shall find me.—I went to see him.

RULE 34.—*Sec. 3, Page 153.*

There let him lie.—Columbus discovered America.—America was discovered by Columbus.—Mansfield's prophecy is being realized.—I have had a book offered for my knife.—It was difficult to manage such machines.

RULE 35.—VERBS, MODE.—*Page 155.*

If he speaks as he thinks, he may be trusted.—If he be alone, tell him what I say.—Had he been present, he would have entertained us.—If he acquire riches, they will corrupt his mind.—If thou livest virtuously, thou art happy.

RULE 36.—PARTICIPLES.—*Page 156—158.*

The ploughing of the wicked is sin.—In the beginning.—The spending of money, and the ruling of the tongue, are too hard for most people.—By his studying the Scriptures he became wise.—Not attending to my advice is the cause of his suffering.

RULE 37.—PARTICIPLES.—*Page 153, 159.*

The peasants have risen.—I have forborne to punish.—They began to applaud.—He has drunk the bitter cup.—All my kindness is forgotten.—She has sung the song.

sweetly.—I have caught the bird.—I have written my letter, and wet it with tears.—He said nothing concerning his temporal affairs.

RULE 33.—ADVERBS.—Page 160, 161.

She is very intelligent.—The science is very interesting.—He spoke well, and was attentively heard by the whole assembly.—A just man will deal justly.—He left the meeting abruptly.—The selfish man can never be truly polite.—My sister is very poorly.

RULE 39.—PREPOSITIONS.—Page 162—168.

A flood of glory bursts from all the skies.—The time of my departure is at hand.—The horse is in the field.—Out of every grove the voice of pleasure warbles.—He is in dread; he is in danger.—To whom do you object?—We arrived at home in good time.—We live in the land of freedom.

RULE 40 AND 41.—CONJUNCTIONS.—Page 168.

God created the heaven and the earth.—Robert reads and writes well.—He may return, but he will not stay long.—He is rich, but he is not esteemed.—Harriet is not so cheerful as usual.—I care not whether you go or stay.—Not that I care.—Though in adversity, he is resigned.

RULE 42.—EXCLAMATIONS.—Page 170.

O England! thou art dear to me.—Oh! that I had wings like a dove.—Fy! on you, fy!—Hurrah! the victory is achieved.—Hail! thou Prince of peace.—Thou meanest one, avaunt!—Alas! and is he dead?—"Ho! shifts she thus?" King Henry cried.—Hush! hark! what means that groan so deep?

COMMON ERRORS CORRECTED.

SECTION I.

I expect the books were sent yesterday,—say, *I think*; *expect* refers to the future.—Give me both *of them* apples,—*should be, both those* apples.—Mr. Smith learned me Grammar,

—*taught*.——I *propose* to offer a few hints,—*purpose*, or *intend*.——I never omit walking out whenever the weather is fine,—leave out *ever*.——I *seldom* or *ever* see her,—*seldom* or *never*, or *seldom*, if *ever*.——You have *sown* the seam badly,—*sewed*.——I shall *summons*,—*summon*.——This *here* is my farm,—leave out *here*.——John was to come *as this* day,—leave out *as*.——*Without* you study, you will not learn,—*Unless* you study, &c.——The *observation* of the sabbath is a duty,—*observance*.——This letter is written *shocking*,—*badly*.

SECTION II.

I don't know but *what* I shall go to London to-morrow.—*that* instead of *what*.——Add *one more* reason,—*one reason more*.——Be *sharp*, and get your work done,—*quick*.——Who finds Tom *in* money,—leave out *in*.——I admire such *an one*,—*a one*.——*An* European,—*a*.——*An* University,—*a*.——*A* quantity of men, or horses, or oxen, should be, a number of, &c.——*Lots* of money, lots of friends, lots of learning—*plenty* of money, many friends, much learning.——Galileo *discovered* the telescope,—*invented*.——I *rose up*, and put on my clothes,—leave out *up*.——It *lays* on the floor,—*lies*.——I intend to *stop* at home,—*stay* or *remain*.——No man has *less* enemies,—*fewer*.——Bob Mummy-dust is an *antiquarian*,—*antiquary*.

SECTION III.

A couple of men,—*two* men.——George was in *eminent* danger,—*imminent*.——The *two first* pages,—*first two*.——He came last of *all*,—leave out, *of all*.——I plunged *down* into the water,—leave out, *down*.——He was *exceeding* industrious,—*exceedingly*.——I did it *conformable* to your wishes,—*conformably*.——Little grows there *beside* a coarse kind of grass.—*except*.——He ascended *up* into heaven,—leave out, *up*.——Learn *from* hence to esteem good men,—leave out *from*.——It is not *as large* as I expected,—*so*.——*A young beautiful boy*,—*beautiful young boy*.——It occurred *some* ten years ago,—leave out, *some*.——The *latter* end of the pious is peace,—leave out *latter*.——I never saw *such* a high tree,—*a tree so high*.——On *either* side of the river,—*each*.

SECTION IV.

I will think *on* thee, friend,—*of*.——Take hold *on* it; I knew nothing *on* it; He was made much *on* in London,—*of*.——No need *for* that,—*of*.——Free *of* blame,—*from*.——He is resolved *of* going to America,—*on*.——I had rather *not*,—*would rather not*.——We prevailed *over* him to come,—*upon*.——He ran again me,—*against*.——I put it in my pocket,—*into*.——The ship sails in the *latter* end of May,—leave out, *latter*.——He was accused *for* neglecting his duty,—*of*.——I am *thinking* he will soon arrive,—I *think*.——I am ruler *over* my house,—*of*.——She reads *slow*,—*slowly*.——At best,—*at the best*.——*Every now and then*, should be, *Often or frequently*.——A few weeks *back*,—*ago*.——Harvey *invented* the circulation of the blood,—*discovered*.——Robert and William are *mutually* kind to each other,—leave out *mutually*.

SECTION V.

I am very *dry* to-day,—*thirsty*.——No *less* than twenty persons,—*fewer*.——Opposite *the* town-hall,—*to the*.——Tell me *the reason* why he is dejected,—leave out, *the reason*.——Frederic speaks *bad grammar*,—*speaks ungrammatically*.——His character is *undeniable*,—*unquestionable*.——Before you go you must *first* finish your work,—leave out, *first*.——The leg was *fermented*,—*fomented*.——That was his *principle* reason,—*principal*.——The Board of ordinance,—*ordnance*.——The horse is full of *metal*,—*mettle*.——A *new pair* of boots,—*a pair of new boots*.——Direct the letter to me at, &c.,—*Address*.——It *militates* against my business.—*operates*.——He lifted *up* his arm to strike me,—leave out, *up*.——His case was heard *pro and con*,—*on both sides*.

SECTION VI.

Take two *spoonsful* of, &c.,—*spoonfuls*.——A disagreeable *effluvia*, this word is Plural, should be, *effluvium*.——Bring me *them* books,—*those*.——They are coming to see Charles and I,—*me*.——*These* sort of entertainments,—*this*.——It is I who *is* to do it,—*am*.——The money was divided *between* fifty,—*among*.——He was no sooner departed, than they expelled his officers,—*had*.——That is *him*,—*he*.——At some time, or *another*,—*other*.——You are *mistaken*,—*you mistake*.——She has such a bad temper,—*a temper so*

bad.——The fellow was *hung* last week,——*hanged.*——I have not seen him *this* ten years,——*these.*——This is my *oldest* sister,——*eldest.*——“I am going to *raise* (should be *increase*) your rent,” said a landlord to his tenant. “Thank you,” was the reply, “for I am utterly unable to *raise* it myself.”

SECTION VII.

 *Leave out the superfluous words printed in Italics.*

She fell *down* upon her knees.——More than you think *for*.
 ——Who has *got* my inkstand?——What are you doing *of*.——
 Missing his way, he returned *back*.——You may enter *in*.——
 Her conduct was approved *of*.——I cannot by no means allow it.
 ——The fellow *again* repeated the assertion.——Such conduct
 admits *of* no excuse.——I can do it *equally* as well as he.——
 They combined *together*, and covered it *over*.——Nobody *else*.
 ——As soon as *ever*.——I have *not* had no dinner yet.——Please
 give me both *of* those books.——Our cat caught a great *big* rat.
 ——It is a *wonderful* phenomenon.——Has Alfred returned *back*
 from his journey?——It is four months *ago* since I had a letter.
 ——The *verdant* green field.——It is *very* true.

GRAMMATICAL FALLACIES;

Selected from the Writings of learned men.—To be corrected.

 THE ERROR IN EACH SENTENCE IS IN ITALICS.

The rapidity of his movements *were* beyond example.——
Wells.

The mechanism of clocks and watches *were* totally unknown.
 ——*Hume.*

The Past Tense of these Verbs *are* very indefinite with respect to time.——*Bullion's Grammar.*

Every body *are* very kind to her.——*Byron.*

To study mathematics, *require* maturity of mind.——*Robinson.*

That they were foreigners, *were* apparent in their dress.——
Smith.

Coleridge the poet and philosopher *have* many admirers.—*A Reviewer.*

No monstrous height, or length, or breadth *appear*.

Common sense, as well as piety, *tell* us these are proper.—*Commentary.*

Wisdom or folly *govern* us.—*Fisk's Grammar.*

Nor want nor cold his course *delay*.—*Johnson.*

Hence naturally *arise* indifference or aversion between the parties.—*Brown's Estimates.*

Wisdom, and not wealth, *procure* esteem.—*Brown's Estimates.*

No company *like* to confess that they are ignorant.—*Student's Manual.*

The people *rejoices* in that which should cause sorrow.—*Barrow.*

Therein *consists* the force and use, and nature of language.—*Berkley.*

From him *proceeds* power, sanctification, truth, grace, and every other blessing we can conceive.—*Calvin.*

How *is* the Gender and Number of the Relative known?—*Bullion's Practical Lessons.*

Hill and dale *doth* boast thy blessing.—*Milton.*

The Syntax and Etymology of the language *is* thus spread before the learner.—*Bullion's Grammar.*

In France the peasantry goes barefoot, and the middle sort *makes* use of wooden shoes.—*Harvey.*

While all our youth *prefers* her to the rest.—*Waller.*

A great majority of our authors *is* defective in manner.—*J. Brown.*

Neither the intellect nor the heart *are* capable of being driven.—*Abbott.*

Nor he nor I *are* capable of harbouring a thought against your peace.—*Walpole.*

Neither riches nor fame *render* a man happy.—*Day's Grammar.*

I or thou *art* the person who must undertake the business.—*Murray.*

The quarrels of lovers *is* a renewal of love.—*Otway*.

Two or more sentences united together, *is* called a compound sentence.—*Day's Grammar*.

If I *was* a Greek, I should resist Turkish despotism.—*Cardell's Grammar*.

I cannot say that I admire this construction, though it *be* much used.—*Priestley's Grammar*.

It was observed in Chap. iii. that the disjunctive *or* had a double use.—*Churchill's Grammar*.

I observed that love *constituted* the whole character of God.—*Dwight*.

A stranger to the poem would not easily discover that this *was* verse.—*Murray*.

Had I commanded you *to have done* this, you would *have* thought hard of it.—*J. Brown*.

I found him better than I expected *to have found* him.—*Priestley's Grammar*.

There are several faults which I intended *to have enumerated*.

An effort *is making* to abolish the law.—*Cobbett*.

The Spartan Admiral *was sailed* to the Hellespont.—*Goldsmith*.

So soon as he was landed, the multitude thronged about him.—*Goldsmith*.

For you have but *mistook* me all the while.—*Shakspeare*.

Who would not *have let* them *appeared*.—*Steele*.

You were *chose* probationer.—*Spectator*.

Had I known the character of the lecture, I would not *have went*.—*Newspaper Correspondent*.

They *don't ought* to do it.—*Watkins*.

Whom they had *sat* at defiance.—*Bolingbroke*.

Whereunto the righteous *fly* and are safe.—*Barclay*.

She *sets* as a prototype, for exact imitation.—*Rash*.

HAVING CORRECTED THE ABOVE EXAMPLES, THE PUPIL SHOULD ANALYZE AND PARSE THEM ACCORDING TO THE FOLLOWING MODEL :—

"He maketh the storm a calm."

ANALYSIS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS ..	{ He.....Subject. Maketh Predicate. Storm Object. }	{ Simple Sentence Transitive. }
ADJUNCTS.	{ The.....Adjunct of "storm." To become a calm ..Adjunct of "maketh." A.....Adjunct of "calm."	

PARSED.

He	Is used for a Noun	Hence, a Pronoun.
"	Its form determines its Person.....	Hence, Personal.
"	Spoken of.....	Hence, Third Person.
"	Denotes but one.....	Hence, Singular Number.
"	Subject of "maketh"	Hence, Nominative Case.
	(See Rule II.)	
Maketh	Asserts an act.....	Hence, a Verb.
"	Act passes to an Object	Hence, Transitive.
"	Act done by its Subject	Hence, Active Voice.
"	Simply declares	Hence, Indicative Mode.
"	Denotes a present act	Hence, Present Tense.
"	Predicate of "he," spoken of	Hence, Third Person.
	(See Rule XXIX.)	
The	Specifies "storm"	Hence, Definite Article.
Storm	Is a Name	Hence, a Noun.
"	Name of a class of things	Hence, Common.
"	Spoken of	Hence, Third Person.
"	Denotes but one	Hence, Singular Number.
"	Object of action expressed by "maketh" (See Rule XXXII)	Hence, Objective Case.
[To become a calm....	Modifies "maketh"—limiting understood] the act to its result	Hence, an Adverb.
A	Describes "calm" by simply specifying	Hence, an Adjective.*
Calm	Is a Name	Hence, a Noun.
"	Name of a class of things	Hence, Common.
"	Spoken of	Hence, Third Person.
"	Denotes but one.....	Hence, Singular Number.
"	Used in Predicate with "be- come."	Hence, Independent Case.

For Examples in Parsing, see Pages, 50, 51, 111, 173.

*"A" may be regarded as an Article or an Adjective. See page 49.

DERIVATION.

THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

The Words of the English language are a compound of several foreign languages. Our language may be regarded as a compilation, both in words and expressions, of various dialects. Their origin is from the Saxon language. Our laws were derived from the Norman; our military terms from the French; our scientific terms from the Greek, and a multitude of Nouns from the Latin, through the medium of the French. Many of our Verbs are taken from the German, and most of our Nouns and Adjectives are taken from other dialects.

It is stated by a philologist that "the English language is composed of nearly 16,000 words, (also derivative words,) of which 6,732 are from the Latin, 4,312 from the French, 1,665 from the Saxon, 1,168 from the Greek, 691 from the Dutch, 211 from the Italian, 106 from the German (not including Verbs), 90 from the Welsh, 75 from the Danish, 56 from the Spanish, 50 from the Icelandic, 34 from the Swedish, 31 from the Gothic, 16 from the Hebrew, 14 from the Teutonic, the remainder from the Arabic, Turkish, Portuguese, Irish, Scotch, and other languages."

DERIVATIVE WORDS.

Derivative Words are such as are produced by the union of Prefixes and Affixes with Radicals. Thus, the word, *incompressible* is made up of four parts; two Prefixes, *in* and *com*; the Radical word *press*; and the Affix, *ible*.

A Radical, as the name implies, serves as the *root*, out of which grow, by means of Prefixes and Affixes, the derivative forms. It is itself, strictly speaking, formed from no other word; but often, for the sake of convenience, any word is called a Radical, with which a Prefix or Affix is united. Thus, *join*, in *adjoin*, *press*, in *compress*, *care* in *careful*, and *act* in *active*, are radical words.

That which is *placed before* a Radical, and in union with it, to modify its signification, is called a *Prefix*; as, *ad* in *adjoin*, *com* in *compress*.

That which is *placed after* a Radical, and in union with it, to modify its signification, is called an *Affix*; as, *ful* in *careful*, and *ive* in *active*.

Compound Words differ from derivatives in being composed, not of Prefixes and Affixes united with Radicals, but of Simple or Radical Words combined with one another. Thus, the word *milkman* is compounded of the two simple words, *milk* and *man*; *nevertheless*, of the three words, *never*, *the*, *less*.

When the letters in the primitive part are changed in forming derivatives, the word is called an irregular derivative; as, *brought*, from *bring*; *was*, from *be*; *went* from *go*, &c.

To analyze a derivative or compound word is to *take it apart*; that is, to resolve it into the Prefixes and Affixes, and Radicals, or Simple Words employed in its composition. This process, as hereafter presented, will be found easy and interesting.

The same word may be either a *Noun*, an *Adjective*, or a *Verb*; as, *calm*, *light*, *silver*, *salt*. Or it may be a *Noun*, or a *Verb*; as, *hate*, *love*, *water*, *letter*, *object*, *heat*. Or, an *Adjective*, or a *Verb*; as, *cool*, *warm*, *mean*.

Nouns are derived from *other Nouns*; as, *king*, *kingdom*; *man*, *mankind*; *rebel*, *rebellion*; *office*, *officer*. From *Adjectives*; as, *black*, *blackness*; *soft*, *softness*; *round*, *roundness*; *sweet*, *sweetness*. From *Verbs*; as, *read*, *reader*; *sing*, *singer*; *walk*, *walker*; *traduce*, *traducer*.

Adjectives are derived from *Nouns*; as *care*, *careful*; *hate*, *hateful*; *rain*, *rainy*; *fruit*, *fruitful*. And also from *Verbs*; as, *live*, *lively*; *love*, *lovely*: *pity*, *piteous*, or *pityful*; *consist*, *consistent*.

Verbs are derived from *Nouns*; as, *strength*, *strengthen*; *scandal*, to *scandalize*; *practice*, to *practise*; *fame*, to *defame*. And from *Adjectives*; as, *fertile*, *fertilize*; *low*, *lower*; *sweet*, *sweeten*; *bitter*, *imbitter*.

Participles are derived from *Verbs*. See *Participles*, page 57.

Adverbs are generally derived from *Adjectives*; as, *true*, *truly*; *calm*, *calmly*; *just*, *justly*.

EXERCISES.*

Form Derivatives from the following words :—

EXERCISE 1.—Black, calm, care, cold, false, fertile, gain, good, hate, hold, house, ill, just, judge, kind, knit, knock, last, light, live, long, love, mad, man, mean, meddle, meek, meet, melt, mend, mercy, might, mild, milk, mirth, moan, mock, moral, neat, notion, observe, plenty, plural.

EXERCISE 2.—Able, back, cruel, day, dim, dry, envy, fair, fight, keen, keep, king, know, labour, lame, land, law, lead, merge, mind, modest, money, need, nerve, new, nice, night, noble, note, nourish, obey, object, occur, obdure, oblige, pale, part, pass, perfect, pure, permit, pity, poet, resign, turn.

EXERCISE 3.—Absent, adhere, admit, adverse, allow, angle, awe, bare, beauty, begin, behold, benign, carnal, cause, cheer, circle, comfort, content, corrupt, custom, deceive, defend, delude, depose, deride, derive, detract, devote, digest, direct, effect, emblem, enchant, excel, excite, extend, fable, figure, fortune, habit, heart, heed, honour.

EXERCISE 4.—Abhor, abound, abstract, accept, account, admire, argue, author, blame, caprice, carbon, caution, chief, chorus, compare, converse, create, declaim, deform, despise, discreet, equal, heaven, incise, incense, infect, infringe, ingrate, inscribe, invade, jest, jocose, languid, master, menace, mourn, narrate, neglect, obscure, odour, offer, omen, organ, passion, perjure, possess.

EXERCISE 5.—Infant, infect, inhale, leak, legal, Levite, licence, maintain, malign, market, oblique, obtrude, oppose, order, palace, person, potent, power, practice, precise, prefer, prejudice, prepare, reason, rebel, receive, recite, reduce, release, remit, respond, rival, rotund, sanguine, scandal, succeed, suggest, temper, traduce, traitor, transfer, triumph, trust, tyrant, value, vapour, vary, virtue, volume.

EXERCISE 6.—*Form the following Words into Compound Words :—*
as, alehouse, composed of ale and house.

(1.) Alms, armour, back, bag, bake, ban, band, banquet, bare, bottle, bed, bell, belly, bird, black, blind, block, blood, book, breast, bride, cannon, card, chamber, cheese, chick, church, clay, clergy, coach, coal, cook, copy, corn, cow, cut, day, dew, dog, door, drum, ear, earth, ever, evil, eye, farm, fiddle, fire.

(2.) Fish, flesh, flower, fool, foot, fox, free, frost, fruit, gentle, glass, gold, good, grave, ground, gun, hail, hair, half, hand, hard, harvest, hat, head, heart, heir, high, home, horse, hour, house, hunt, ice, ink, jewel, key, king, kitchen, lady, lamb, lamp, land, lap, law, lay, leaf, leap, life, light, lime, lock, love, low, mad, maid, main, man, market.

(3.) Load, master, match, mill, milk, mischief, mole, moon, mouth, mud, neck, needle, nest, new, night, nine, noble, north, nut, oat, oil, open, orphan, out, over, pack, pan, paper, party, path, peace, pea,

* The Pupil may go through these Exercises now, or wait till he has gone through the Prefixes and Affixes.

peep, pen, penny, pepper, pick, piece, pin, pit, play, post, press, quick, race, rag, rain, ring, rough, run, sack, salt, saw, school, sea, shoe, shop, silk, south, step, sun, table, touch, true.

SAXON OR ENGLISH PREFIXES.

A **PREFIX** is a word, or part of a word, placed before another to form with it a new word.

Prefixes are mostly Prepositions, and are as diverse in their origin as the roots which they modify.

A Prefix usually changes or increases the meaning of a word before which it is placed ; as, **UN**, *not*, in *unholy*, which means *not holy* ; though it is sometimes used to make a word more *euphonious*, or agreeable in sound, without changing the meaning ; as, **UN**, in *unloose*—loose and *unloose* meaning the same thing.

Pupils should be required thoroughly to master the following Prefixes and Affixes ; the Teacher carefully explaining *how* they modify or alter the meaning of the words here given. Short lessons should be assigned ; and pupils should change, for each recitation, a given number of primitive words, with which they are familiar into derivatives, introducing them into sentences in such a manner as to illustrate their meaning and use.

A—denotes *at*, *in*, or *on* ; as, *abed*, meaning *in bed* ; *aboard*, *in a ship* ; *afar*, *at a far or great distance* ; *afoot*, *on foot* ; *afront*, *in front* ; *ashore*, *on the shore* ; *aslant*, *obliquely*, *on one side*.

BE—denotes *to make*, *before*, *nigh*, *on*, and *about* ; as, *bedim*, *to make dim* ; *bespeak*, *to speak for or before* ; *beside*, *by the side* ; *besprinkle*, *to sprinkle about*.

BE—changes Neuter Verbs into Active ; as, *speak*, *bespeak* ; it changes a Noun into a Verb ; as, *cloud*, *becloud* ; it modifies the meaning of a Verb ; as, *take*, *betake*. In Adverbs *be* means *by* : as, *because*, meaning, *by-cause*.

EN or **EM**—*in*, *into*, *on* ; also *to make* ; as, *encamp*, *to form into a camp* ; *enroll*, *to place on a roll* ; *enable*, *to make able*.

EM is another form of *en* ; *en* is changed into *em* or *im* in roots beginning with *b* or *p* ; as, *embrace*, *to hold fondly in the arms* ; *embark*, *to go on shipboard* ; *imbitter*, *to make bitter*.

FOR—*not*, *from*, *away* ; as, *forbid*, *to bid not to do* ; *forbear*, *to cease from* ; *forsake*, *to go away from*.

FORE—*before*; as, *foretell*, to tell at a time before; *forefather*, an ancestor; *foresee*, to see beforehand; *forerunner*, one sent before a messenger.

IM, *in*—*to make*; as, *imbank*, to inclose with a bank; *insure*, to make sure.

IN, **IM**, **IR**—give the negative to words; as, *illogical*, *not* logical; *inconstant*, *not* constant, *fickle*; *immodest*, *not* modest; *irreligious*, *not* religious.

IN and **IM**—signify *in*, *into*, *on*, or *upon*; as, *inlay*, to lay *in*; *infuse*, to pour *into*; *imprint*, to print *in*, or *upon*; *impress*, to press *in* or *upon*.

MIS—*bad*, *defective*, *wrong*, *error*; as, *misconduct*, *bad*, or *defective* conduct; *miscall*, to call by a *wrong* name; *misplace*, to put *wrong*.

OUT—*beyond*, *more*, *excess*, *out*; as, *outlive*, to live *beyond* another's time; *outbid*, to bid *more* than another; *outspread*, to spread *out*, or open.

OVER—*above*, *upper*, *beyond*, *excess*; as, *overcharge*, to charge or fill *above* the proper quantity; *overreach*, to reach *beyond*.

UN—before a Verb denotes *undoing*; as, *unhand*, to loose from the hand; *unbolt*, to *undo* or slide back the bolt.

Un—before Adjectives and Adverbs, means *not*; as, *unworthy*, *not* worthy; *unfair*, *not* fair.

UNDER—*beneath*, *too little*; as, *undermine*, to injure *secretly*, or *undercover*; *underlay*, to lay under; *undersell*, to sell cheaper.

UP—*upward*; as, *upheave*, to throw *upward*; *uplift*, to raise aloft, *uphold*, to support.

WITH—*against*, *from*; as, *withstand*, to stand *against*; *withhold*, to hold *from*; *withdraw*, to take back.

AFFIXES.

AN AFFIX is a word, or part of a word, placed after another to form with it a new word.

The Affixes, like the Prefixes, are not only diverse in their origin, but their origin and import are more difficult to ascertain.

ABLE, **IBLE**, **BLE**, **ILE**, *that may be*; as, *readable*, *that may be read*; *defensible*, *that may be defended*.

ACEOUS, *consisting of*, *resembling*; as, *herbaceous*, *consisting of herbs*; *arenaceous*, *consisting of sand*.

ACY, *being*, *state*, *office*; as, *fallacy*, any thing false, *being false*; *prelacy*, the *office* of a prelate.

AGE, *state of, a collection, the act of*; as, *dotage, in a state of doting*; *foliage, a collection of leaves*; *cartage, the act of carting*.

AN, AL, ORY, IC, ID, INE, ILE, *belonging to, pertaining to*; *American, belonging to America*; *nasal, belonging to the nose*; *rustic, pertaining to the country*; *feminine, pertaining to females*; *puerile, belonging to a boy*.

ANA, *the sayings of*; as, *Johnsoniana, the sayings of Johnson*.

ANCE, ANCY; as, *elegance, infancy*.

ARD, *state, character, one who*; as, *dotard, one in a state of dotage*; *wizard, one having the character of wisdom of a peculiar kind*; *drunkard, one who drinks*.

AR, *one who*; also, *pertaining to*; as *beggar, one who begs*; *vulgar, pertaining to the common people*.

ARY, *relating to, one who is*; as, *military, relating to soldiers*; *adversary, one who is adverse*.

ARY, ERY, ORY, *a place for, a collection of*; as, *herbary, a place for herbs*; *rookery, a collection of rooks*; *dormitory, a place for sleeping*.

ATE, *to make*; as, *terminate, to make an end*; *renovate, to make new*.

DOM, *possessions of, state*; as, *dukedom, the possessions of a duke*; *freedom, state of being free*; *wisdom, state or quality of being wise*.

EE, *one who is, also the object of an action*; as, *absentee, one who is absent*; *lessee, one to whom a lease is given*.

ER, OR, *one who, the agent in action*; as, *accuser, one who accuses*; *contributor, the person who contributes*. EER is another form of ER; as, *mountaineer, one who lives on the mountains*.

EN, *made of, consisting of, to make*; as, *wooden, made of wood*; *golden, made of gold, or resembling what is made of gold*; *straighten, to make straight*; *brighten, to make bright*.

ENCE, *state of being*; also denotes *continuance of action*; as, *turbulence, state of being turbulent*; *confidence, confiding in, the act of confiding in*; *cadence, falling or the action of falling*.

ENT, *one who*; also, *being, state of being*; as, *agent, one who acts*; *confident, having confidence, being sure*; *fluent, being in a flowing state, flowing*.

ESCENT, *growing*; ESSENCE, *state of growing*; as, *convalescent, growing well*; *convalescence, state of growing, having grown well*.

ET, LET, *little*; as, *casket, a little cask*; *leaflet, a little leaf*.

ETY, TY, *state of being*; as, *satiety, state of being full or satisfied*; *poverty, state of being poor*.

Ess, denotes the feminine gender; as, *lioness, princess*.

FUL, *full of*; as, *hopeful, full of hope; healthful, full of health.*

FY, *to make*; as, *purify, to make pure; fortify, to make strong.*

HOOD, *state of, office*; as, *priesthood, the office or state of a priest; boyhood, state of being a boy.*

ICLE, **CLE**, *little*; as, *particle, a little part; tubercle, a little tumor.*

ICS, *the science, the art*; as, *acoustics, the science of sound; mathematics, the science of measurement.*

ING; as, *spelling, living, wedding, farming, carving.*

ITY; as, *purity, humanity, utility, &c.*

IZE, **SIZE**, *to make, to give*; as *fertilize, to make fertile; magnetize, to give the property of a magnet.*

ISH, *a little, like*; as, *blackish, a little black; churlish, like a churl; roundish, a little round.* Also, *to make, to supply*; as, *furnish, to supply furniture; cherish, to make cheerful.*

ISM, *doctrine, idiom, party, peculiarity, sect*; as, *Calvinism, the party or doctrine of Calvin; Latinism, an idiom of the Latin language; vulgarism, the peculiarity of the vulgar.*

IST, *one skilled in*; as *linguist, one skilled in languages; florist, one who cultivates flowers.*

ITE, *a descendant, a follower*; as, *Israelite, a descendant of Israel; Jacobite, a follower of (Jacobus) James.* Also, *having, and one who*; as, *definite, finite, having an end; favourite, one who is in favour.*

IVE, denotes an *active quality*; as, *motive, moving; persuasive, having the quality of persuading.* It also denotes *state or condition*; as, *captive, one in a state of captivity.*

KIN, *little, as, manikin, a little man; lambkin, a little lamb.*

LESS, *without*; as, *thoughtless, without thought.*

LIKE, *resembling, like*; as, *godlike, resembling a god.*

LING, *little*; as, *darling, little dear.* Its signification is similar to that of **CLE**, **EL**, **ET**, **LET**, **OCK**; as, *satchel, a little sack; pocket, a little poke.*

LY, *like, manner*; as, *manly, like a man; bravely, in a brave manner; happily, in a happy manner.*

MENT, *the act of doing, state*; as, *banishment, the act of banishing; contentment, the state of being contented.*

MONY, *state of being, the thing done*; as, *acrimony, state of being sharp; testimony, the thing testified.*

NESS, *state of being, quality*; as, *blessedness, state of being blessed; whiteness, quality of being white.*

OUS, **OSE**, *full of*; as, *dangerous, full of danger; verbose, full of words.*

RICK, *jurisdiction*; as, *bishoprick*, the *jurisdiction* of a bishop.

SHIP, *office. state*; as, *clerkship*, *office* of a clerk; *fellowship*, the *office* of a fellow; the *state* of being on *equal* or friendly terms.

SOME, *full of*; as, *troublesome*, *full of* trouble.

STER, *one who*; as, *tapster*, *malster*, *barrister*, *punster*.

TH, denotes *a being*; as, *breadth*, *a being* broad; *health*, *wealth*.

TIDE, *time*; as, *noontide*, *noontime*.

TUDE, *state, quality*; *gratitude*, *state* of being grateful; *promptitude*, *quality* of promptness.

WARD, *toward*; as, *westward*, *toward* the west; *heavenward*, *toward* heaven.

ULE, *small*; as, *globule*, *a small* globe.

URE, *that which does, the thing done*; as, *legislature*, *that which makes* the laws; *investiture*, *the thing* invested; *capture*, *the thing* taken, or *manner* of taking.

Y consisting of, *full of*; as, *sandy*, *consisting of* sand; *bloody*, *full of* blood.

LATIN PREFIXES.

A, AB, ABS, *away, from*; as, *abstract*, to draw *away*; *avert*, to turn *from*; also, *avocation*, *avoid*, *avulsion*.

AD, *to*; as, *advert*, to turn *to*. AD becomes AC, AG, AL, AP, AS, AT, &c., according as the word to which it is prefixed begins with *c, g, l, &c.*

Sometimes *a* is used for *ad*; as, *ascend*; sometimes *ac* for *ad*; as, *accept*; also, *af, affix*; *ag, aggravate*; *al, allot*; *an, annex*; *ap, apply*; *as, assist*; *at, attend*; *am, meaning, around* or *about*; *as, ambition, amputate*.

ANTE, *before*; as, *antecede*, to go *before*; also, *antediluvian*, existing before the deluge.

ANTI, *against*; as, *antislavery*, *against* slavery.

BIS, BI, *two*; as, *bisect*, to cut or divide into *two*; *biped*, *a two-footed* animal.

CIRCUM, CIRCU, *about, round*; as, *circumvolve*, to roll *round*; *circuit*, going *about*.

CIS, *on this side*; as, *cisalpine*, *on this side* of the Alps.

CON, *together, with*; as, *conjoin*, to join *together*; *conform*, to comply *with*. CON sometimes becomes CO, COG, COL, COM, and COR.

CONTRA, *against*; as, *contradict*, to speak *against*. CONTRO and COUNTER are other forms of CONTRA; as, *controvert*, to turn *against*; *counteract*, to act *against*.

DE, *down, from*; as, *depress*, to press *down*; *deduce*, to draw *from*.

DI, DIF, DIS, *away, deprive of, asunder, not*; as, *divert*, to turn *away*; *disarm*, to *deprive of arms*; *disjoin*, to part *asunder*; *displease*, *not to please*.

E, EX, *out*; as, *eject*, to cast *out*; *expel*, to drive *out*. **EC, EF**, and **EL** are other forms of **EX**.

EXTRA, *beyond*; as, *extraordinary*, *beyond the ordinary*.

IN, IG, IL, IM, IR, before verbs, signify, *in, into*; but before *adjectives, not*; as, *inhale*, to breathe *in*; *immure*, to wall *in*; *induce*, to lead *into*; *incorrect*, *not correct*; *illegal*, *not legal*.

INTER, *between*; as, *intervene*, to come *between*; *interpose*, to place *between*.

INTRO, *in, into*; as, *introduce*, to lead *into*, to bring *in*.

JUXTA, *nigh to*; as, *juxtaposition*, a position *nigh to* some thing.

OB, with its forms **OC, OF, OP**, means *against, in the way of*; as, *obtrude*, to thrust *against*; *oppose*, to place *against*; *occur*, to come *in the way of*.

PER, *through*; as, *pervade*, to go *through*.

POST, *after*; as, *postscript*, written *after*.

PRE, PRÆ, *before*; as, *prejudge*, to judge *before*.

PRETER, *beyond, past*; as, *preternatural*, *beyond what is natural*.

PRO, *forth, forward, for*; as, *produce*, bring *forth*; *progress*, to go *forward*; *pronoun*, for a noun.

RE, *again, back*; as, *reload*, to load *again*; *recede*, to go *back*.

RETRO, *backward*; as, *retrograde*, going *backward*.

SE, *aside, apart*; as, *secrete*, to conceal; *seduce*, to lead *aside* or *astray*; *seclude*, to confine *apart* from others.

SINE, *without*; as *sinecure*, *without cure*.

SUB, SUBTER, *under*; as, *subscribe*, to write *under*; *subterfuge*, a flying *under*; **SUB** is changed to **SUC, SUF, SUG, SUP, SUR**, and **SUS**.

SUPER, *above, over*; as, *supernatural*, *above nature*; *superadd*, to add *over and above*.

TRANS, *across, beyond*; as, *transport*, to carry *across* the sea; *transatlantic*, *beyond the Atlantic*.

ULTRA, *beyond*; as, *ultramontane*, *beyond the mountains*; *ultramarine*, *beyond the sea*.

GREEK PREFIXES.

A, AN, *without*; as, *apathy*, *without feeling*; *anarchy*, *without government*.

AMPHI, *both, on both sides*; as, *amphibious*, living *both* on land and in water; *amphitheatre*, a building of circular form.

ANA, *again, through*; as, *anabaptist*, one who baptizes *again*; *anatomy*, a cutting *through*.

ANTI, *against, opposite to*; as, *antichrist*, *against* Christ; *antipodes*, having feet *opposite* ours; living on the other side of the earth.

APRO, *from*; as, *apostate*, one who has gone away *from* his religion.

AUTO, *self*; as, *autograph*, written by one's *self*.

DIA, *through*; as, *diameter*, a straight line passing *through* the centre of a circle.

EN, EM, IN, ON; as, *endemic*, *in* the people; *emphasis*, a stress of voice *on* a particular word in a sentence.

EPI, *upon*; as, *epitaph*, an inscription *upon* a tomb; *epidemic*, a disease *upon* the people.

HYPER, *beyond, over*; as, *hyperbolic*, exaggerating or diminishing *beyond* the fact; *hypercritical*, *overcritical*.

HYPO, *under*; as, *hypocrite*, one who keeps *under* or hides his true character.

META, *beyond*, as, *metaphor*, a word carried *beyond* its meaning.

PARA, *against, like, by the side of*; as, *paradox*, *against* common opinion; *parody*, an ode *like* another; *parallel*, *by the side of* another.

PERI, *near to, round*; as, *perihelion*, *near to* or *around* the sun; *perimeter*, a line passing *round* a figure.

SYN, SUN, SYL, SYM, *together, with*; as, *synod*, a coming *together*; *syllable*, letters pronounced *together*; *sympathy*, feeling *with* or *for* another.

EXERCISES ON PREFIXES AND AFFIXES.

EXERCISE I.

EACH Prefix in this Section is defined, and then illustrated by an example. The Prefixes, with their definitions, should be thoroughly committed to memory. In reciting the examples, the pupils should pronounce and spell the word, before giving the definition.

PREFIXES.	DEFINITIONS.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
AB	<i>from; away</i>	AB SOLVE',	to free <i>from</i>
AD	<i>to; at; near</i>	AD JOIN',	to join <i>to</i>
ANA	<i>up; again</i>	AN' A LYZE,	to loosen <i>up</i> ; resolve
ANTE	<i>before</i>	AN TE CED' ENT,	going <i>before</i>
ANTI	<i>against; opposite</i>	AN TIP' A THY,	feeling <i>against</i> ; ill-will
BE	<i>by; over</i>	BE SIDE',	by or near the side
BENE	<i>well; good</i>	BEN E FAC' TOR,	one who does good

PREFIXES.	DEFINITIONS.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
CIRCUM	<i>around; about</i>	CIR CUM' FLU ENT,	<i>flowing around</i>
CIS	<i>on this side</i>	CIS AT LAN' TIC,	<i>on this side the Atlantic</i>
CON	<i>with; together</i>	CON VOKE',	<i>to call together</i>
CONTRA	<i>against</i>	CON TRA DICT',	<i>to speak against</i>

EXERCISE II.

DE	<i>from; down.</i>	DE PART',	<i>to part from</i>
DIS	<i>apart; away.</i>	DIS MISS',	<i>to send away</i>
E	<i>out; out of; from</i>	EJECT',	<i>to cast out</i>
EN	<i>in; to make or put</i>	EN WRAP',	<i>to wrap in</i>
EXTRA	<i>beyond</i>	EX TRA MUN' DANE,	<i>beyond the world</i>
FORE	<i>before</i>	FORE TELL',	<i>to tell beforehand</i>
HEMI	<i>half</i>	HEM' I SPHERE,	<i>a half sphere</i>
IN	<i>in; into; not</i>	IN CISE',	<i>to cut in or into</i>
INTER	<i>between; among</i>	IN TER POSE',	<i>to put between</i>
INTRO	<i>within; inward</i>	IN TRO DUCE',	<i>to bring or lead within</i>
MIS	<i>wrong; bad</i>	MIS GUIDE',	<i>to guide wrong</i>
MALE	<i>evil; wrong</i>	MALE FAC' TOR,	<i>one who does evil</i>

EXERCISE III.

OB	<i>in front; against</i>	OB JECT',	<i>to throw or urge against</i>
OUT	<i>beyond</i>	OUT RUN',	<i>to run beyond; outstrip</i>
OVER	<i>above; beyond</i>	O VER SHOOT',	<i>to shoot beyond</i>
PER	<i>through</i>	PER' FO RATE,	<i>to bore through</i>
POST	<i>after; afterwards</i>	POST' SCRIPT,	<i>what is written after</i>
PRE	<i>before</i>	PRE JUDGE',	<i>to judge beforehand</i>
PRETER	<i>beyond; past</i>	PRETER NAT' U RAL,	<i>beyond nature</i>
PRO	<i>before; forth</i>	PRO DUCE',	<i>to lead or bring forth</i>
RE	<i>again; back</i>	RE VIEW',	<i>to view again.</i>
RETRO	<i>backwards</i>	RET' RO GRADE,	<i>to go backwards</i>
SE	<i>aside; apart</i>	SE CEDE',	<i>to go aside or apart</i>
SEMI	<i>half</i>	SEM' I CIR CLE,	<i>half a circle</i>

EXERCISE IV.

SUB	<i>under; after</i>	SUB SIGN',	<i>to sign under</i>
SUBTER	<i>under</i>	SUB TER' FLUOUS,	<i>flowing under</i>
SUPER	<i>over; above</i>	SU PER NAT' U RAL,	<i>above the natural</i>
SYN	<i>with; together</i>	SYN' THE SIS,	<i>a putting together</i>
SUS	<i>up; upward</i>	SUS TAIN',	<i>to hold up</i>
TRANS	<i>across; over</i>	TRANS CEND',	<i>to climb or pass over</i>
UP	<i>above; on high</i>	UP LIFT',	<i>to lift on high</i>
ULTRA	<i>beyond</i>	UL TRA MON' TANE,	<i>beyond the mountains</i>
UN	<i>not</i>	UN HAP' PY,	<i>not happy</i>
WITH	<i>against; aside</i>	WITH STAND',	<i>to stand against</i>

REMARKS ON SOME OF THE PREFIXES.

EXERCISE V.

Some Prefixes have various forms from a regard to euphony; or a desire to produce agreeable sound. Thus, when AD (to) comes before a radical beginning with a consonant, the d of the prefix is generally

changed into whatever consonant the radical begins with. In this way, for example, AD undergoes no less than ten different changes: AD, AC, AF, AG, AL, AN, AP, AR, AS, AT, A. The following are examples of words, in which all the various forms of AD appear. Thus,

Instead of	We say	Instead of	We say
AD CEPT,	AC CEPT',	AD PEND,	AP PEND',
AD FIX,	AF FIX',	AD RANGE,	AR RANGE',
AD GRIEVE,	AG GRIEVE',	AD SUME,	AS SUME',
AD LOT,	AL LOT',	AD TRACT,	AT TRACT',
AD NEX,	AN NEX',	AD SCEND,	A SCEND'.

EXERCISE VI.

The other Prefixes which, like AD, have different forms, are—

AB,	sometimes written	ABS or A.
ANTI,	..	ANT: as, <i>Antarctic</i> .
CON,	..	COG, COL, COM, COB, or CO: <i>Cognate, &c.</i>
CONTRA,	..	COUNTER: as, <i>Counteract</i> .
DIS,	..	DIF or DI: as, <i>Diffident, Divert</i> .
E,	..	EX, EC, or EF: as, <i>Express, Eccentric</i> .
EN,	..	EM: <i>Embalm</i> .
IN,	..	IG, IL, IM, or IR: as, <i>Ignoble, Illegal, &c.</i>
OB,	..	OC, OF, or OP: as, <i>Occur, Offer, Oppose</i> .
SUB,	..	SUC, SUF, SUG, or SUP: as, <i>Succeed, &c.</i>
SYN,	..	SYL, SYM, or SY: as, <i>Syllable, &c.</i>

EXERCISE VII.

When a Prefix means *not*, it is said to be **NEGATIVE**: as, *dislike not* to like; *unable, not* able.

When a Prefix means *to deprive of*, or *to take out of the state of*, it is said to be **PRIVATIVE**: as, *disarm, to deprive of arms*.

The Prefixes most used, in a primitive or negative sense, are **DE**, **DIS**, **IN** and **UN**: as,

DE THRONE',	to deprive of a throne.
DE RANGE',	to take out of the state of being in range or order.
DIS A' BLE,	to take out of the state of being able.
DIS SIM' I LAR,	not similar; unlike.
IN EL' E GANT,	not elegant.
UN GRATE' FUL,	not grateful.
UN BIND',	to take out of the state of being bound.

Sometimes a Prefix adds nothing to the meaning of a radical. It is then merely **EUPHONIC**: as, **UN** in *unloose*, which does not affect the sense of the word *loose*—*loose* and *unloose* meaning the same thing.

EXPLANATION OF THE AFFIXES.

EXERCISE I.

AFFIXES.	DEFINITIONS.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
AN	one who.	RO' MAN,	one who is a native of Rome.
ATE	one who.	GRAD' U ATE,	one who obtains a degree.
IST	one who,	ART' IST,	one who is skilled in art.

AFFIXES.	DEFINITIONS.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
NER	<i>one who.</i>	PART' NER,	<i>one who has or owns a part.</i>
STER	<i>one who.</i>	TEAM' STER,	<i>one who drives a team.</i>
YER	<i>one who.</i>	LAW' YER,	<i>one who is versed in law.</i>
ISAN	<i>one who.</i>	PAR' TI SAN,	<i>one who sides with a party.</i>
ZEN	<i>one who.</i>	CIT' I ZEN,	<i>one who dwells in a city.</i>
ESS	<i>a female.</i>	LI' ON ESS,	<i>a female of the lion tribe.</i>
INE	<i>a female.</i>	HER' O INE,	<i>a heroic female.</i>
IX	<i>a female.</i>	ME DI A' TRIX,	<i>a female that mediates.</i>

EXERCISE II.

ATE*	<i>to make.</i>	TERM' IN ATE,	<i>to make an end.</i>
EN	<i>to make; made of.</i>	SOFT' EN,	<i>to make soft.</i>
FY	<i>to make.</i>	AM' PLI FY,	<i>to make ample.</i>
IFY	<i>to make.</i>	JUST' I FY,	<i>to make or prove just.</i>
IZE	<i>to make.</i>	CIV' IL IZE,	<i>to make civil.</i>
ISH	<i>to make.</i>	PUB' LISH	<i>to make public.</i>
ING	<i>continuing to.</i>	WALK' ING,	<i>continuing to walk.</i>
ED	<i>did; made of.</i>	MARE' ED,	<i>did mark.</i>
AR	<i>one who.</i>	BEG' GAR,	<i>one who begs.</i>
ER	<i>one who.</i>	PAY' ER,	<i>one who pays.</i>
EE	<i>one who.</i>	PAY EE',	<i>one who receives pay.</i>
OR	<i>one who.</i>	ACT' OR,	<i>one who acts.</i>

EXERCISE III.

ITY†	} <i>quality, or state of being.</i>	PUB' LIO' I TY	<i>quality or state of being public.</i>
CY		PRI' VA CY,	<i>quality or state of being private.</i>
ANCY		OC' CU PAN CY,	<i>quality or state of being occupied</i>
ANCE		VIG' IL ANCE,	<i>state of being vigilant.</i>
ENCY		TEND' EN CY,	<i>quality or state of tending.</i>
ENCE	} <i>the act of; that which.</i>	AD HER' ENCE,	<i>quality or state of adhering.</i>
UDE		QUI' ET UDE,	<i>state of being quiet.</i>
NESS		RUDE' NESS,	<i>quality of being rude.</i>
ION		MO' TION,	<i>act of moving.</i>
MENT		MOVE' MENT,	<i>act of moving.</i>
URE		SEIZ' URE,	<i>act of seizing.</i>

* ATE and EN, in common with FY, IFY, and IZE, are defined above by the phrase "*to make*," because they are commonly used to form verbs. This phrase, "*to make*," is taken, as a definition, merely for the sake of convenience. In many cases, other definitions, as "*to cause*," "*to put*," &c., will be found more suitable. Sometimes the affix is the mere sign of a verb; as *locate*, *to place*.

Besides this use, however, ATE and EN, to which may be added the affix ED, are employed to form participles and participial adjectives; and are then defined by such phrases as, "*made of*," "*made into*," "*made, or formed like*," "*having*," "*affected by*," &c. The following are examples: GLO' BATE, *formed like a globe*.—SILK' EN, *made of silk*.—RE NOWN' ED, *having renown*.

† This affix has two other forms, ETY and TY: as, in *variety* and *novelty*.

EXERCISE IV.

AFFIXES.	DEFINITIONS.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
AL	} pertaining or relating to.	FA' TAL,	pertaining to fate.
EAS		EAS' TERN,	relating to the east.
IC		HE RO' IC,	pertaining to a hero.
AN		AF' RIC AN,	pertaining to Africa.
ISE		SER' PEN TISE,	pertaining to a serpent.
ILE		IN' FANT ISE,	pertaining to an infant.
AR		CON' SUL AR,	relating to a consul.
ARY	}	COM' ET A RY,	relating to a comet.
ICAL		PO ET' I CAL,	relating to a poet.

EXERCISE V.

OUS*	} full of; of the nature of.	DAN' GER OUS,	full of danger.
OSE		VER BOSE,	full of words.
FUL†		HOPE' FUL,	full of hope.
Y	} in a—manner.	JUC' CY,	full of juice.
EY		CLAY' EY,	of the nature of clay.
LY		RUDE' LY,	in a rude manner.
ABLE	} that may or can be; fit to be.	TRACK' A BLE,	that may be traced.
IBLE		ED' I BLE,	fit to be eaten.
IFIC		TOR POR' IF IC,	producing torpor.
ICS	the science of.	OP' TICS,	the science of vision.

EXERCISE VI.

IVE	} tending to or hav- ing the nature of.	PRE VENT' IVE,	tending to prevent.
ORY		EX' PI A TO RY,	tending to expiate.
KIN		LAMB' KIN,	a little lamb.
LING	} little, petty, or minute.	GOS' LING,	a little or young goose.
ULE		AN I MAL' CULE,	a minute animal.
CLE		GLOB' ULE,	a little globe.
ICLE		TU' BER CLE,	a little tumor.
OCK		PART' I CLE,	a minute part.
ET		HILL' OCK,	a little hill.
LET		FLOW' ER ET,	a little flower.
STER		RING' LET,	a little ring, or curl.
		PO' ET AS TER,	a petty poet.

EXERCISE VII.

SHIP	} rank, office, state, or jurisdiction of.	LORD' SHIP,	the rank of a lord.
HOOD		CHILD' HOOD,	the state of being a child.
RIC		BISH' OP RIC,	the jurisdiction of a Bishop
DOM		POPE' DOM,	the jurisdiction of the Pope

* The Affix OUS has several forms, as EOUS, CEUS, &c.

† The Affix FUL, when, with a Radical, it forms a Noun, signifies "what, or as much as, will fill:" that is, denotes the amount or quantity necessary to fill whatever is expressed by the Radical: as, *handful, what, or as much as, will fill the hand; armful, what will fill the arm.*

AFFIXES.	DEFINITIONS.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
Y*	the art or practice of; or the place where.	GLUT TON Y,	the practice of a glutton.
RY		BIG' O TRY,	the practice of a bigot.
ARY		STAT U A RY,	the art of making statues.
ERY		COOK' ER Y,	the art of cooking.
ORY		ARM' OR Y,	place where arms are kept.
WARD	toward.	WEST' WARD,	toward the west.

EXERCISE VIII.

AGE†	the act of	CART' AGE,	the act of carting
OLD	having form of	SPHE' ROID,	having the form of a sphere
ER	more	HARD' ER,	more hard.
EST	most	HARD' EST,	most hard.
ESCE	to grow	CO A LESCE,	to grow together; unite.
ESCENT	becoming	A CES' CENT,	becoming sour.
ESCENCE	act of becoming	A CES' CENCE,	act of becoming sour.
ISM‡	doctrine	MOR' MON ISM,	the doctrine of the Mormons
LESS	without	CASH' LESS,	without cash.
ISH	somewhat	NEW' ISH,	somewhat new.
SOME	somewhat	LONE' SOME,	somewhat lonely.

DERIVATIVES FORMED BY PREFIXES.

In the following exercises, each radical is combined with several Prefixes. The Prefix and the radical are first placed apart; the radical being defined. The two parts are then put together, and defined in connection. The pupil should be questioned often on the parts separately, and required to spell and pronounce distinctly, here as every where else, each derivative, before giving its derivation.

* Y, RY, ARY, ERY, ORY, are merely different forms of the same prefix. Beside the meanings given above, they often denote a body or number of things taken *collectively*: as, *perfumery*, a collection of perfumes; *yeomanry*, the body or mass of yeomen.

† The Affix AGE signifies also *the cost of, the place where, the rank or condition*, as also an *assemblage of things taken together*; as,

CART' AGE,	the act of carting, or the cost of carting.
AN' CHOR AGE,	the place of anchoring, or the duty for anchoring.
PEER' AGE,	the rank of a peer.
PLU' MAGE,	the feathers (taken <i>collectively</i>) of a fowl.
BOND' AGE,	the state or condition of a bondman or slave.

‡ This Affix deserves special notice. It marks *what is peculiar to persons or things*; and hence denotes a *doctrine or system, a state or condition*, as also an *idiom in language*. Examples are: CAL' VIN ISM, the doctrines peculiar to Calvin. — SAV' AG ISM, the state or condition of a savage. — HE' BRA ISM, what is peculiar to Hebrew; an idiom. — HER' O ISM, what is peculiar to a hero; valor.

EXERCISE I.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
EN	} ABLE, <i>strong</i>	EN A' BLE,	to make able.
DIS		DIS* A' BLE,	to deprive of ability.
UN		UN A' BLE,	not able.
AD	} HERE, <i>to stick.</i>	AD HERE,	to stick; cling to.
CO		CO HERE,	to stick together.
IN		IN HERE,	to stick in; to exist in.
COM	} PLOT, <i>to scheme.</i>	COM PLOT,	to plot together.
COUNTER		COUN' TER PLOT,	plot against plot.
UNDER		UN' DER PLOT,	plot beneath.
RE	} PASS, <i>to step.</i>	RE PASS,	to pass again.
SUR†		SUR PASS,	to pass over; to excel.
TRES‡		TRES' PASS,	to pass beyond bounds.

EXERCISE II.

E	} VADE, <i>to go.</i>	E VADE,	to go or get out; to avoid.
IN		IN VADE,	to go into; to attack.
PER		PER VADE,	to go, or pass through.
COUNTER	} VOTE, <i>to signify a choice; a suffrage.</i>	COUN' TER VOTE,	opposite vote.
OVER		O VER VOTE,	to vote beyond.
OUT		OUT VOTE,	to exceed in votes.
DE	} CLINE, <i>to lean.</i>	DE CLINE,	lean down; to fail.
RE		RE CLINE,	to lean back; to repose.
IN		IN CLINE,	to lean into; or towards.
BENE	} FIT, <i>to make; to do.</i>	BEN' E FIT,	to do good, or well for.
PRO		PROF' IT,	to do, or act for; improve.
RE		RE FIT,	to make again; repair.

EXERCISE III.

COM	} PRISE, <i>to take.</i>	COM PRISE,	to take together; include.
RE		RE PRISE,	to take again.
ENTER§		EN' TER PRISE,	take in (hand); undertake.
IN	} SPHERE, <i>a globe</i>	IN SPHERE,	to place in a sphere.
HEMI		HEM' I SPHERE,	half a sphere.
SEMI		SEM' I SPHERE,	half a sphere.
DI	} GRESS, <i>to go; act of going.</i>	DI GRESS,	to go aside from; wander.
CON		CON' GRESS,	a going together; council.
PRO		PRO GRESS,	to go forward.
TRANS		TRANS GRESS,	to go beyond bounds.

* DIS, in *disable*, is *privative*.

† Note that the radical word *HERE*, (*to stick*), though it appears in the derivative forms *Adhere*, *Cohere*, and *Inhere*, can never be used alone, as an independent word. Radicals that are thus inseparable from prefixes or affixes, are called **INSEPARABLE RADICALS**.

‡ *SUB* is for *super* (over), and *TRES* for *trans* (over; across).

§ *ENTER* is for *INTER*, between; among; within; in.

EXERCISE IV.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
AD	JACENT, <i>lying</i> .	AD JA' CENT,	lying near.
CIRCUM		CIR CUM JA' CENT,	lying around.
IN		IN JA' CENT,	lying in, or within.
SUB		SUB JA' CENT,	lying under.
AD	JURE, <i>to swear</i> .	AD JURE',	to cause to swear to.
AB		AB JURE',	to swear off from.
CON		CON JURE',*	to swear together.
PER		PER' JURE,	swear through, <i>i.e. falsely</i> .
AD	JUDGE, <i>to pass sentence: to decide</i> .	AD JUDGE',	to judge to; to decide.
PRE		PRE JUDGE',	to judge beforehand.
MIS		MIS JUDGE',	to judge wrong.
FORE		FORE JUDGE',	to judge beforehand.

EXERCISE V.

A†	MOUNT, <i>to rise</i> .	A MOUNT',	to mount up to.
RE		RE MOUNT',	to mount again.
SUR		SUR MOUNT',	to mount over.
DIS		DIS† MOUNT',	to get down; to alight.†
E	MOTION, <i>movement; a moving</i> .	E MO' TION,	a moving (of the mind).§
COM		COM MO' TION,	a moving together.
PRO		PRO MO' TION,	a moving forward.
RE		RE MO' TION,	a moving back or away.
AT	TRIBUTE, <i>to give; to grant</i> .	AT TRIB' UTE,	to give or grant to.
CON		CON TRIB' UTE,	to give along with others.
DIS		DIS TRIB' UTE,	to give apart; deal out.
RE		RE TRIB' UTE,	to give or pay back.

EXERCISE VI.

RE	CUR, <i>to run</i> .	RE CUR',	to run back (in thought.)
CON		CON CUR',	to run together; to agree.
IN		IN CUR',	to run into
OC		OC CUR',	to run towards; to happen
EX	CURSION, <i>the act of running</i> .	EX CUR' SION,	a running out; ramble.
IN		IN CUR' SION,	a running into, or upon.
DIS		DIS CUR' SION,	a running apart or about.
DE		DE CUR' SION,	a running down.
EX	SCIND, <i>to cut</i> .	EX SCIND',	to cut out.
AB		AB SCIND',	to cut from, or off.
RE		RE SCIND',	to cut off again; to repeal.
INTER		IN TER SCIND',	to cut from amongst.

* CON' jure, (*kun' jer*.) with the accent on the first syllable, means to practice witchcraft.

† A is for AD, (*to*) and SUR for SUPER (*above*.)

‡ DIS, in *dismount*, is *privative*. The full definition, therefore, would be "*to take out of the state of*" being mounted.

§ Literally, an *out-moving*, i. e. an excitement of the feelings.

EXERCISE VII.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
IN	} CISION, a cutting.	IN CIS' ION.	a cutting into.
EX		EX CIS' ION,	a cutting out.
DE		DE CIS' ION,	a cutting off; a settlement
PRE		PRE CIS' ION,*	a cutting off (accurately.)
AP	} PEND, to hang.	AP PEND',	to hang to.
DE		DE PEND',	to hang down.
IM		IM PEND',	to hang on, or over.
SUS		SUS PEND',	to hang up.
CON	} VENE, to come, or go.	CON VENE,	to come together.
CONTRA		CON TRA VENE',	to come or go against.
INTER		IN TER VENE',	to come between.
AD		AD VENE',	to come to.

EXERCISE VIII.

CON	} VENTION, a coming.	CON VEN' TION,	a coming together.
CIRCUM		CIRCUM VEN' TION,	a coming around; fraud.
IN		IN VEN' TION,	a coming into (something
PRE		PRE VEN' TION,	a coming before. [new.]†
DIS	} SECTION, a cutting; a cut.	DIS SEC' TION,	a cutting apart.
INTER		IN TER SEC' TION,	a cutting amongst.
SUB		SUB SEC' TION,	under or smaller section.
EX		EX SEC' TION,	a cutting out.
IN	} TRUDE, to push or thrust.	IN TRUDE',	to push, or thrust into,
PRO		PRO TRUDE',	push, or thrust forward.
EX		EX TRUDE',	to push out or off.
OB		OB TRUDE',	push towards; urge upon.

EXERCISE IX.

IN	} TRUSION, the act of pushing.	IN TRU' SION,	the act of pushing into.
PRO		PRO TRU' SION,	act of pushing forward.
EX		EX TRU' SION,	the act of pushing out.
OB		OB TRU' SION,	act of pushing toward.
COL	} LOCUTION, a speaking; talk.	COL LO CU' TION,	a talking together.
CIRCUM		CIR CUM LO CU' TION	a talking round about.
E		EL O CU' TION,	a speaking out; delivery.
AC		AC CUM' BENT,	lying towards.
IN	} CUMBENT, lying, or resting.	IN CUM' BENT,	lying, or resting in or on.
RE		RE CUM' BENT,	lying back; reclining.
PRO		PRO CUM' BENT,	lying or leaning forward.
DE		DE CUM' BENT,	lying down or low.

* PRECISION is, literally, the act of cutting off before or in front, and hence, generally, the act of cutting off needless parts, i. e. exactness.

† That is, the finding out of new things.

EXERCISE X.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
COM	POSE, to put, or place.	COM POSE',	to put together.
DE		DE POSE',	to put or lay down.
INTER		IN TER POSE',	to put or place between.
RE		RE POSE',	to put or lay back.
EX		EX POSE',	to put or lay out.
IM		IM POSE',	to put in or upon.
DIS		DIS POSE',	to put or set apart.
TRANS	STRUCT, to build; pile.	TRANS POSE',	to put across.*
SUP		SUP POSE',	to put under view.
PRO		PRO POSE',	to put before.
CON		CONS TRUCT',	to build together.
RECON		RE-CON STRUCT',	to build together again.
OB		OB STRUCT',	to build or pile against.
SUPER		SU PER STRUCT',	to build over or upon.

EXERCISE XI.

EM	MIGRATE, to go; to travel.	EM' I GRATE,	to travel out.
IM		IM' MI GRATE,	to travel into.
TRANS		TRANS' MI GRATE,	to travel over, or across.
COM		COM' MI GRATE,	to travel together.
RE		RE-MI' GRATE,	to travel back.
CO	ACT, to do; to move.	CO-ACT',	to act together.
EN		EN ACT',	to put into action or force.
COUNTER		COUN TER ACT',	to act against.
OVER		O VER ACT',	to act beyond; overdo.
RE		RE ACT',	to act again, or back.
TRANS	NATURAL, pertaining to nature.	TRANS ACT',	to act, or do thoroughly.
UN		UN NAT' U RAL,	not natural.
SUPER		SU PER NAT' U RAL,	above the natural.
PRETER		PRETER NAT' U RAL,	beyond the natural.

EXERCISE XII.

DE	JECT, to cast, or throw.	DE JECT',	to cast down.
E		E JECT',	to cast out.
IN		IN JECT',	to cast into.
INTER		IN TER JECT',	to cast among.
OB		OB JECT',	to cast in front; to oppose.
PRO		PRO JECT',	to cast forward.
RE		RE JECT',	to cast back; to refuse.
SUB	CEDE, to go or come; to yield.	SUB JECT',	to cast under; to subdue.
PRE		PRE CEDE',	to go before.
INTER		IN TER CEDE',	to go between.
RE		RE CEDE',	to go back.
ANTE		AN TE CEDE',	to go before.

* That is, to put each in the place of the other; to exchange the order of things.

EXERCISE XIII.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
AC	} CEDE, <i>to go</i> <i>or come;</i> <i>to yield.</i>	AC CEDE',	to go to; to yield or assent to.
EX		EX CEED',*	to go beyond; to excel.
PRO		PRO CEED',*	to go forward; to advance.
SUC		SUC CEED',*	to go or come after.
CON		CON CEDE',	to go in with opinion.
RE	} CESSION, <i>a</i> <i>going; a</i> <i>yielding.</i>	RE CES' SION,	a going back.
AC		AC CES' SION,	a going to; addition.
CON		CON CES' SION,	a going with; yielding.
INTER		IN TER CES' SION,	a going between.
SE		SE CES' SION,	a going aside or away.
PRO		PRO CES' SION,	a going forward.
SUC		SUC CES' SION,	a going after.
PRE		PRE CES' SION,	a going before; advance.

EXERCISE XIV.

RE	} DUCE, <i>to</i> <i>lead or</i> <i>draw.</i>	RE DUCE'	to lead back; to bring down.
DE		DE DUCE'	to lead or draw from; to infer.
PRO		PRO DUCE'	to lead or bring forth.
SUB		SUB DUCE'	to lead under, or aside.
SE		SE DUCE'	to lead away; to corrupt.
IN		IN DUCE'	to lead into; to persuade.
E		E DUCE'	to lead or bring out.
AD	}	AD DUCE'	to lead or bring to.
CON		CON DUCE'	to lead together; to tend.

EXERCISE XV.

AS	} SIST, <i>to</i> <i>stand.</i>	AS SIST',	to stand to; to aid.
CON		CON SIST',	to stand together.
RE		RE SIST',	to stand against; to oppose.
DE		DE SIST',	to stand off from; to cease.
IN		IN SIST',	to stand upon; to urge.
EX	} SCRIBE, <i>to</i> <i>write; to</i> <i>mark.</i>	EX† IST',	to stand out; i. e. to be.
SUB		SUB SIST',	to stand under; to be.
PER		PER SIST',	to stand through; persevere.
SUB		SUB SCRIBE',	to write one's name under.
CIRCUM		CIR CUM SCRIBE',	to mark around; to limit.
PRE		PRE SCRIBE',	to write or mark down before.
IN		IN SCRIBE',	to write on or upon.
DE		DE SCRIBE',	to write down; to delineate.

* Observe, that in the three words Exceed, Proceed, and Succeed, the radical part is written *ceed*, instead of *cede*.

† Notice that the letter *s*, in the radical, *SIST*, is omitted or absorbed, when the prefix *EX* is united with it.

EXERCISE XVI.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
AT	TRACT, to <i>draw.</i>	AT TRACT',	to draw to, or towards.
CON		CON TRACT',	to draw together.
ABS		ABS TRACT',	to draw, or take from.
EX		EX TRACT',	to draw, or take out.
PRO		PRO TRACT',	to draw, or bring forward.
SUB		SUB TRACT',	to draw from beneath.
DE		DE TRACT',	to draw or take from.
DIS	FUSE, to <i>pour; to melt.</i>	DIS TRACT',	to draw apart; to confuse.
CON		CON FUSE',	to pour together; to perplex.
RE		RE FUSE',	to pour back; to reject.
IN		IN FUSE',	to pour into.
TRANS		TRANS FUSE',	to pour over, or through.
PER		PER FUSE',	to pour through; to tincture.
SUF		SUF FUSE',	to pour beneath.
DIF		DIF FUSE',	to pour apart; to scatter.
EF		EF FUSE',	to pour out.
AF		AF FUSE',	to pour to, or upon.

EXERCISE XVII.

IN	VOLVE, to <i>roll.</i>	IN VOLVE',	to roll in; to comprise.
E		E VOLVE',	to roll out; to disclose.
DE		DE VOLVE',	to roll down; to fall to.
RE		RE VOLVE',	to roll again; turn around.
INTER		IN TER VOLVE',	to roll among.
IN	VOLUTION, a <i>rolling; a turn.</i>	IN VO LU' TION,	a rolling in; act of involving.
E		EV O LU' TION,	a rolling out; act of evolving.
RE		REV O LU' TION,	a rolling again; act of revol-
DE		DEV O LU' TION,	a rolling down. [ving.
CON		CON VO LU' TION,	a rolling together.

EXERCISE XVIII.

DE	PRESS, to <i>squeeze; to urge.</i>	DE PRESS',	to press down.
IM		IM PRESS',	to press on or upon.
COM		COM PRESS',	to press together.
RE		RE PRESS',	to press back.
EX		EX PRESS',	to press out.
OP		OP PRESS',	to press against.
SUF		SUF PRESS',	to press under; to crush.
OVER		OVER PRESS',	to press too much.
AF	FIX to fas- <i>ten; to set; to drive.</i>	AF FIX',	to fix to.
SUF		SUF FIX',	to fix after
PRE		PRE FIX',	to fix before.
POST		POST FIX',	to fix after.
TRANS		TRANS FIX',	to fix or drive through.
IN		IN FIX',	to fix or fasten in.

EXERCISE XIX.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
IN	SPECT, <i>to look; a view</i>	IN SPECT',	to look into.
PRO		PROS' PECT,	a look or view ahead.
INTRO		IN TRO SPECT',	to look within.
RE		RE SPECT',	to look to again; regard.
EX	FLUX, <i>a flow, flowing.</i>	EX PECT', [‡]	to look out for; to wait for.
CON		CON' FLUX,	a flowing together.
AF		AF' FLUX,	a flowing to, or towards.
RE		RE' FLUX,	a flowing back.
IN	FLUENT, <i>flowing.</i>	IN' FLUX,	a flowing in.
SUPER		SU' PER FLUX,	an overflow.
CON		CON' FLU ENT,	flowing together.
DIF		DIF' FLU ENT,	flowing apart.
RE	FLUENT, <i>flowing.</i>	REF' LU ENT,	flowing back.
EF		EF' LU ENT,	flowing out.
SUBTER		SUB TER' FLU ENT	flowing under.

EXERCISE XX.

CON	FER, <i>to bear, to bring.</i>	CON FER',	to bring together (counsels).
OF		OF FER',	to bring towards.
PRE		PRE FER',	to bear before, i. e. <i>choose</i> .
DIF		DIF FER',	to bear apart; disagree.
RE	MIT, <i>to send, to let go.</i>	RE FER',	to bear back for decision.
TRANS		TRANS FER',	to bear over; to remove.
IN		IN FER',	to bring in (a conclusion).
SUF		SUF FER',	to bear under; to endure.
DE	MIT, <i>to send, to let go.</i>	DE FER',	to bear off; to delay.
RE		RE MIT',	to send back.
TRANS		TRANS MIT',	to send across, or over.
PER		PER MIT',	to send through; to allow.
AD		AD MIT',	to send, or let go to.

EXERCISE XXI.

DE	MISSION, <i>a sending.</i>	DE MIS' SION,	a sending down.
E		E MIS' SION,	a sending out; an issue.
INTER		IN TER MIS' SION,	a sending between; recess.
AD		AD MIS' SION,	a letting (one) go to or into.
SUB	TAIN, <i>to hold; to reach.</i>	SUB MIS' SION,	a sending under; subjection
AT		AT TAIN',	to reach to; to get.
DE		DE TAIN',	to hold off; to keep back.
PER		PER TAIN',	to hold through; to belong
CON	TAIN, <i>to hold; to reach.</i>	CON TAIN',	to hold together.
RE		RE TAIN',	to hold or keep back.
SUS		SUS TAIN',	to hold up; to support.
ENTER†		EN TER TAIN',	to hold or keep within.
OB		OB TAIN',	to hold; to get; to gain.

* See note, page 208.

† ENTER is for Inter.

EXERCISE XXII.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
AD	VERT, to turn.	AD VERT',	to turn to; refer to.
RE		RE VERT',	to turn back.
DI		DI VERT',	to turn aside, or away.
A		A VERT',	to turn from or away.
SUB		SUB VERT',	to turn under; to overthrow.
INTRO		IN TRO VERT',	to turn within. (way).
PER	VERSE, to turn; turned.	PER VERT',	to turn thoroughly (in the wrong
CON		CON VERT',	to turn altogether; to change.
RE		RE VERSE',	to turn back; to change entirely.
CON		CON VERSE',	to turn or exchange (words).
PER		PER VERSE',	turned thoroughly (wrong).
A		A VERSE',	turned from or away.

DERIVATIVES FORMED BY AFFIXES.

The parts of each derivative, before being united, are given separately. The pupil in reciting, should spell both the radical and the derivative. The changes in form, which many of the radicals undergo on being united with Affixes, will be more fully impressed upon his mind. In reciting the definitions, the learner may be questioned thus:—What part of the word BLACKEN means “to make”? Ans. EN. What does EN mean in the word SILKEN? Ans. “made of,” &c.

EXERCISE I.

RADICALS.	AFFIXES.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
BLACK	EN	BLACK' EN,	to make black.
DEAF		DEAF' EN,	to make deaf.
FAT		FAT' TEN,	to make fat.
RIPE		RIP' EN,	to make ripe.
HARD		HARD' EN,	to make hard.
WIDE	EN*	WID' EN,	to make wide.
SILK		SILK' EN,	made of silk.
HEMP		HEMP' EN,	made of hemp.
OAK		OAK' EN,	made of oak.
LEAD		LEAD' EN,	made of lead.
EARTH		EARTH' EN,	made of earth.
WOOD		WOOD' EN,	made of wood.

EXERCISE II.

WALK	ED	WALK' ED,	did walk.
TALK		TALK' ED,	did talk.
WISH		WISH' ED,	did wish.
MOVE		MOV' ED,	did move.
PROVE		PROV' ED,	did prove.
JUMP	ED*	JUMP' ED,	did jump.
FIGURE		FIG' UR ED,	adorned with figures.
HON'OUR		HON' OUR ED,	treated with honour.
HON'Y		HON' EY ED,	having honey.
SUG'AR,		SU' GAR ED,	covered with sugar.
HOE		HO' ED,	loosened with a hoe.
SAW		SAW' ED,	divided by a saw.

*On the use of ED and EN in the sense of “made of,” &c., See note p. 201.

EXERCISE III.

RADICALS.	AFFIXES.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
BLUNT	NESS.	BLUNT' NESS,	quality of being blunt.
BRISK		BRISK' NESS,	quality of being brisk.
GOOD		GOOD' NESS,	quality of being good.
GRAND		GRAND' NESS,	quality of being grand.
GREAT		GREAT' NESS,	quality of being great.
LOOSE	ITY.	LOOSE' NESS,	quality of being loose.
PUB' LIC		PUB' LIC' I TY,	quality of being public.
FALSE		FALS' I TY,	quality of being false.
BRU' TAL		BRU' TAL' I TY,	quality of being brutal.
PURE		PUR' I TY,	quality of being pure.
NO' BLE		NO' BL' I TY,	quality of being noble.
ABLE		A' BL' I TY,	quality of being able.

EXERCISE IV.

PORE	OUS.	PO' ROUS,	full of pores or small holes.
GLO' RY		GLO' RI OUS,	full of glory.
VIR' TUE		VIR' TU OUS,	having the nature of virtue.
FOG	Y.	FOG' GY,	full of fog.
SAND		SAND' Y,	full of sand.
MILK		MILK' Y,	having the nature of milk.
SCORN	FUL.	SCORN' FUL,	full of scorn.
SPOON		SPOON' FUL,*	what a spoon will hold.
HAND		HAND' FUL,*	what the hand will hold.
GLAD	LY.	GLAD' LY,	in a glad manner.
BRAVE		BRAVE' LY,	in a brave manner.
SHREWD		SHREWD' LY,	in a shrewd manner.

EXERCISE V.

GREEN	ISH.	GREEN' ISH,	somewhat green.
MULE		MUL' ISH,	somewhat like a mule.
SPAIN		SPAN' ISH,	belonging to Spain.
COIN	AGE.	COIN' AGE,	the act of coining.
PASS		PASS' AGE,	the act of passing.
DRAIN		DRAIN' AGE,	the act of draining.
LEAK	AGE.†	LEAK' AGE,	an allowance for leaking.
SHRINK		SHRINK' AGE,	an allowance for shrinking.
FERR' Y		FERR' RI AGE,	fee for crossing a ferry.
WHARF		WHARF' AGE,	fee for land at a wharf.
ANCH' OR		ANCH' OR AGE,	place for anchoring.
STEER		STEER' AGE,	the place of the steersman.
CORD		CORD' AGE,	a collection of cords.

* On the meaning of the Affix FUL, when used to form Nouns, See note, p. 202.

† On the use of the Affix AGE, See note p. 202.

EXERCISE VI.

RADICALS.	AFFIXES.	EXAMPLES.	DEFINITIONS.
LAT'IN	ISM.	LAT' IN ISM,	what is peculiar to Latin.
LU'THERAN		LU' THER AN ISM,	what is peculiar to Luther.
DES'POT		DES' POT ISM,	what is peculiar to a despot.
STO'IC		STO' I CISM,	doctrines of the Stoics.
CLERK	SHIP.	CLERK' SHIP,	office of a clerk.
FRIEND		FRIEND' SHIP,	the rank or office of a friend.
PART'NER		PART' NER SHIP,	rank or office of a partner.
CHILD	HOOD.	CHILD' HOOD,	state of being a child.
BOY		BOY' HOOD,	state of being a boy.
WID'OW		WID' OW HOOD,	state of being a widow.
KING	DOM.	KING' DOM,	jurisdiction of a king.
DUKE		DUKE' DOM,	jurisdiction of a duke.
FREE		FREE' DOM,	state of being free.

EXERCISE VII.

READ	ABLE.	READ' A BLE,	that may be read.
TRACE		TRACE' A BLE,	that may be traced.
CHANGE		CHANGE' A BLE,	that may be changed.
FOP		FOP' PER Y,	practice of a fop.
KNAVE	ERY.*	KNAV' ER Y,	practice of a knave.
FISH		FISH' ER Y,	place of fishing.
BAKE		BAK' ER Y,	place of baking.
EAST	WARD	EAST' WARD,	toward the east.
WEST		WEST' WARD,	toward the west.
NORTH		NORTH' WARD,	toward the north.
SOUTH		SOUTH' WARD,	toward the south.

RADICALS UNITED WITH AFFIXES.

The meaning of each radical is given separately, while that of the Affix is presented in the definition of the derivative. The pupil must review the Section, in which the Affixes are explained in detail.

EXERCISE I.

RADICALS.	AFFIXES.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
IGN, <i>fire.</i>	EOUS	IG' NE OUS,	having the nature of fire.
	ESCENT,	IG NES' CENT,	emitting sparks.
	ITE†	IG NITE'	to take fire.
	ITED	IG NIT' ED,	did take fire.
	ITING	IG NIT' ING,	continuing to take fire.
	ITION	IG NI' TION,	act of taking fire.
	ITIBLE	IG NIT' I BLE,	that may be ignited.
	IFY	IG' NI FY,	to form into fire.
	IFIED	IG' NI FI ED,	did form into fire.
	IFYING	IG' NI FY ING,	continuing to form into fire.

* On the signification of ERY, See note, page 203.

† The Affix ITE has the same meaning as ATE. See note, page 201.

EXERCISE II.

RADICALS. AFFIXES.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
VITR, <i>glass.</i>	EOUS	of the nature of glass.
	EOUSNESS	quality of being vitreous.
	IFY	to change into glass.
	IFIED	did vitrify.
	IFYING	continuing to vitrify.
	IFIABLE	that may be turned into glass.
	ESCENT	becoming glass.
	ESCENCE	state of becoming glass.
	ESCIBLE,	that may be turned into glass.
	VIT' RE OUS,	
	VIT' RE OUS NESS,	
	VIT' RI FY,	
	VIT' RI FI ED,	
	VIT' RI FY ING,	
	VIT' RI FI A BLE,	
	VI TRES' CENT,	
	VI TRES' CENCE,	
	VI TRES' CI BLE,	

EXERCISE III.

ACT, <i>to do.</i>	ED	ACT' ED,	did act.
	ING	ACT' ING,	continuing to act.
	IVE	ACT' IVE,	tending to act ; nimble.
	IVELY	ACT' IVE LY,	in a manner active.
	IVITY	AC TIV' I TY,	quality of being active.
	OR	ACT' OR,	one who acts.
	RESS	ACT' RESS,	female that acts.
	UATE	ACT' U ATE,	to make, or cause to act.
	UATED	ACT' U A TED,	did actuate.
	UATING	ACT' U A TING,	continuing to actuate.
	UAL	ACT' U AL,	relating to the act ; real.

EXERCISE IV.

ARBOR,* <i>a tree ; a shrub.</i>	AL	AR' BOR AL,	relating to trees.
	EOUS	AR BO' RE OUS,	having the nature of a tree.
	ESCENT,	AR BO RES' CENT,	branching out like a tree.
	ET	AR' BO RET,	a little tree, or shrub.
	ICAL	AR BOR' I CAL,	relating to trees. [study
	IST	AR' BOR IST,	one who makes trees his
	OUS	AR' BOR OUS,	having the nature of trees.
	IZE	AR' BOR IZE,	to take the shape of a tree.
	ARY	AR' BO RA RY,	pertaining to a tree.
	ED	AR' BOR ED,	furnished with an arbour.

EXERCISE V.

HERB, a <i>plant ; a vegetable.</i>	ACEOUS	HERB A' CEOUS,	of the nature of an herb.
	AL	HERB' AL,	pertaining to herbs.
	ALIST	HERB' AL IST,	one skilled in herbs.
	ARY	HERB' A RY,	a place where herbs grow.
	ESCENT	HERB ES' CENT,	growing into herbs.
	IST	HERB' IST,	one skilled in herbs.
	Y	HERB' Y,	having the nature of herbs.
	AGE	HERB' AGE,	herbs taken collectively.
	OUS	HERB' OUS,	full of herbs.
	LESS	HERB' LESS,	without herbs.

* ARBOR, as an independent word in English, signifies a place covered with branches of trees ; a bower.

EXERCISE VI.

RADICALS.	AFFIXES.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
DENT, † <i>a tooth; a mark.</i>	AL	DENT' AL	relating to the teeth.
	ATE	DENT' ATE,	made, or pointed like teeth.
	ATED*	DENT' A TED,	made, or pointed like teeth.
	ED	DENT' ED,	having dents or notches.
	ICLE	DENT' I CLE,	a small tooth.
	ICULATED	DEN TIC' U LATE,	having small teeth.
	ICULATELY†	DEN TIC' U LATE LY	in a denticulate manner.
	IST	DEN' TIST,	a doctor for the teeth.
	ISTRY	DENT' IS TRY,	the practice of a dentist.
	ITION	DENT I' TION,	the act of forming teeth.
	OID	DENT' OID,	having the form of a tooth.

DERIVATIVES MADE OPPOSITES BY PREFIXES.

In this Section each radical is combined with two prefixes of opposite meaning; by which means the derivatives also become opposites.

EXERCISE I.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
ANTE	DATE, <i>to note time.</i>	AN' TE DATE,	to date before.
POST		POST' DATE,	to date after.
AD	VERT, <i>to turn.</i>	AD VERT',	to turn to.
A		A VERT',	to turn from or away.
IN	GRESS, <i>a going.</i>	IN' GRESS,	a going in.
E		E' GRESS,	a going out.
IN	HALE, <i>to breathe.</i>	IN HALE',	to breathe in.
EX		EX HALE',	to breathe out.
ANTI	PATHY, <i>feeling.</i>	AN TIP' A THY,	a feeling against.
SYM		SYM' PA THY,	a feeling for, or with.

EXERCISE II.

BEN	FACTOR, <i>a doer.</i>	BEN E FAC' TOR,	a well-doer.
MALE		MAL E FAC' TOR,	an evil-doer
CON	SEMINATE, <i>to sow.</i>	CON SEM' I NATE,	to sow together.
DIS		DIS SEM' I NATE,	to sow apart.
E	MIGRATE, <i>to travel.</i>	EM' I GRATE,	to travel out.
IM		IM' MI GRATE,	to travel into.
E	JECT, <i>to cast.</i>	E JECT',	to cast out.
IN		IN JECT',	to cast in.
IN	CLUDE, <i>to shut.</i>	IN CLUDE',	to shut in.
EX		EX CLUDE',	to shut out

* ATED is a compound Affix, made up of ATE and ED. One of them is here merely euphonic; *dentated*, meaning the same as *dentate*.

† DENT, when used alone, means, "*to mark as with a tooth; to make a small hollow or notch.*"

‡ This Affix is made up of ICLE or ICULE, (*small*), ATE, (*to make*), and LY, (*in a manner*.) Thus, by adding ATE to ICULE we get ICULATE, (*to make, or made small*;) and again, by adding LY to ICULATE, we get ICULATELY, (*in a manner made small*.)

EXERCISE III.

PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	DERIVATIVES.	DEFINITIONS.
IM	PORT, <i>to carry.</i>	IM PORT,	to carry in.
EX		EX PORT,	to carry out.
IN		IN FUSE,	to pour in.
EF	FUSE, <i>to pour.</i>	EF FUSE,	to pour out.
PRO		PRO PEL,	to drive forward.
RE	PEL, <i>to drive.</i>	RE PEL,	to drive back.
EN		EN ROBE,	to put on a robe.
DIS	ROBE, <i>a gown.</i>	DIS ROBE,	to take off a robe.
INFRA	MUNDANE, <i>pertain- ing to the world.</i>	IN FRA MUN' DANE,	beneath the world.
SUPRA		SU PRA MUN' DANE,	above the world.

EXERCISE IV.

PRO	SPECT, <i>to look; a looking.</i>	PROS' PECT,	a looking head.
RETRO		RET' RO SPECT,	a looking back.
BENE	VOLENT, <i>wishing.</i>	BE NEV' O LENT,	well-wishing.
MALE		MA LEV' O LENT,	ill-wishing.
DYS	PEPSY, <i>digestion.</i>	DYS PEP' SY,	bad digestion.
EU		EU PEP' SY,	good digestion.
CON	FLUENT, <i>flowing.</i>	CON' FLU ENT,	flowing together.
DIF		DIF' FLU ENT,	flowing apart.
SUPER	FLUOUS, <i>flowing.</i>	SU PER' FLU OUS,	overflowing.
SUBTER		SUB TER' FLU OUS,	under-flowing.
ANTE	DILUVIAN, <i>relating to the flood.</i>	AN TE DI LU' VI AN,	before the flood.
POST		POST DI LU' VI AN,	after the flood.

COMPOUND WORDS.

In this Section the compound words are first separated into the simple words composing them: the meaning of each part respectively being placed under each in *italics*. The two parts are then put together again, and defined, as one word.

EXERCISE I.

1ST PART.	2ND PART.	COMPOUNDS.	DEFINITIONS.
DEM, <i>people.</i>	AGOGUE, <i>a leader.</i>	DEM' A GOGUE,	a factious leader of the people.
PED, <i>child.</i>		PED' A GOGUE,	leader of children; a schoolmaster.
NOCT, <i>night.</i>	AMBULIST, <i>a walker.</i>	NOC TAM' BU LIST,	one that walks by night; i.e. in sleep.
SOMN, <i>sleep.</i>		SOM NAM' BU LIST,	a sleep-walker.
PHIL, <i>love.</i>	ANTHROPY, <i>mankind.</i>	PHI LAN' THRO PY,	love of mankind.
MIS, <i>hatred.</i>		MIS AN' THRO PY,	hatred of mankind.
MON, <i>one.</i>	ARCHY, <i>govern- ment.</i>	MON' ARCHY,	government of one person.
HEPT, <i>seven.</i>		HEP' TARCH Y,	government by seven persons.
OLIG, <i>few.</i>		OL' I GARCH Y,	government of a few.

EXERCISE II.

1ST PART.	2ND PART.	COMPOUNDS.	DEFINITIONS.
AGRI, <i>field.</i>	CULTURE, <i>tillage.</i>	AG' RI CUL TURE,	tillage of fields ; farming.
HORTI, <i>garden.</i>		HOR' TI CUL TURE,	culture of a garden ; gar- dening.
MEGA, <i>big.</i>		MEG' A COSM,	a great world.
MICRO, <i>little.</i>	COSM, <i>world.</i>	MI' CRO COSM,	a little world.
MONO, <i>one.</i>	CHORD, <i>string.</i>	MON' O CHORD,	a musical instrument having one string.
POLY, <i>many.</i>		POL' Y CHORD,	having many chords, or strings.

EXERCISE III.

HOMI, <i>man.</i>	CIDE, a <i>killing.</i>	HOM' I CIDE,	the killing of a man.
PARRI, <i>parent.</i>		PAE' RI CIDE,	the killing of a parent.
INFANTI, <i>infant.</i>		IN FANT' I CIDE,	the killing of an infant.
MATRI, <i>mother.</i>		MAT' RI CIDE,	the killing of a mother.
FRATRI, <i>brother.</i>		FRAT' RI CIDE,	the killing of a brother.
REGI, <i>king.</i>		REG' I CIDE,	the killing of a king.
SUI, <i>self.</i>		SU' I CIDE,	the killing of one's self.

EXERCISE IV.

DEMO, <i>people.</i>	CRACY, <i>rule.</i>	DE MOO' RA CY,	rule of the people.
ARISTO, <i>noble.</i>		AR IS TOO' RA CY,	rule of the nobles.
ORTHO, <i>right.</i>	DOX, <i>doctrine.</i>	OR' THO DOX,	right in doctrine.
HETERO, <i>other.</i>		HET' E RO DOX,	other, or different in doc- trine.
HIPPO, <i>horse.</i>	DROME, <i>course.</i>	HIP' PO DROME,	horse-course ; race- course.
AQUE, <i>water.</i>	DUCT, tube, or channel.	AQ' UE DUCT,	artificial channel for water.
VENTI, <i>wind.</i>		VENT' I DUCT,	channel for wind or air.
CALI, <i>heat.</i>		CAL' I DUCT,	a duct or pipe to convey heat.

EXERCISE V.

1ST PART.	2ND PART.	COMPOUNDS.	DEFINITIONS.
TRI, <i>three</i>	ENNIAL, <i>year</i> <i>or yearly.</i>	TRI EN' NI AL,	{ pertaining to three years.
SEPT, <i>seven.</i>		SEP TEN' NI AL,	{ pertaining to seven years.
CENT, <i>hundred.</i>		CEN TEN' NI AL,	{ pertaining to a hundred years.
MILL, <i>thousand</i>		MIL LEN' NI AL,	{ pertaining to a thousand years.
FRUCTI, <i>fruit.</i>	FEROUS, <i>bear-</i> <i>ing.</i>	FRUC TIF' ER OUS,	{ bearing, or producing fruit.
FLORI, <i>flower.</i>		FLO RIF' ER OUS,	{ bearing, or producing flowers.
ODORI, <i>scent.</i>		O DO RIF' ER OUS,	{ bearing, or yielding odour.
AURI, <i>gold.</i>		AU RIF' ER OUS,	{ bearing, or yielding gold.
ARGENTI, <i>silver.</i>		AR GENT IF' ER OUS,	{ bearing, or yielding silver.

EXERCISE VI.

STUPE, <i>stupid.</i>	FACTION, <i>act of</i> <i>making.</i>	STU PE FAC' TION,	{ act of making stupid; stupidity.
PUTRE, <i>rotten.</i>		PU TRE FAC' TION,	{ act of making or becoming rotten.
DENTI, <i>tooth.</i>	FRICE, <i>rubbing.</i>	DENT' I FRICE,	{ preparation to rub or clean the teeth.
CUBI, <i>cube.</i>	FORM, <i>shape.</i>	CUB' I FORM,	{ having the form of a cube.
CRUCI, <i>cross.</i>		CRU' CI FORM,	{ having the form of a cross.
OVI, <i>egg.</i>		O' VI FORM,	{ having the form of an egg.

EXERCISE VII.

MELLI, <i>honey.</i>	FLUOUS, <i>flowing.</i>	MEL LIF' LU OUS,	{ flowing with honey; sweet.
FELLI, <i>gall.</i>		FEL LIF' LU OUS,	{ flowing with gall; bitter.
IGNI, <i>fire.</i>		IG NIF' LU OUS,	{ flowing with fire.
TRI, <i>three.</i>	GAMY, <i>mar-</i> <i>riage.</i>	TRIG' A MY,	{ the having of three wives at once.
POLY, <i>many.</i>		PO LYG' A MY,	{ plurality of wives or husbands.
FEBRI, <i>fever.</i>	FUGE, <i>chasing.</i>	FEB' RI FUGE,	{ chasing away, or subduing fever.
VERMI, <i>worms.</i>		VERM' I FUGE,	{ chasing away, or expelling worms.

EXERCISE VIII.

1ST PART.	2ND PART.	COMPOUNDS.	DEFINITIONS.
HEXA, <i>six.</i>	GON, <i>angle.</i>	HEX' A GON,	{ a figure having six angles and sides.
OCTA, <i>eight.</i>		OC' TA GON,	{ a figure having eight sides.
POLY, <i>many.</i>		POL' Y GON,	{ a figure having many angles.
POLY, <i>many.</i>	GLOT, <i>tongue</i>	POL' Y GLOT,	{ containing many tongues.
HOMO, <i>same.</i>		HO MO GE' NE OUS,	{ having the same nature.
HETERO, <i>other.</i>	GENEOUS, <i>having the nature.</i>	HET E RO GE' NE OUS,	{ having a different nature.

EXERCISE IX.

BELL, <i>war.</i>	GEROUS, <i>carrying.</i>	BEL LIG' ER OUS,	carrying on war.
CRINI, <i>hair.</i>		CRI NIG' ER OUS,	{ carrying, or having hair.
LANI, <i>wool.</i>		LA' NIG ER OUS,	{ carrying, or having wool.
AUTO, <i>self.</i>	GRAPH, <i>writing or marking.</i>	AU' TO GRAPH,	{ the hand-writing of one's self.
TELE, <i>far off.</i>		TEL' E GRAPH,	{ a contrivance to convey news far off.
MAGNI, <i>large.</i>	LOQUENCE, <i>talk.</i>	MAG NIL' O QUENCE,	{ big talk; pompous language.
GRANDI, <i>grand.</i>		GRAND IL' O QUENCE,	{ great talk; lofty speaking.

EXERCISE X.

CHIRO, <i>hand.</i>	GRAPHY, <i>a writing; marking; description.</i>	CHI ROG' RA PHY,	hand-writing.
BIO, <i>life.</i>		BI OG' RA PHY,	{ a writing, or history of one's self.
STENO, <i>short.</i>		STE NOG' RA PHY,	{ short-hand writing.
TYPO, <i>type.</i>		TY POG' RA PHY,	{ a marking with types; printing.
TOPO, <i>place.</i>		TO POG' RA PHY,	{ a description of places.
GEO, <i>earth.</i>		GE OG' RA PHY,	{ a description of the earth.
LITHO, <i>stone.</i>		LI THOG' RA PHY,	{ art of marking or engraving on stone.
ORTHO, <i>right.</i>		OR THOG' RA PHY,	{ correct writing and spelling.

EXERCISE XIV.

1ST PART.	2ND PART.	COMPOUNDS.	DEFINITIONS.
COSMO, <i>world.</i>	POLITE, <i>citizen.</i> NAUT, <i>one</i> <i>who sails.</i> NESIA, <i>islands.</i>	COS MOP' O LITE,	a citizen of the world.
AERO, <i>air.</i>		A' ER O NAUT,	one who sails in or navigates the air.
POLY, <i>many.</i>		POL Y NE' SIA,*	consisting of many islands.
TRI, <i>three.</i>	NOMIAL, <i>a name; a term.</i>	TRI NO' MI AL,	consisting of two terms or members.
QUADRI, <i>four.</i>		QUAD RI NO' MI AL,	consisting of four terms or members.
POLY, <i>many.</i>		POL Y NO' MI AL,	consisting of many terms or members.

EXERCISE XV.

ASTRO, <i>star.</i>	NOMY, <i>law.</i>	AS TRON' O MY,	law, or science of the stars.
ECO, <i>house.</i>		E CON' O MY,	law, or rule of a house; thriftiness.
DEUTERO, <i>second.</i>		DEUT ER ON' O MY,	second law, or fifth book of Moses.
MONO, <i>one.</i>	ODY, <i>a</i> <i>song, or a</i> <i>singing.</i>	MON' O DY,	a poem or song sung by one only.
PSALM,		PSALM' O DY,	singing, or the art of singing psalms.
PAN, <i>all.</i>	ORAMA, <i>view.</i>	PAN O RA' MA,	a complete view; view of all.
COSMO, <i>world.</i>		COS MO RA' MA,	views of the world.

EXERCISE XVI.

MONO, <i>one.</i>	PHTHONG, <i>sound.</i>	MON' O THONG,	a letter having one sound.
TRI, <i>three.</i>		TRIPH' THONG,	union of three vowels in one syllable.
DU, <i>two.</i>	PLICATE, <i>fold.</i>	DU' PLI CATE,	two-fold; double.
TRI, <i>three.</i>		TRIP' LI CATE,	three-fold; triple.
PLENI, <i>full.</i>	POTENT, <i>having</i> <i>power.</i>	PLE NIP' O TENT,	having full power.
OMNI, <i>all.</i>		OM NIP' O TENT,	having all power.
BLAS, <i>impious.</i>	PERMY, <i>a speaking.</i>	BLAS' PER MY,	impious language against the Deity.

* This is a term in geography, used to designate numerous groups of islands in the Pacific ocean.

EXERCISE XVII.

1ST PART.	2ND PART.	COMPOUNDS.	DEFINITIONS.
OVI, egg.	PAROUS, producing.	O VIP' A ROUS,	producing eggs.
VERMI, worm.		VER, MIP' A ROUS,	producing worms.
CYCLO, circle.	PEDIA, know- ledge; science	CY CLO PÆ' DI A,	{ circle of the arts and sciences.
QUADRU, four.		QUAD' BU PED,	{ a four-footed animal.
MULTI, many.	PED, a foot.	MUL' TI PED,	many-footed.
HYDRO, water.	PHOBIA, dread.	HY DRO PHO' BI A,	{ dread of water; ca- nine madness.
HIPPO, horse.	POTAMUS. river.	HIP PO POT' A MUS,	{ a river-horse.

EXERCISE XVIII.

TELE, far off.	SCOPE, a view or sight.	TEL' E SCOPE,	{ instrument to view things far off.
MICRO, small.		MI' CRO SCOPE,	{ instrument to view things minute.
SOL, sun.	STICE, a standing.	SOL' STICE,	{ apparent standing still of the sun.
ARMY, arms.		ARM' IS TICE,	{ a standing still of arms; truce.
PHILO, love.	SOPHY, wisdom.	PHI LOS' O PHY,	{ love of wisdom; knowledge.
MONO, one.	THEISM, be- lief in a God.	MON' O THEISM,	{ belief in one God only.
POLY, many.		POL' Y THE ISM,	{ belief in many Gods.

EXERCISE XIX.

PENTA, five.	TEUCH, book.	PEN' TA TEUCH,	{ the five books of Moses.
PYRO, fire.		PY RO TECH' NIC,	{ relating to the art of making fire-works.
POLY, many.	TECHNIC, re- lating to art.	POL Y TECH' NIC,	{ relating to many arts.
PROTO, first.		PRO' TO TYPE,	{ first-type; original pattern or model.
STEREO, solid.	TYPE, mark; emblem.	STE' RE O TYPE,	{ solid type; plate of metallic type.
CARN, flesh.		CAR NIV' O ROUS,	{ flesh-eating, or de- vouring.
GRANI, grain.	VOROUS, eat- ing or de- vouring.	GRA NIV' O ROUS,	{ grain-eating; or de- vouring.
HERBI, herb.		HERB IV' O ROUS,	{ herb-eating, or de- vouring.

ANGLO-SAXON ROOTS, &c.

The principal Words only are given. The meanings of some words, being so familiar, are not given.

Tell the Root, the meaning, the Prefixes and Affixes :—*

EXERCISE 1.—**ABAFT**, ad. *bæftan*, behind, towards the stern of a ship.—**ABATE**, v. *beatian*, to lessen, lower in price.—**ABET**, v. *betan*, to aid.—**ABIDE**, v. *abidan*, to dwell, stay in a place.—**ABLE**, ad. *abal*, strong, competent.—**ABOUT**, prep. *abutan*, round, near to, concerning.—**ABOVE**, prep. *alufan*, higher in place, more, overhead.—**ABROAD**, ad. *brad*, from home, &c.—**ACCURSE**, v. *cursian*, to curse, or imprecate evil.—**ACORN**, n. *ac corn*, the seed of an oak-tree.—**ACRE**, n. *æcer*, 4840 square yds. of land.—**AFFRIGHT**, v. *frihtan*, to alarm.—**AFORE**, prep. *foran*, in time past, sooner.—**AFT**, ad. *æft*, behind, astern. Hence, **AFTER**, prep. following, behind.—**AGAIN**, ad. *agen*, once more, &c.—**AGE**, n. *agan*, any period of time, a generation, latter part of life.—**AIL**, v. *eglan*, to trouble.—**ALDERMAN**, n. *eald man*, a city magistrate.—**ALE**, n. *eale*.—**ALL**, a. *eall*, the whole, every one.—**ALLAY**, v. *a, lecgan*, to quiet, to pacify.

EXAMPLE.

ABAFT; root, *bæftan*; meaning, behind, &c.—**ABATE**; root, *beatian*; meaning, to lessen, &c.; derivatives, abatement, abater.—**ABIDE**; root, *abidan*; meaning, to stay in a place; derivatives, abidance, abider, abiding, abode.—**ABLE**, root, *abal*; meaning, strong, competent, &c.; derivatives, ability, ableness, ably, able-bodied.—**AFT**; root, *æft*; meaning, behind; derivatives, after, afteract, afterbirth, afterclap, aftercost, aftercourse, aftercrop, aftergame, afterlife, aftermost, afternoon, afterpains, afterpart, afterpiece, afterproof, afterstate, afterthought, aftertime, afterward, afterwit.

Exercises of this kind cannot fail to produce a good knowledge of the English Language, and qualify both for speaking and writing it.—Consult Webster's and Reid's excellent Dictionaries of the English Language.

EXERCISE 2.—**ALLOT**, v. *hlot*, to share out.—**ALLOW**, v. *lyfan*, to permit, grant.—**ALMS**, n. *almes*, gifts to the poor.—**ALOFT**, ad. *lyft*, on high.—**ALONE**, a. *all, one*.—**ALONG**, ad. *and, lang*, at length, forward.—**ALOOF**, ad. *all, off*, at a distance.—**ALSO**, ad. *eall, swa*, likewise, in the same manner.—**AMONG**, **AMONGST**, prep. *gemong, from mangan* to mix.—**AND**, conj. from *ananad*, to add, as, two and (*add*), four are six.—**ANGLE**, v. *angel*, to fish with a rod.—**ANON**, ad. *on, an*, quickly, soon.—**ANSWER**, v. *answarian*, to reply, equivalent to.—**ANT**, n. *æmet*, an emmet, a pismire.—**ANY**, a. *ænig*, whoever.—**APPLE**, n. *æpl*.—**ARISE**, v. *arisen*, to get up, mount up.—**ARM**, n. *earn*, a limb of the body.—**ARRAIGN**, v.

* *The Pupil should also tell the Derivatives, and when the word is a Prefix or Affix, he should be taught to apply it to suitable words, as in the foregoing Exercises.*

soregan, to indict.—*ARRAY*, *v. wrigan*, to deck, &c.—*AS*, conj. *as*, like, even.—*ASK*, *v. acsian*, to beg, &c.—*AT*, prep. *æt*, by, near.—*ATTIRE*, *v. tier*, to dress.—*AUBURN*, *a. brun*, brown.—*AWAKE*, *v. awacian*, to rouse from sleep.—*AWARD*, *v. weard*, to adjudge.—*AWAY*, ad. *a, weg*, at a distance.—*AWE*, *n. ege*, reverential fear, dread.—*AWKWARD*, *a. æward*, clumsy, unhandy.—*AWRY*, ad. *worithan*, askint, unevenly.—*AY*, ad. *ia*, yes.—*AYE*, ad. *aa*, always, for ever.

EXERCISE 3.—*BACK*, *n. bæc*, hinder part of the body, behind.—*BADGE*, *n. beag*, a mark of distinction.—*BAG*, *n. bælg*, a pouch, sack, purse.—*BAIT*, *v. batan*, to lure, &c.—*BAKE*, *v. bacan*, to prepare food by fire.—*BALCONY*, *n. balc*, a gallery before a window.—*BAN*, *n. bannan*, a public notice.—*BAND*, *n. banda*, that which ties, &c.—*v. to unite*.—*BANE*, *n. bana*, poison, mischief.—*BANK*, *n. bana*.—*BARE*, *a. bar*, naked.—*BARK*, *v. beorcan*, to make noise like a dog.—*BARLEY*, *n. bere*, grain.—*BARREN*, *a. bar*, unfruitful.—*BARROW*, *n. berewe*, a hand carriage.—*BARROW*, *n. bearo*, a mound.—*BATE*, *v. beatan*, to lower in price, &c.—*BATH*, *n. bæth*, an article, or place to bathe in.—*RAY*, *n. bugan*, an arm of the sea.—*BE*, *v. beon*, to exist.—*BEACON*, *n. beacen*, a signal.—*BEADLE*, *n. bydel*, a parish officer.—*BEAM*, *n. timber* supporting a building—a ray of light.—*BEAR*, *v. beran*, to carry, &c.—*BEAT*, *v. beatan*, to strike, &c.—*BECOME*, *v. becuman*, to enter upon a state, to fit, &c.—*BED*, *n. something* to sleep on.—*BEE*, *n. beo*, an insect.—*BEECH*, *n. bece*, a forest-tree.—*BEER*, *n. beor*, malt liquor.—*BEFORE*, prep. *be, foran*, farther onward, in front of, &c.

EXERCISE 4.—*BEGET*, *v. be, getan*, to produce.—*BEGIN*, *v. beginnan*, to do the first act.—*BEHALF*, *n. behese*, favour, cause.—*BEHAVE*, *v. be, habban*, to demean, to conduct.—*BEHIND*, prep. *be, hindan*, at the back of.—*BEHOLD*, *v. be, healdan*, to view.—*BELIEVE*, *v. gelyfan*, to trust, to credit.—*BELL*, *n.*—*BELLOWS*, *n. bælg*.—*BELLY*, *n. bælg*.—*BERMOAN*, *v. be, mænan*, to lament.—*BEND*, *bendan*, to make crooked.—*BEQUEATH*, *v. becwæthan*, to leave property by will.—*BEREAVE*, *v. bereafian*, to deprive of.—*BESEECH*, *v. be, secan*, to entreat.—*BESET*, *v. be, setian*, to surround.—*BET*, *n. bad*, a wager.—*BETAKE*, *v. be, tacan*, to have recourse to.—*BETTER*, *v. betrian*, to improve.—*BETWEEN*, prep. *be, twegen*, in the middle.—*BEWARE*, *v. bewarian*, to be cautious.—*BEYOND*, prep. *be, geond*, out of reach.—*BID*, *v. biddan*, to command, to invite.—*BIER*, *n. bæ*, carriage for carrying the dead.—*BIG*, *a. byggan*, great, &c.—*BIGOT*, *n. bigan*, a devotee to a doctrine, &c.—*BILL*, *n. bile*, beak of a fowl.—*BILL*, *n. bil*, a hooked hatchet.—*BIND*, *v. bindan*, to tie, &c.

EXERCISE 5.—*BIRD*, *n.*—*BIRTH*, *n. beorth*, coming into life.—*BITE*, *v. bitan*, to seize by the teeth.—*BLACK*, *a. blac*, colour of night, dark, dismal, wicked.—*BLAZE*, *n. blase*.—*a flame*.—*BLEAK*, *a. blac*, cold, dreary.—*BLEED*, *v. bledan*, to lose blood.—*BLESS*, *v. bletsian*, to make happy.—*BLISS*, *n. happiness*.—*BLOOD*, *n. blod*.—*BLOSSOM*, *n. blosma*, flower of a plant.—*BLOW*, *v. blow*.

an, to flower.—**BLOW**, *v. blawan*, to make a current of air.—**BLUSTER**, *v. blæst*, to roar like a storm.—**BLUE**, *n. bleo*, one of the seven prismatic colours.—**BOAT**, *n. bat*.—**BODE**, *v. bodian*, to foreshow.—**BODY**, *n. bodig*.—**BOLD**, *a. bald*, daring.—**BOND**, *n.* that which binds.—**BONE**, *n. ban*.—**BOOK**, *n. boc*.—**BOROUGH**, *n. burh*, a corporate town.—**BORROW**, *v. borgian*, to ask a loan.—**BOTH**, *a. ba, twa*, the two.—**BOTTOM**, *n. botm*.—**BOUND**, *n. bunde*, a limit.—**BOW**, *v. bugan*, to bend.—**BOW**, *n. boga*, an instrument to shoot arrows.—**BRAIN**, *n. brægen*.—**BRASS**, *n. bræs*.—**BREAD**, *n.*—**BREAK**, *v. brecan*, to part by violence, &c.

EXERCISE 6.—**BREAST**, *n. breost*.—**BREATH**, *n. bræth*, air drawn in and expelled by the lungs.—**BREACH**, *n. brecan*, lower part of the body.—**BREED**, *v. bredan*, to procreate, &c.—**BREW**, *v. brewian*, to make malt liquor.—**BRIDE**, *n. bryd*.—**BRIDGE**, *n. brycg*.—**BRIGHT**, *a. beorht*, shining.—**BRIM**, *n. brymme*, the edge.—**BRINDLED**, *a. byrned*, streaked.—**BRINE**, *n. bryne*, salt-water.—**BRING**, *v. bringan*, to convey, &c.—**BROAD**, *a. brad*, wide, open, coarse.—**BROKE**, *v. brucan*, to do business for others.—**BROTHER**, *n.* a male born of the same parents.—**BROW**, *n. brow*, the ridge over the eye, edge of any high place.—**BRUISE**, *v. brysan*, to crush.—**BRUNT**, *n. byrnan*, the violence of an onset.—**BUILD**, *v. byldan*, to erect.—**BULGE**, *n. bæge*, a protrusion.—**BUNDLE**, *n. byndel*.—**BURGH**, *n. burh*, a corporate town.—**BURN**, *v. byrnan*, to consume with fire.—**BURY**, *v. byrgan*, to put under earth, &c.—**BUSY**, *a. biæg*, active, alive, &c.—**BUT**, *conj. butan*, except, besides.—**BUXOM**, *a. bocsum*, lively, brisk.—**BUY**, *v. bycgan*, to purchase.—**BY**, *prep. beon*, at, near, &c. See Prefixes.

EXERCISE 7.—**CALF**, *n. cealf*.—**CAN**, *v. cunnan*, to be able...*canna*, *n.* a vessel.—**CAP**, *n. cæppe*, a covering for the head.—**CARE**, *n. car*, anxiety, caution.—**CARVE**, *v. ceorfan*, to shape, to cut meat.—**CASTLE**, *n. castel*, a fortified building.—**CAT**, *n.*—**CHAFF**, *n. ceasfor*, husks of grain.—**CHALK**, *n. cealc*, white calcareous earth.—**CHAR**, *n. cer*, work done by the day.—**CHARLES'S-WAIN**, *n. carles wæn*, the constellation, Great Bear.—**CHARY**, *a. cearig*, careful, cautious.—**CHRAP**, *a. ceap*, of small value.—**CHEAT**, *v. ceat*, to defraud.—**CHEEK**, *n. ceac*.—**CHEESE**, *n. cyse*.—**CHEST**, *n. cyst*, a box, the thorax.—**CHEW**, *v. ceowan*, to grind with the teeth.—**CHICK**, **CHICKEN**, *n. cicen*.—**CHIDE**, *v. cidan*, to reprove.—**CHILD**, *n. cild*.—**CHILL**, *a. cele*, cold, dull.—**CHIN**, *n. cyn*.—**CHIT**, *n. cith*, a sprout, a child.—**CHOKE**, *v. aceocan*, to suffocate, stop up.—**CHOOSE**, *v. eosan*, to select.—**CHUFF**, *n. cyf*, a clownish person.—**CHURL**, *n. ceorl*, a surly man, a miser.

EXERCISE 8.—**CHURN**, *n. ciern*.—**CLAP**, *v. clappan*.—**CLAY**, *n. clæg*.—**CLEAN**, *a. clen*, free from dirt.—**CLEAVE**, *v. clifan*, to adhere, &c.—**CLEAVE**, *v. cleafan*, to split.—**CLEVER**, *a. gleaw*, skilful, dexterous.—**CLIMB**, *v. climan*, to ascend with labour.—**CLING**, *v. clingan*, to hang upon.—**CLIP**, *v. clyppan*, to cut with shears.—**CLOAK**, *n. lach*.—**CLOCK**, *n. clucga*.—**CLOCK**, *v. cloccan*, to make a noise like a hen.—**CLOD**, *n. clud*, a lump of earth.—**CLOTH**, *n. clath*.—**CLOUD**, *n. gehlod*.—**COAL**, *n. col*.—**COOK**, *n. cocc*, the

male of birds.—COLD, a. *ceald*, not hot.—COLT, n. a young horse.—COMB, n. *camb*.—COME, v. *cuman*, to draw near.—COMELY, a. *cueman*, graceful.—CON, v. *cunntan*, to commit to memory.—CORN, n. seeds which grow in ears.—COT, n. *cota*, a small house.—COW, n. *cu*.—CRAFT, n. *craft*, manual art.—CRAM, v. *crammian*, to stuff.—CRAVE, v. *craftan*, to ask earnestly.—CREEP, v. *creopan*.—CRIB, n. *cryb*, a manger, child's bed, cottage.... v. to shut up.—CROP, n. a bird's stomach.... n. the harvest.... v. to cut off.—CROUP, n. *hrcopan*, a throat disease.—CROW, n. *craw*, a bird.... v. to cry as a cock.—CRUTCH, n. *crice*, a support, &c.—CUNNING, a. skilful, &c.—CUP, n. CUPP.—CURSE, v. *curstan*, to wish evil to.

EXERCISE 9.—DAISY, n. *deg*, *eage*.—DARE, v. *dear*, to challenge.—DARK, a. *deorc*.—DARLING, n. and a. *dyre*, beloved, a beloved one.—DASTARD, n. *adastrigan*, a coward.—DAUGHTER, n. *dohlor*.—DAWN, n. *dagian*, break of day.—DAY, n. *deg*.—DAZE, v. *dwæz*, to overpower with light; hence dazzle.—DEAD, n.—DEAF, a.—DEAL, n. *dæl*, a part, quantity, &c.... v. to distribute, to traffic.—DEAR, a. *dyre*, beloved, precious.—DEATH, n.—DEED, n. *dæd*, an action, writing.—DEEM, v. *deman*, to judge, to determine.—DEEP, a. *deop*.—DEFILE, v. *afyllan*, to make foul.—DEVIL, n. *deofol*, the Evil One.—DEW, n. *deaw*.—DIG, v. *dip*.—DIGHT, v. *dihhtan*, to dress, to deck.—DIM, a. obscure.—DIMPLE, n. *dynt*.—DIN, n. *dyne*, a noise.... v. to stun with noise.—DINE, v. *dynan*.—DISH, n. *disc*, a vessel to serve meat in.—DISTAFF, n. *distaf*, a staff used for spinning.—DIVE, v. *duftan*, to sink under water, to penetrate.—DIZZY, a. *dysi*, giddy.

EXERCISE 10.—DO, v. *don*, to practise, &c.—DOFF, v. *do*, off, to put off.—DOLE, v. *dælan*, to deal, to distribute.... n. a share, charity.—DOLT, n. *dol*, a stupid fellow.—DOOM, v. *dom*, to judge.... n. judicial sentence.—DOOR, n. *duru*.—DOVE, n. a pigeon.—DOWS, prep. *adun*, along a descent, from a higher to a lower place.—DRAG, v. *dragan*, to draw along by force.—DRAIN, v. *drehnigean*, to draw off gradually.—DRAW, v. *dragan*, to pull along, or out.—DRAY, n. *dragan*, a low cart.—DREAD, n. *dread*, great fear.—DREAR, a. *dreorig*, dismal, gloomy.—DRIB, v. *driopan*, to crop, to cut off.—DRINK, v. *drinc*, to swallow liquors.—DRIVE, v. *drifan*, to force along.—DROP, n. *dropa*, a globule of liquid.—DROUGHT, n. *drugothe*, dry weather, thirst.—BROWN, v. *drencan*, to suffocate in water.—DRUDGE, v. *drerogan*, to work hard—in mean offices.—DRY, a. *drig*, not wet, not juicy, thirsty, barren.—DULL, a. *dol*, stupid, sluggish.—DUMB, a. *dum*, unable to speak.—DUN, v. *dynan*, to demand a debt.—DUST, n. earth, &c., reduced to powder, earth, the grave.—DWARF, n. *dwæorg*, an undersized person.—DWINDLE, v. *dwinnan*, to shrink, grow less.—DYE, v. *deagan* to tinge, colour, stain.

EXERCISE 11.—EACH, a. *æle*, either of the two.—EAR, n. *eara*.—EARL, n. *eorl*, a noble title.—EARLY, a. *ær*, soon, &c.—EARN, v. *earnian*, to obtain by labour.—EARNEST, a. *earnest*, zealous, ardent.—EARTH, n. *eorthe*, soil, the ground.—EAST, n. the quarter where the sun rises.—EAT, v. *etan*.—EDGE, n. *ecg*, sharp side of a blade, a

border.—EGG, n. *æg*.—EIGHT, a. *æhta*, twice four.—EITHER, a. *ægther*, one or the other.—EKE, v. *ecan*, to increase, in addition.—ELBOW, n. *elboga*.—ELD, n. old age.—ELEVEN, a. *endlufon*, ten and one.—ELF, n. a fairy.—ELOPE, v. *hleapan*, to depart clandestinely.—EMBASSY, n. *ambeht*, an ambassador's message.—EMPTY, a. *æmti*, void, vacant.—END, n. *ende*, extreme point, design, close, limit.—ENOUGH, n. a. and ad. *genog*, a sufficiency, sufficient, sufficiently.—ENTANGLE, v. *en*, *tang*, to involve, twist, confuse.—ERE, ad. *ær*, before.—ERRAND, n. *ærend*, a message.—EVE, EVEN, n. *æfen*, close of the day.—EVER, ad. *æfer*, always, eternally.—EVIL, n. *yfel*, wickedness, calamity.—EYE, n. *eage*, organ of sight.—FAIN, a. *fægen*, glad.—FAIR, a. *fæger*, clear, white, &c.—FALL, v. *feallan*, to drop down.—FAR, a. *feor*, distant.—FARM, n. *feorm*.—FAST, a. *fæst*, firm, strong.—FAT, a. *fætt*, fleshy.—FATHER, n. *fæder*.—FEAR, n. *fer*, terror, awe.—FEATHER, n. *fyther*.—FEE, n. *feoh*, reward, payment.—FEED, v. *fedan*.—FEEL, v. *felan*, to perceive by the touch.—FERRY, v. *faran*, to convey over water in a boat.—FETCH, v. *feccan*, to go and bring. . . . n. a trick.—FETTER, n. *fætor*, a chain for the feet.—FEW, a. *fewa*, not many.—FIDDLE, n. *fiðele*.—FIELD, n. *feld*.—FIEND, n. *fond*, an infernal being.—FILL, v. *fyllan*, to make full, to satisfy.

EXERCISE 12.—FIND, v. *findan*, to discover.—FINGER, n.—FIRE, n. *fyf*.—FISH, n. *fisc*.—FLAG, v. *fleogan*, to droop, decline.—FLAX, n. *fleax*, a fibrous plant.—FLEE, v. *fleon*.—FLEECE, n. *flys*, clip of wool from a sheep.—FLESH, n. *flesc*.—FLINCH, v. *fleon*, to draw back, shrink.—FLOAT, v. *fleotan*, to swim, &c.—FLOCK, n. *floce*, a collection of birds, &c.—FLOUT, v. *flitan*, to mock.—FLOW, v. *flowan*, to run as water.—FOE, n. *fah*, an enemy.—FOLD, v. *fealdan*, to double over, enclose.—FOLLOW, v. *folgian*.—FOOD, n. *foda*, meat.—FOOT, n. *fof*.—FOR, prep. because of, &c.—FORBEAR, v. *for*, *beran*, to cease, stop, abstain.—FORE, a. coming or going first.—FOREBODE, v. *fore*, *bodian*.—FOREKNOW, v. *fore*, *cñawan*, to know before.—FORGET, v. *for*, *getan*, to lose memory of, to neglect.—FORMER, a. *form*, first of two, preceding.—FORSAKE, v. *for*, *secan*, to leave, desert.—FORTH, ad. forward, &c.—FOUL, a. *ful*, dirty.—FOX, n.—FRAME, v. *fremman*, to mould, to make, fit, &c.—FREE, a. *freo*, having liberty.—FREEZE, v. *frysan*.—FRET, v. *fretan*, to corrode, rub, vex, agitate, &c.—FRIEND, n. *freond*.—FROLIC, n. *freolic*, a prank.—FULFIL, v. *full*, *fyllan*, to accomplish.—FULL, a. replete, supplied.—FUN, n. *fægen*, sport.—FURROW, n. *fur*, a channel made by a plough.—GAB, v. *gabban*, to prate.—GAD, v. *gan*, to ramble about.—GAG, v. *cæg*, to stop the mouth.—GALL, n. *gealla*, the bile, any thing very bitter.—GALLOWS, n. *galga*, a beam for hanging.—GAME, n. *gamen*, sport.—GAPE, v. *geapan*, to open the mouth wide.—GARISH, a. *gearwtan*, gaudy, showy.—GAS, n. *gast*, an æriform fluid.

EXERCISE 13.—GATE, n. *geat*.—GATHER, v. *gaderian*, to collect.—GAZE, v. *gessan*, to look earnestly.—GEAR, n. *gearwtan*, furniture, harness, tackle, ornaments, &c.—GET, v. *getan*.—GEW-GAW, n. *gegaf*, a showy trifle, toy.—GHASTLY, a. *gast*, like a ghost.

—GHOST, *n. gast*.—GIBBER, *v. gabban*, to speak rapid, inarticulately.—GIBE, *v. gabban*, to sneer, scoff, taunt.—GIDDY, *a. gidig*, reeling, whirling.—GIRD, *v. gyrðan*, to bind, tie round.—GIVE, *v. gífan*, to bestow.—GLAD, *a. glæd*, pleased, joyous.—GLASS, *n. glæs*.—GLEAM, *n. a shoot of light*.—GLEE, *n. gleo*, joy, merriment.—GLEN, *n. a valley, dale*.—GLIDE, *v. glidan*, to flow or move gently.—GLITTER, *v. glitnan*, to shine, sparkle.—GLOOM, *n. glomung*, darkness, depression.—GLOSS, *n. glesan*, specious appearance, comment.—GLOVE, *n. glaf*.—GO, *v. gan*.—GOD, *n. the Supreme Being, an idol*.—GOLD, *n.*—GOOD, *a. god*.—GOSPEL, *n. god, spel*, God's charm, good news of salvation by Jesus Christ.—GRAIN, *n. grentan*, direction of fibres, temper.—GRASS, *n. gæs*.—GRAVE, *n. græf*...*v. to dig, &c.*—GRAZE, *v. grasian*, to eat grass.—GREAT, *a. large, vast, eminent*.—GREEDY, *a. grædig*, voracious.—GRIM, *a. frightful, hideous*.—GRIND, *v. grindan*, to reduce to powder, to sharpen.—GRIP, *v. gripa*, to seize, hold fast.—GRIST, *n. corn for grinding*.—GROAN, *v. granian*, to mourn with a deep sound.—GROUND, *n. grund*.—GROW, *v. growan*, to vegetate, to increase.—GUEST, *n. gest*, a stranger or friend entertained.—GUILD, *n. gild*, a corporation.—GUILTY, *n. wígtian*, craft, cunning, deceit.—GUILT, *n. gylt*, criminality, sin.

EXERCISE 14.—HAG, *n. hæges*, a witch, ugly old woman.—HAIL, *n. hæg*, frozen rain, drops.—HAIR, *hær*.—HALE, *a. hæl*, healthy, hearty.—HALLOW, *v. halty*, to make holy.—HALT, *v. healt*, to limp, stop, &c.—HALTER, *n. hælfter*, a rope for hanging, for leading a horse.—HAMLET, *n. ham*, a small village.—HAND, *n.*—HANDSEL, *n. hand, syllan*, first use of a thing.—HANG, *v. hangian*, to suspend, &c.—HARBINGER, *n. here, beorgan*, a forerunner.—HARD, *a. heard*, firm, severe, difficult, &c.—HARM, *n. harm*, injury.—HARP, *n. hearpa*.—HARVEST, *n. hærefest*, season of reaping.—HATE, *v. hatian*, to dislike, abhor.—HAUBERK, *n. hals, beorgan*, a coat of mail.—HAVE, *v. habban*, to possess.—HAY, *n. heg*.—HEAD, *n. heafod*.—HEAL, *v. hœlan*, to cure.—HEAP, *n. a pile*.—HEAR, *v. hyran*.—HEART, *n. heorte*.—HEARTH, *n. heorð*.—HEAVE, *v. hebban*, to lift, swell, pant.—HEAVEN, *n. heofan*, expanse of the sky, &c.—HEAVY, *a. hefig*, weighty, dejected.—HEDGE, *n. hege*, a fence.—HEED, *v. hedan*, to mind.—HEIGHT, *n. heah*, altitude, elevation.—HELL, *n.*, future abode of the wicked.—HELP, *v. helpan*, to aid, support.—HIDE, *v. hydan*, to conceal.—HIE, *htgan*, to hasten.—HIGH, *a. heah*, elevated, &c.—HINDER, *v. hindrian*, to stop, prevent.—HITHER, *ad. hider*, to this place.—HOLD, *v. healdan*, to grasp, keep, retain.—HOME, *n. ham*.—HONEY, *n. hunig*.—HOPE, *n. hōpa*, desire, expectation.—HORN, *n.*—HORSE, *n. hors*.—HOSE, *n. hos*, stockings.—HOT, *a. hat*, having heat.—HOUSE, *n. hus*.—HOW, *ad. hu*, in what manner. why.—HUNGER, *n.*, desire of food.—HUNT, *v. huntian*, to chase, pursue.—HURT, *v. hyrt*, to harm.

EXERCISE 15.—I, *pr. ic*, oneself.—ICE, *n. is*, congealed water.—IDLE, *a. idel*, lazy.—IF, *conj. gif*, supposing that.—ILL, *a. yfel*, bad, sick.—IMPOUND, *v. in, pyndan*, to inclose, confine.—INCOME,

n. in, cuman, revenue.—INDEED, *ad. in, dæd*, in truth.—INLAND, *a. in, land*, interior, remote from the sea.—INLAY, *v. in, lecgan*, to diversify with other material.—INSIDE, *n. in, side*, inner part.—INSIGHT, *n. in, gesint*, clear view of the interior.—INSTALL, *v. in, steal*, to invest with office.—INSTEAD, *ad. in, stede*, in place of.—INSTEP, *n. in, stæp*, the upper part of the foot.—INTRAL, *v. in, thrael*, to enslave.—INTRUST, *v. in, trynosian*, to commit to the care of.—INWARD, *ad. in, weard*, within.—IRK, *v. weorc*, to weary.—ITCH, *n. gictha*, a cutaneous disease.—IVY, *n. ifig*.—JABBER, *v. gabban*, to talk idly.—JAG, *v. saga*, to cut into notches.—JAR, *v. yrre*, to clash, quarrel... *n.* an earthen vessel.—JOWL, *n. ceole*, the face or cheek.—KEEN, *a. cen*, eager, sharp.—KEEP, *v. cepan*, to hold, retain.—KEN, *v. cunnan*, to see at a distance, to know.—KETTLER, *n. cytel*.—KEY, *n. cæg*.—KILL, *v. cwellan*, to put to death.—KIN, *n. cyn*, relation.—KIND, *a. cyn*.—KING, *n. cyning*.—KIRK, *n. cīrc*, a church.—KISS, *v. cyssan*.—KITCHEN, *n. cycene*.—KITH, *n. cyth*, acquaintance.—KNAVE, *n. cnapa*, a dishonest person.—KNEE, *n. cneow*.—KNELL, *n. cnyll*, funeral tolling.—KNIFE, *n. cnif*.—KNOCK, *v. cnucian*.—KNOT, *n. cnotta*, a bunch, bud, cluster, complication.—KNOW, *v. cnawan*, to perceive accurately.

EXERCISE 16.—LAD, *n. leod*.—LADE, *v. hladan*, to load.—LADY, *n. hlæfdie*.—LAMB, *n.*—LAME, *a.* crippled.—LAND, *n.* earth, ground.—LARK, *n. laferc*.—LAUGH, *v. hlīhan*, to manifest mirth.—LAW, *n. lagu*, a rule of justice.—LAY, *v. lecgan*, to place.—LEAD, *n.* a metal.—LEAD, *v. lædan*, to go before, to conduct, to guide.—LEAF, *n.* part of a plant.—LEAN, *v. hlymian*, to bend towards.—LEAN, *a. lene*, not fat, thin.—LEAP, *v. hleapan*, to jump, &c.—LEARN, *v. leornian*, to gain knowledge.—LEATHER, *n. lether*.—LEAVE, *n. leaf*, permission.—LEE, *n. hleo*, opposite side to the wind.—LEND, *v. lenda*.—LEST, *conj.* from *lesed*, participle of *lesan*, to dismiss, as, "Take heed lest you err;" that is, "Take care, *this being dismissed*, you err.—LET, *v. letan*, to allow.—LET, *v. lettian*, to hinder.—LEVEL, *a. læfel*, even.—LIE, *n. lig*, a falsehood.—LIE, *v. licgan*, to rest or lean upon, to stay.—LIFE, *n. lif*, vitality, existence.—LIFT, *v. hlifian*, to raise.—LIGHT, *n. leoht*... *a.* not heavy... *n.* the agent which makes objects perceptible.—LIGHT, *v. hlīhtan*, to fall on.—LIKE, *a. lic*, similar.—LINGER, *v. leng*, to stay long, loiter.—LIP, *n. lippa*.—LISP, *n. wisp*, to clip words.—LISTEN, *v. hlīstan*, to hearken.—LITTLE, *a. lytel*, small.—LIVE, *v. lifian*, to be in life.—LOAD, *n. hlād*, a burden.—LOATH, *a. lath*, unwilling.—LOCK, *n. loc*.—LODGE, *v. logian*.—LOFT, *n. lyft*, the highest floor.—LOOK, *v. locian*.—LOOSE, *v. lysan*, to unbind.—LORD, *n. hlaforð*, a monarch, ruler, baron.—LOSE, *v. losian*, to forfeit, &c.—LOUD, *a. hlūd*, noisy.—LOVE, *v. lufian*, to regard with affection.—LUNGS, *n. lungen*, organs of respiration.

EXERCISE 17.—MAD, *a. gemaad*, disordered in mind.—MAID, *n. mæden*.—MAIN, *a. mægen*, principal.---MAKE, *v. macian*, to create.—MALT, *n. mealt*.---MAN, *n.*—MAR, *v. myrran*, to spoil, injure.—MARK, *n. mearc*, a token, a stamp, &c.—MAR-KET, *n.*—MATCH, *n. maca*, an equal.—MAZE, *n. mose*, a labyrinth.

MEAL, *n. meleu*, the flour of grain.—**MEAL**, *n. mæl*, food taken at one eating.—**MEAN**, *a. mæne*, wanting dignity.—**MEAN**, *v. mænan*, to intend.—**MEET**, *v. metan*, to come together.—**MELT**, *v. melian*.—**MERRY**, *a. mirige*, gay of heart.—**METE**, *v. melan*, to measure.—**MID**, *a. midd*, middle, between the two extremes.—**MILD**, *a. kind*, soft, gentle.—**MILK**, *n. meolc*.—**MILL**, *n. mylen*, a machine for grinding.—**MIND**, *n. gemynd*.—**MINGLE**, *v. mengian*, to mix, blend, compound.—**MIRTH**, *n. myrth*, merriment.—**MISBEHAVE**, *v. mis, be, habban*, to behave ill.—**MISLEAD**, *v. mis, ledan*, to lead astray.—**MIST**, *n. a thick vapour*.—**MISTAKE**, *v. mis, teacan*, to take wrong.—**MISTRUST**, *v. mis, trwsian*, to doubt, suspect....*n.* want of confidence.—**MISUNDERSTAND**, *v. mis, under, standan*.—**MOAN**, *v. mænan*, to mourn, grieve.—**MOOD**, *n. mod*, temper of mind.—**MOON**, *n. mona*.—**MOOR**, *n. mor*.—**MORN**, *n. morgen*, first part of a day.—**MOSS**, *n. meos*, a plant.—**MOTHER**, *n. modor*.—**MOURN**, *v. murnan*, to grieve, lament.—**MOUTH**, *n. muth*.—**MURDER**, *n. morthor*.

EXERCISE 18.—**NAIL**, *n. nægel*, a horny substance.—**NAKED**, *a. nacod*.—**NAME**, *n. nama*.—**NAP**, *n. hnappian*, a short sleep.—**NAP**, *n. hnoppa*, down or cloth.—**NARROW**, *a. næarew*.—**NAUGHT**, *n. naht*, nothing....*a.* bad, worthless.—**NEIGHBOUR**, *n. neah, bur*.—**NEITHER**, *a. nathor*, not either....*conj.* negative to *nor*.—**NEVER**, *ad. næfre*, at no time.—**NEW**, *a. nwe*, fresh, recent, newly made.—**NICE**, *a. hnese*.—**NIGHT**, *n. night*.—**NIMBLE**, *a. niman*, quick, light.—**NUT**, *n. hnut*, a fruit, &c.—**OAK**, *n. ac*, a tree.—**OATH**, *n. ath*, an affirmation, appealing to God.—**OF**, *prep.* from, out of, &c.—**OFF**, *prep.* not on, &c.—**OF**, *ad.* frequently.—**OIL**, *n. ele*.—**OLD**, *a. eald*.—**ON**, *prep.* upon, at, near.—**ONE**, *a. an*, single.—**OPEN**, *v.* to unlock, unloose.—**ORDEAL**, *n. ordæl*, trial of guilt by fire, &c.—**OTHER**, *a.* not the same, different.—**OUT**, *ad.* ut, not within.—**OVERBOARD**, *ad. ofer, bord*, off the ship.—**OVERCLOUD**, *v. ofer, gehlod*.—**OVERTAKE**, *v. ofer, tæcan*, to come up with.—**OVERTHROW**, *v. ofer, thrawan*.—**OVERWHELM**, *v. ofer, ahwyrfan*, to spread over and crush.—**PAIN**, *n. pin*.—**PAN**, *n. panna*, a vessel.—**PANG**, *n. pyngan*, extreme sudden pain.—**PEARL**, *n. pærl*, a gem.—**PILLOW**, *n. pyle*, a cushion for the head.—**PINE**, *v. pinaa*, to languish, &c.—**PIPE**, *n. pip*, a long tube.—**PIT**, *n. pyt*, a hole.—**PLAY**, *v. plegan*, to sport, &c.—**PLUM**, *n. plume*, a fruit.—**POCKET**, *n. pocca*.—**POLE**, *n. pol*, a long staff.—**PRETTY**, *a. præte*, neat, beautiful.—**PRICK**, *v. prica*, to pierce.—**PRIDE**, *n. pryt*.—**PROOF**, *n. profan*, evidence.—**PROUD**, *a. prut*.—**PROVE**, *v. profan*, to try by experiment, or argument.—**QUAKE**, *v. cwacian*, to shake, to tremble.—**QUEEN**, *n. cwen*.—**QUELL**, *v. cwellan*, to allay, reduce to peace.—**QUENCH**, *v. cwencan*, to put out, extinguish, cool.—**QUICK**, *a. cwic*, living, swift.—**QUOTH**, *v. cwæthan*, says, say, or said.

EXERCISE 19.—**RACK**, *n. ræcan*, an engine of torture.—**RASCAL**, *n.* a mean roguish fellow.—**RAW**, *a. hreaw*.—**REACH**, *v. ræcan*.—**READ**, *v. rædan*.—**READY**, *a. hræd*, prompt, prepared.—**REAM**, *n.* 20 quires of paper.—**REAP**, *v. rīpan*.—**RECK**, *v. recan*, to care, to heed.—**RECKON**, *v. recan*, to number.—**REED**, *v. rendan*, to tear.

—REST, *n.* quiet, repose.—RIB, *n.* a bone.—RICH, *a.* *ric*, wealthy.—RID, *v.* *hreddan*, to free.—RIDDLE, *n.* *hriðdel*, a coarse sieve.—RIDDLE, *n.* *ræðelse*, an enigma.—RIDE, *v.* *ridan*.—RIFE, *a.* *ryf*, prevalent, common.—RIGHT, *a.* right, just, &c.—RIME, *n.* *hrim*, hoar frost.—RING, *n.* *hring*, a circle, a hoop.—RING, *v.* *hringan*, to cause, to sound.—RIPE, *a.* mature, fit for use.—RISE, *v.* *arisan*.—RIVE, *v.* *ryft*, to split.—ROAD, *n.* *rad*.—ROAM, *v.* *ryman*, to wander.—ROAR, *v.* *rarian*, to bellow.—ROOF, *n.* *hrof*.—ROOM, *n.* *rum*.—ROPE, *n.* *rap*.—ROUGH, *a.* *ruh*.—RUE, *v.* *hreowan*, to lament.—RUN, *v.* *rennan*.—RUSH, *v.* *hreošan*, to move with violence.—RUST, *n.*—RUTH, *n.* *hreošan*, pity, sorrow.—SAIL, *n.* *segel*, canvass of a ship, &c.—SALE, *n.* *syllan*, the act of selling.—SALT, *n.*—SAND, *n.*—SAW, *n.* *saga*, a toothed cutting instrument.—SAY, *v.* *secan*, to speak.—SCALE, *n.* dish of a balance.—SCATH, *v.* *scethan*, to waste, destroy.—SCATTER, *v.* *scateran*, to disperse.—SCRAPE, *v.* *screopan*.—SEA, *n.* *sæ*.—SEE, *v.* *seon*.—SEED, *n.* *sæd*, fruit of plants.—SEEK, *v.* *secan*.—SELDOM, *ad.* *seldan*, rarely.—SELL, *v.* *syllan*.—SEND, *v.* *sendan*, to despatch, &c.—SET, *v.* *settan*, to place, fix, plant.—SEW, *v.* *siwian*.—SHADE, *n.* *scead*, interception of light, &c.—SHAME, *n.* *scama*.—SHAPE, *v.* *scyppan*, to form.

EXERCISE 20.—SHARE, *n.* *sceare*, part, portion.—SHARP, *a.* *scearp*, not blunt, acute, acid, &c.—SHAVE, *v.* *scafan*.—SHEEP, *n.* *sceap*.—SHELF, *n.* *scylfe*.—SHIFT, *v.* to change.—SHILLING, *n.* *scilling*.—SHINE, *v.* *scinan*, to be bright, to glitter.—SHIP, *n.* *scip*.—SHOE, *n.* *sceo*.—SHOOT, *v.* *sceotan*.—SHOP, *n.* *sceoppa*.—SHORT, *a.* *scort*.—SHOULDER, *n.* *sculder*.—SHOW, *v.* *sceawian*, to present to view.—SHOWER, *n.* *scur*.—SHRINK, *v.* *scrincan*, to shrivel.—SHUFFLE, *v.* *scufan*, to evade, shift.—SICK, *a.* *seoc*.—SIDE, *n.* the broad or long part, &c.—SIGH, *n.* *sican*.—SIGHT, *n.* *gesiht*.—SILK, *n.* *seole*.—SILVER, *n.* *seolfer*.—SIN, *n.* *syn*.—SING, *v.* *singan*.—SISTER, *n.* *swuster*.—SIT, *v.* *sittan*.—SKILL, *n.* *soylan*, dexterity, &c.—SKIN, *n.* *scin*.—SLIDE, *v.* *slidan*, to slip, move without stepping.—SLIP, *v.* *slipan*, to slide, glide.—SLUMBER, *v.* *slumerian*.—SMALL, *a.* *smæl*.—SMOKE, *n.* *smeoc*.—SMOOTH, *a.* *smethe*, even, glossy.—SNEAK, *v.* *enican*, to creep slyly.—SNOW, *n.* *snaow*.—SOFT, *a.*—SON, *n.* *sunu*.—SORROW, *n.* *sorg*.—SOUL, *n.* *sawl*, the immortal spirit.—SPARE, *v.* *sparian*, to use frugally.—SPEAK, *v.* *sprecan*.—SPEED, *v.* *sped*, to make haste.—SPELL, *n.* a story, a charm.—SPEND, *v.* *spendan*, to lay out, consume.—SPREAD, *v.* *spreðan*.—STAR, *n.* *steorra*.—STARBOARD, *n.* *steorbord*, right hand side of a ship, towards the head.—STARVE, *v.* *steorfan*, to perish with hunger or cold.—STEAL, *v.* *stelan*.—STEP, *v.* *step*, to move the foot.—STILL, *v.* *stille*, to make silent, quiet.—STONE, *n.* *stan*.—STRIKE, *v.* *astrican*, to hit with force.—SULTRY, *a.* *swolath*, hot and close.—SUN, *n.* *sunne*.—SWEEP, *v.* *swapan*.—SWORD, *n.* *sward*.


EXERCISE 21.—TAIL, *n.* *tægel*, part of an animal.—TAKE, *v.* *tæcan*, to receive, accept, lay hold of.—TALE, *n.* a story.—TALK, *v.* *talian*.—TEACH, *v.* *tæcan*, to instruct.—TEAR, *n.*—TEAR, *v.* *teran*, to rend.—TELL, *v.* *tellan*, to relate.—THANK, *v.*—THATCH,

n. *thac*, straw covering a roof.—THAW, v. *thawan*.—THENCE, ad. *thanon*, from that place, or time.—THERE, ad. *thær*, in that place.—THICK, a. *thic*, dense, not thin.—THIEF, n. *theof*.—THINK, v. *thencan*, to employ the mind.—THIRST, n. *thurst*.—THITHER, ad. *thider*, to that place.—THOROUGH, a. *thurh*, complete.—THREAT, n. a menace.—THROW, v. *thrawan*, to fling.—THUNDER, n. *thuner*.—THWART, a. *thweor*, being across.—TIME, n. *tima*.—TIRE, v. *tirtan*, to weary.—TITHE, n. *teotha*, the tenth part.—TOGETHER, a. *togetedere*, in company.—TOOTH, n. *toth*.—TOP, n.—TOWARD, TOWARDS, prep. in a direction to, regarding.—TRAP, n. *treppe*.—TREAD, v. *treðan*.—TREE, n. *treow*.—TRIM, v. *trymian*, to put in order, to dress.—TROTH, n. *treowth*, faith, fidelity.—TROW, v. *treowan*, to think.—TRUE, a. *treowe*.—TRUST, n. *trywstan*, reliance.—TURN, v. *tyrnan*, to move round.—UGLY, a. *oga*, deformed.—UNABLE, a. *un, abel*.—UNACKNOWLEDGED, a. *un, acnawan*, *lecgan*.—UNASKED, a. *un, acsian*, not asked.—UNAWARE, a. *un, wor*, inattentive.—UNBEARABLE, a. *un, beran*.—UNBELOVED, a. *un, be, lufian*.—UNBEND, v. *un, bendan*, to make straight.—UNBOUND, a. *un, bindan*.—UNBOUNDED, a. *un, bunde*, having no bounds.—UNBRIDLED, a. *un, bridl*.—UNBROKEN, a. *un, brečan*.—UNBURIED, a. *un, birgan*.—UNCLEAN, a. *un, clen*.—UNCOMEELY, a. *un, cwe-man*.—UNDERNEATH, ad. *under, nythan*.—UNDERSHERIFF, n. *under, scir, gerefa*, deputy of a sheriff.—UNDERSTAND, v. *under, standan*.—UNDERWOOD, n. *under, wudu*.—UNDO, v. *un, don*.

EXERCISE 22.—UNPROVED, a. *un, profan*.—UNSHAKEN, a. *un, sceacan*.—UNSHRINKING, a. *un, scrincan*.—UNSTEADY, a. *un, stede*.—UNWILLING, a. *un, willa*.—UNWORTHY, a. *un, weorh*.—UPRIGHT, a. *up, riht*, erect, honest, just.—UPSET, v. *up, settan*.—UTTER, a. *uter*, extreme, outside... v. to speak.—VAT, n. *set*, a cistern.—VIXEN, n. *flen*, a turbulent quarrelsome woman.—WADE, v. *wadan*, to walk through water.—WAG, v. *wagtan*.—WAKE, v. *wacian*, to watch.—WALK, v. *wealcen*.—WALLOW, v. *wealwian*, to tumble and roll.—WANDER, v. *wandrian*, to rove.—WANT, v. *wanian*, not to have.—WARD, v. *weardian*, to quarrel.—WARM, a. *wearm*.—WARN, v. *warnian*, to caution, &c.—WASH, v. *wacsan*.—WASTE, v. *westan*, to squander, wear out.—WATCH, v. *wacian*, to be awake, observe.—WATER, n. *wæter*.—WAVE, n. *wæg*, a swell, billow.—WAY, n. *weg*, a road, &c.—WEAK, a. *wac*.—WEALTH, n. *welig*, riches.—WEAR, v. *werian*, to waste by use, &c.—WEARY, a. *wearig*, tired.—WEATHER, n. *we-der*.—WED, v. to marry.—WEEP, v. *wepan*.—WEIGH, v. *wæge*, to ascertain weight, to ponder, raise.—WELL, a. *wel*, being in health, fortunate.—WHENCE, ad. *hwanan*, from what place.—WHERE, ad. *hwær*, at which place.—WHET, v. *hwettan*, to sharpen.—WHILE, n. *hwil*, space of time.—WHIP, v. *hweop*.—WHISPER, v. *hwisprian*.—WHOLE, a. *hal*, total.—WICKED, a. *wicce*, morally bad.—WILD, a. not tame.—WILE, n. a trick, a stratagem.—WIN, v. *winnan*.—WIND, n. air in motion.—WIPE, v. *wipian*.—WIT, n. *witan*, the expression of ideas to produce surprise, &c.—WOE, n. *wa*, grief, sorrow.—WOMAN, n. *witman*.

EXERCISE 23.—WOOD, n. *wudu*.—WOOL, n. *wull*, the hair of

sheep.—WORD, n.—WORK, n. *weorc*, labour.—WORLD, n. *weoruld*. WORSHIP, n. *weorhtscipe*, religious reverence and service—a title of honour.—WORTH, n. *weorth*, value, price.—WRATH, n. anger.—WRESTLE, v. *wrahtian*, to strive to cast another down.—WRONG, n. *urung*, an injury.—WRY, a. *wriðan*, twisted.—YEAR, n. *gear*, the time in which the earth moves round the sun.—YEARN, v. *geornian*, to be pained, to earnestly desire.—YEOMAN, n. *gemæne*, a little landholder, farmer, freeholder.—YES, ad. *gese*, a term of affirmation.—YIELD, v. *gyldan*, to produce, give up.—YOKE, n. *geoc*, an instrument to connect oxen, bondage.—YOUNG, a. *geong*, not old.—YOUTH, n. *geoguth*, early part of life, young persons.

 *Some Words are composed of a Latin or other Prefix, and a Saxon or other Root.*

EXAMPLES.—COMMINGLE, Latin *con*, Saxon *mengan*, to blend, to unite.—COMLOT, L. *con*, Sax. *plithian*, a conspiracy.—COUNTER-STROKE, L. *contra*, Sax. *astrican*, a stroke returned.—COUNTERSWAY, L. *contra*, Dutch *swaatjen*, opposite influence.—COUNTERTASTE, L. *contra*, French, *tater*, false taste.—DISABLE, L. *dis*, Sax. *abal*, to deprive of power, &c.—DISADVANTAGE, L. *dis*, Fr. *avant*, loss, injury to interest.—DISCOURTEOUS, L. *dis*, Fr. *cour*, uncivil, rude, &c.—DISENGAGE, L. *dis*, Fr. *gager*, to release, to free, &c.—DISFRANCHISE, L. *dis*, Fr. *franc*, to deprive of privileges.—FOREARM, Sax. *fore*, L. *armo*, to arm beforehand.—FOREMENTIONED, Sax. *fore*, L. *mentio*, mentioned before.—OUTBRAVE, Sax. *ut*, Fr. *brave*.—OUTCAST, Sax. *ut*, Danish, *kaster*, expelled.—REGAIN, L. *re*, Fr. *gagner*.

DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN NOUNS.

 *A knowledge of these Derivatives will be an excellent preparation for the study of Latin.*

ABORIGINES, the earliest inhabitants of a country. Hence, aboriginal, primitive, pristine.

AGER, *agri*, a field, land, as, agrarian, relating to fields or lands.—Agriculture, agriculturist, agricultural, acre, perigrinate, to wander, perigrination, peregrine.

AMICUS, (from *amo*, to love,) a friend.—Amity, amicable, amicableness, enemy, enmity.

ANGULUS, an angle or corner.—Angle, angular, angularly, angularity, angulated, multangular, octangular, pentangular, quadrangle, rectangle, triangle, triangular.

ANIMA, air, breath, life, or soul.—animal, animalcule, animality,

animate, animated, animation, exanimate, lifeless, dead, exanimation, inanimate, reanimate.

ANIMUS, the mind, or thinking principle.—Animadvert, animadversion, animosity, violent hatred, equanimity, evenness of mind, magnanimity, greatness of mind, pusillanimity, cowardice, unanimous, being of one mind.

ANNUS, a year.—Annals, yearly records, Anno Domini, usually written, A. D. in the year of our Lord, annual, annuity, anniversary, biennial, of, or belonging to 2 years, triennial, of 3 years, decennial, of 10 years, centennial, of a 100 years, millennium, space of

1000 years, perennial, lasting many years, superannuate, impaired by age.

AQUA, water.—Aqua fortis, aqua vitæ, aquatic, living in water, aqueous, watery, aqueduct, terraqueous, formed of land and water.

ARBITER, a judge, or umpire, arbitress, arbitrable, depending on the will, arbitrament, determination, choice, arbitrary, despotic, absolute, arbitration, arbitrator.

ARBOR, a tree.—Arbour, a shady bowser, arborist, arboreous, arborescent, growing like a tree.

ARCUS, a bow, arch, or vault.—Arcubalist, a cross-bowman, arch, arched, archer, archery.

ARGILLA, potter's clay.—Argillaceous, argillous.

ARMA, arms, weapons.—Armada, a large fleet of ships, armament, armistice, a cessation of hostilities, armour, armorial, arms, army, disarm, unarm.

ARS, an art, skill, dexterity.—Artful, cunning, artless, artifice, fraud, trick, trade, artificer, artificial, artisan, a workman, artist.

ARTICULUS, from ARTUS, a joint.—Article, .n. a single thing, a part of speech, .v. to bind by a written agreement,—articulate, articulation, distinct utterance, a joint, inarticulation, inarticulate.

AUGUR, one who predicts by omens.—Augurer, augury, augurate, inaugurate, to invest solemnly, inauguration.

AUSPICIUM, from *avis* and *specio*, to see, an omen drawn from birds.

AUSPICE, an omen, &c. patronage, auspicious, having omens of success, inauspicious.

AUXILIUM, aid, help, a helper.—Auxiliar, auxiliary.

AVARITIA, fr. *avarus*, extreme love of money.—Avarice, avaricious, avariciously.

BACCHUS, the god of wine, revelry.—Bacchanal, a reveller, bac-

chanalian, bacchanals, debauch, debauchee, a drunkard.

BARBA, a beard, part of an arrow, armour for horses.—Barb, barbed, barber, barbated, bearded, barbel, a species of fish with barbs.

BELLUM, war.—Belligerent, carrying on war, rebel, n. and v. rebellion, rebellious.

BILIS, the bile, melancholy.—Biliary, bilious, affected by bile, antibilious.

CALAMITAS, a misfortune.—Calamity, calamitous.

CALX, chalk.—Calx, calcs, any substance reduced to powder by burning, calcine, to burn to a calx, calcination, calcareous, calculate, small pebbles were anciently used in calculating, calculation, calculous, stony, gritty, incalculable, miscalculate.

CALLUS, hard, horny.—Callous, hardened, callousness, callosity.

CALUMNIA, false accusation, slander.—Calumny, calumniate, calumniation, calumniator.

CAMPUS, a plain, tents in an open field.—Camp, campaign, campestral, champagne, decamp, encamp, encampment.

CAPUT, capitis, the head, cap-a-pie, capital, chief, principal, capitally, capitation, capitol, captain, chaplet, chapter, decapitate, to behead, precipitate, hasty, precipice, recapitulate, &c.

CARBO, coal, or charcoal.—Carbonic, carbonaceous, carbuncle.

CARO, CARNIS, flesh.—Carnage, slaughter, havoc, carnal, carnality, carnation, a flesh-coloured flower, carnelian, a precious stone, carnival, carnivorous, flesh-eating, charnel-house, carrion, carcase, incarnate, incarnation.

CARTENA, a chain, a link.—Catenate, catenarian, relating to a chain, concatenate, concatenation, connection by links, series.

CAUSA, a cause, origin, a reason.

—Accuse, accuser, accusation, cause, causer, causeless, causal, causation, excuse, excuseless, inexcusable, &c.

CAUTIO, *cautionis*, prudence, care, wariness.—Caution, cautionary, cautious, cautiously, cautiousness, caveat, caution given, incautious, precaution, &c.

CELLA, a cellar.—Cell, cellar, cellarage, cellular, &c.

CERA, wax, varnish.—Cerate, ointment made of wax, cerated, cere, cerecloth, cloth dipped in wax, &c., cerement, insincere, sincere, without wax or varnish, sincerely, sincerity.

CIRCULUS, from *circus*, a circle. Circle, a ring, circled, circling, circlet, a little circle, circular, circularly, circulate, to move round, to spread, circulation, circuit, circuitous, circus, encircle, to surround, semicircle, &c.

CIVIS, a citizen, a freeman.—City, citizen, citizenship, civic, referring to civil honours, civility, civilian, civilize, civilization, uncivil, uncivilized, &c.

CLASSICS, a class, a fleet.—Class, classic, classical, relating to the best, or ancient authors, classify, classification, unclassic.

COLLEGA, a fellow, a co-partner.—Colleague, college, collegian, collegiate, &c.

COR, *cordis*, the heart.—Accordant, according, concord, agreement, cordial, cordiality, core, the inner part, courage, courageous, discord, discordant, discourage, encourage, record, to register, &c.

CORNU, a horn.—Corn, a horny excrescence, cornea, the horny coat of the eye, cornet, a musical instrument, corneous, cornu-copse, horn of plenty, cornice, unicorn.

CORONA, a crown.—Corona, coronal, a crown or garland, coronation, coroner, coronet, corolla, a blossom, corollary, an inference.

CORPUS, a body.—Corporal, belonging to the body, corporal, a soldier, corporate, corporation, corporeal, having a body, not spiritual, corps, corpse, corpulence, fatness, corpulent, corpuscle, a small body, incorporate, to embody, incorporeal, &c.

CRIMEN, a crime.—Crimeful, criminal, criminally, criminate, to charge with crime, crimination, re-criminate, to retort a charge, re-crimination.

CRUSTA, a crust, an external coat.—Crust, crusty, crustily, crustaceous, shelly, crustation, incrust, incrustation, a hard coat.

CRUX, *crucis*, a cross.—Crosscut, cross-examine, crossier, a bishop's staff, cross, peevish, crucial, transverse, crucible, crucify, crucifix, crucifixion, cruciform, crusade, ex-cruciate, to torture, uncrossed.

CULPA, a fault, blame.—Culpable, faulty, culpably, culpability, culprit, exculpate, exculpation, clearing from blame.

CURA, care, concern, cure.—Accurate, accuracy, care, careful, careless, cure, the act of healing, a benefice, cureless, curable, curacy, curate, curative, curious, curiosity, inaccurate, insecure, procure, security, sinecure, pay without work.

DECOR, comeliness, beauty, grace, elegance.—Decorate, to adorn, decoration, decorum, indecorous, indecorum.

DELICIE, that which delights.—Delicious, deliciousness, delicacy, delicate, indelicate, indelicacy.

DENS, *dentis*, a tooth.—Dental, dented, dentist, one who cures diseases of the teeth, &c., dentifrice, tooth-powder, dentition, getting teeth, indent, indenture.

DIES, a day.—Antemeridian, before noon, diary, diurnal, relating to the day, quotidian, daily, dial.

meridian, *mid-day*, noon, post-meridian, *after noon*.

DISCIPULUS, a scholar, a learner. Disciple, discipleship, discipline, disciplinarian, undisciplined, &c.

DOMINUS, a master, lord, or ruler.—Domain, *dominion*, estate, dominant, domination, domineer, dominion, predominance, predominant, predominate, &c.

DOMUS, a house, a home, a family.—Dome, domestic, domestical, domesticate, domicile, a *habitation*, domiciliary.

DONUM, a gift.—Donor, donation, donative, donee.

EXEMPLUM, a copy, example.—Example, exemplar, exemplary, exemplify, *to illustrate by example*, exemplification, sample, unexampled.

FABULA, a fable.—Fable, fabled, fabulist, fabulous, fib, confabulate, confabulation.

FACIES, form of any thing, the face.—Face, deface, efface, facing, barefaced, brazen-face, fashion, feature, outface, ashamed, superficial, surface, &c.

FAMA, a thing spoken of, a report.—Fame, famed, fameless, famous, defame, defamation, defamatory, infamy, *public disgrace*, infamous.

FAMILIA, a family.—Family, familiar, *affable*, *well known*, familiarity, familiarize, unfamiliar.

FANUM, a temple.—Fane, fanatic, fanatical, fanaticism, profane, profanity, profanation.

FASCINUM, a charm.—Fascinate, fascination, fascinating.

FEBRIS, a fever.—Fever, feverish, feverishness, febrile, febrifuge, antifebrile, *against fever*.

FEMINA, a woman.—Effeminate, womanish, weak, effeminacy, female, feminine.

FESTUM, a feast, festival.—Feast, *festal*, festival, festive, festivity.

FINIS, an end, bound, or limit.

—Fine, finery, finable, final, finally, finis, *the end*, finish, finite, *having an end*, limited, finitude, indefinable, indefinite, infinite, infinitude, affinity, confine, define, definite, definition, refine, superfine.

FISCUS, a bag, or purse.—Fiscal, *pertaining to the public treasury* or revenue, confiscate, *to forfeit to the public treasury*, confiscation, confiscatory.

FLAMMA, a flame.—Flambeau, flame, flaming, flammable, flamy, inflame, inflammable, inflammation, inflammatory, &c., &c.

FLOS, *floris*, a flower, blossom.—Flora, *the goddess of flowers*, floral, floricultural, florist, florid, *flushed*, flour, flowering, &c.

FÆDUS, *fœderis*, a league, covenant, or treaty.—Federal, *pertaining to a league, or covenant*, confederate, confederacy.

FOLIUM, a leaf.—Foliage, foliate, folio, foliaceous, trefoll, *three-leaved clover*, cinquefoil, *five-leaved clover*, foll, portfolio.

FORMA, form, figure, beauty.—Form, shape, ceremony, formal, formality, formation, conform, conformist, conformity, deform, deformity, inform, information, misinform, multiform, nonconformist, perform, reform, transform, uniform.

FORS, *fortis*, chance, luck, &c.—Fortune, fortune-hunter, fortune-teller, fortunate, fortuitous, *accidental*, misfortune, unfortunate.

FRAUS, *fraudis*, fraud, *deceit*—Fraud, fraudulent, defraud, &c.

FRIGUS, cold, cool.—Frigid, frigidly, frigidity, coldness, refrigerate, to cool, refrigerative.

FRONS, *frontis* the forehead.—Front, frontal, fronted, frontlet, frontier, frontispiece, affront, confront, effrontery, *impudence*.

FRUGES, fruit, (*figuratively*, thrifty, sparing.)—Frugal, frugally, frugality, infrugal.

FUMUS, smoke.—Fume, *smoke*.
fumid, fumigate, fumigation perfume, perfumer, perfumery.

FUNDUS, the bottom, foundation.—Found, founder, foundation, fundament, fundamental, profound, *deep*, profundity, unfounded.

GELU, frost, ice, cold.—Gelid, *very cold*, gelly, gelatine, gelatinous, *formed into a jelly*, congeal, congelation.

GENUS, *generis*, a race, a family, a kind.—Gender, general, generalship, generality, generalize, generic, generation, generous, generosity, genius, genital, gently, gentility, congener, congenial, congeniality, degenerate, &c., &c.

GLOBUS, a ball, a round body, a sphere.—Globe, globated, globose, globule, globular, globulous, conglobate, *to form into a globe*.

GLORIA, honour, renown.—Glory, glorious, glorify, glorification, inglorious, &c.

GRATIA, favour, gratitude.—Grace, graceful, graceless, gracious, grateful, gratify, gratis, gratitude, gratuitous, greet, agree, congratulate, disagree, disgrace, ingrate, ungrateful, &c.

GUSTUS, a sense of tasting.—Gust, *sense of tasting*, gustable, gusto, *relish*, disgust, disgustful, disgusting.

HERES, *heredis*, an heir or heiress.—Heir, heiress, heirless, coheir, disinherit, heritage, hereditary, inherit, inheritance, heirship, &c.

HOMO, *hominis*, a man, mankind.—Human, humanly, humane, humanity, humanize, inhuman, inhumanity, homicide, homicidal.

HONOR, *honoris*, respect, honour, honorary, honourable, dishonour, dishonourable, honest, honesty, dishonest.

HOSPES, *hospitis*, a host or guest.—Host, hostess, hospitable,

hospitality, hospital, host, hotel, hostler, inhospitable.

HOSTIS, a foe.—Host, *an army*, hostile, hostility, hostage, *one given in pledge*.

HUMUS, the ground, earth.—Exhume, *to disinter*, exhumation, humid, *moist*, (*humilis*, from *humo*, to be low or), humble, humility, humiliate, humiliation.

IMAGO, an image, a picture.—Imagery, imagine, imaginary, imagination, imaginative.

INSULA, an island.—Insular, *belonging to an island*, insulate, insulated, *surrounded by water*, peninsula, peninsular, isle, island.

IRA, anger, wrath.—Ire, ireful, irascible, irritable, irritability, irritate, irritation, &c.

ITER, *itineris*, a journey, a march.—Itinerant, *wandering*, itinerary, itinerate, iteration, *repetition*, reiterate, *to repeat*.

JUS, right, law, justice.—Jurist, jurisprudence, jurisdiction, injury, injury, injurious.

LABOR, *laboris*, labour, toil.—Labourer, laborious, laboratory, *a chemist's work-room*, elaborate, elaboration.

LEX, *legis* a law or rule.—Law, lawful, lawyer, legal, legally, legalize, legislate, legitimate, *just*, right, legislate, *to make laws*, legislature, *the parliament*, allegiance, *loyalty*, illegal, &c.

LIBER, a book.—Library, librarian, libel, libellous.

LIMES, *limitis*, a path, a boundary.—Limit, limited, limitation, limitless, illimitable, unlimited.

LINGUA, the tongue, a language.—Language, lingual, *pertaining to the tongue*, linguist, *one skilled in languages*, linguacious.

LIS, *litis*, dispute, law-suit.—Litigant, *one engaged in a law-suit*, litigious, litigate, litigation.

LITERA, a letter.—Literal, *exact to the letter*, literary, literature,

learning, literati, letter-press, print from types, illiterate, obliterate, to efface.

LOCUS, a place.—Local, locally, locality, locate, *to place*, location, allocation, collocation, dislocate, locomotion, *the power of moving from place to place.*

LUMEN, *luminis*, light.—Luminary, luminous, luminousness, illumine, illuminate, illumination, relumine.

LUNA, the moon.—Lunacy, *madness*, lunatic, *mad*, lunar, lunation, lunated, *like a half moon*, sublunary, *beneath the moon.*

MAGISTER, a master.—Master, masterly, mastery, magistrate, magistracy, magisterial, &c.

MANUS, the hand.—Emancipate, *to free*, emancipation, manual, manufactory, manufacture, manumission, *to free the captive*, manuscript, manacles, manipulate, amanuensis, *a secretary.*

MARE, the sea.—Marine, mariner, maritime, rosemary, submarine, transmarine, *beyond the sea*, ultramarine.

MATER, *matris*, a mother.—Matron, matronly, maternal, maternity, matricide, matriculate, *to enter a university*, matrimony.

MENS, *mentis*, the mind.—Mental, mentally, comment, commentary, vehement, vehemence.

MILES, *militis*, a soldier.—Militia, military, militate, militant, *fighting.*

MINISTER, *ministri*, a servant, a helper.—Ministry, ministerial, ministration, administer, administration, administrator, *he who has charge of the property of a person dying without will.*

MODUS, a measure, manner, rule, or direction.—Mode, model, moderate, moderation, modify, modulate, modern, modest, modify, accommodate, commodious, &c.

MONS, *montis*, a high hill.—

Mount, mountainous, mound, dismount, remount, surmount.

MORS, *mortis*, death.—Mortal, mortally, mortality, *human nature, death*, mortuary, immortal, immortality, immortalize, *to perpetuate*, mortify, mortification.

MOS, *moris*, a manner, or custom.—Moral, morally, morality, moralist, moralize, morals, demoralize, immoral, &c.

MUNUS, *muneris*, a gift, an office.—Munerator, *relating to a gift*, communicate, munificent, immunity, *exemption from duty*, commune, community, municipal, common, excommunicate, remuneration, uncommon.

MUSA, a muse, a song.—Muse, museum, music, musical, musician, unmusical.

NAVIS, a ship.—Naval, navy, navigation, navigable, navigate, circumnavigate.

NOX, *noctis*, night.—Nightly, nocturnal, equinoctial, *the equator.*

NUMERUS, a number.—Number, numberless, numeral, numerous, numeration, numerical, enumerate, innumerable, supernumerary, *above the prescribed number.*

OCULUS, the eye.—Ocular, *known by the eye*, oculist, binocular, *having two eyes*, inoculate, inoculation.

ONUS, a burden.—Onerate, onerary, *belonging to a burden*, exonerate, exoneration, onerous.

OPUS, *opera*, a work.—Operate, operation, co-operate, operative, active, operose, laborious, opera.

ORDO, *ordinis*, order, rank.—Ordain, order, ordinance, ordinary, ordination, disorder, extraordinary, inordinate, insubordination, preordain, subordinate, &c.

PARS, *partis*, a part, share, portion.—Part, party, partake, partial, partiality, participate, participle, particle, particular, partner, partition, portion, proportion.

apart, apartment, apportion, compartment, depart, department.

PATER, *pateris*, a father.—Paternal, paternal, paternity, patrimony, a bequeathed estate, patriarch, patriot, a lover of his country, patriotism, patriotic, patron, patronize, to favour, compatriot, expatriate, expatriation, to banish from one's country.

PAX, *pacts*, peace.—Pacify, appease, to quiet, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacemaker.

PERSONA, a person.—Personage, personal, personate, personation, personify, personification.

PES, *pedis*, a foot.—Biped, a two-footed animal, centiped, milleped, an insect with numerous feet, expedience, expedite, to hasten, expedition, impede, to hinder, impediment, inexpedient, pedestal, pedestrian.

PEST, *pestis*, a plague, destruction.—Pest, pester, pesthouse, pestiferous, noxious, pestilence, pestilent, &c.

PLANTA, a plant.—Planted, plantation, planter, replant, implant, to insert, supplant, to displace, transplant.

PÆNA, pain, punishment.—Pain, penalty, penal, penitence, penitentiary, punish, impunity, escape from punishment, repent.

PONDUS, *ponderis*, a weight.—Pound, a weight, ponder, ponderate, ponderous, heavy, preponderate, to outweigh, preponderance, counterpoise, to balance, to equal, equipoise, equal in weight.

POPULUS, the people.—People, populace, popular, populate, population, number of people in a locality, depopulate, public, publican, publish, republic, republish, unpopular.

PRECIUM, for **PRETIUM**, price, reward.—Price, priceless, prize, appraise, to value, appreciate, to esteem justly, depreciate, to

undervalue, depreciation, praise.

PREDA, for **PRÆDA**, prey, plunder.—Prey, predatory, plundering, depredation, a robbing, depredator, depredatory.

PUGNA, fr. *pugnus*, a fight, a battle.—Pugnacious, pugnacity, impugn, to oppose, contradict, repugnant, repugnance, reluctance.

QUIES, *quietus*, rest, ease.—Quiet, quietly, quietness, quietude, repose, quiescent, quietus, acquiesce, disquiet, inquietude.

RADIUS, spoke of a wheel, a beam, or ray.—Radiance, radiant, radiate, radius, the semi-diameter of a circle, ray, rayless, irradiate, irradiance.

RADIX, a root.—Eradicate, to root out, radical, primitive, radicle, the part of the seed that produces the root, radish, an eatable root.

RATIO, *rationis*, reason, proportion.—Ratio, proportion, rationale, rational, rationally, irrational, reason, reasonable.

RIVUS, a stream of water.—River, rill, rivulet, rival, rivalry, arrival, derived, derivation, flowing from its original.

ROTA, a wheel.—Rotary, rotatory, turned like a wheel, rotation, rote, repetition of words, without rule, rotund, round, rotunda, routine.

RUS, *ruris*, the country.—Rural, rustic, countrified, rusticity, rusticate.

SALUS, *salutis*, health, safety.—Salutary, healthful, advantageous, salute, salutation, salvage, goods saved from a fire, salvation, salvo, save, saviour, savings-bank.

SEMEN, *seminis*, seed.—Seminal, belonging to seed, seminary, seminate, disseminate, to scatter as seed.

SIGNUM, a mark or sign.—Signal, signalize, signature, signify, to mean, significance, signification, assign, to appoint, assignee,

consign, *to make over*, design, designate, ensign, resign.

SONUS, a sound.—Sound, sonorous, consonance, consonant, dissonance, *harsh sound*, resound, sonata, unison.

STILLA, a drop.—Still, a vessel for distilling, distill, distillation, distillery, instill.

TEMPUS, *temporis*, time.—Temporal, relating to time, temporary, time, timely, contemporary, living at the same time, extempore, extemporaneous, temper, tempest, temporize, to put off, intemperance.

TERMINUS, a bound, a limit.—Term, limit, condition, &c., terminate, termination, determine, exterminate, to root out, destroy, interminous, without end.

TERRA, the earth.—Terrace, a mount of earth, terraqueous, land and water, terrene, terrestrial, earthly, terrier, a dog that burrows, territory, inter, interment, deter, disinter, subterraneous.

TESTIS, a witness.—Attest, to bear witness to, attestation, contest, detest, detestable, intestate, dying without a will, obtest, to beseech, protest, protestant, testa-

ment, testamentary, testator, testatrix, testify, testimony.

TURBA, a disturbance, a crowd, confusion.—Disturb, to disquiet, disturbance, perturbation, mental disturbance, trouble, troublesome, turbid, muddy, turbulency, tumult, undisturbed, &c.

VENIA, pardon, forgiveness.—Venial, veniable, pardonable, excusable, venialness.

VERBUM, a word.—Adverb, adverbial, proverb, proverbial, verb, verbal, by word of mouth, verbatim, word for word, verbiage, verbose, verbosity.

VIA, a way.—Deviate, to wander, deviation, envoy, impervious, not passable, obviate, obvious, plain, pervious, previous, trivial, trifle, viaduct, &c.

VINUM, wine.—Vine, vinous, vindresser, vintage, vintner, vineyard, vinegar, wine.

VIR, a man.—Virile, pertaining to a man, virility, manhood, virtue, triumvirate, a coalition of three persons, virago.

VULGUS, the common people, the populace.—Vulgar, common, mean, vulgarity, vulgarity, divulge, promulgate, promulgation, promulgator, promulge, &c.

DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES.

ACER, *acris*, sharp, sour, poignant; *acutus*, sharpened, fr. ACEO, to be sour or bitter.—Acrid, of a hot biting taste, acidity, acrimony, sharpness, acid, sour, acritude, acrimonious, acrimoniously.

ACERBUS, bitter, sour, severe.—Acerb, sour, acerbate, to make sour, acerbity, sourness, exacerbate, to embitter, exacerbation.

ACIDUS, fr. *aceo*, tart, sour, sharp.—Acid, acidity, acidulate, to make acid or sour, antacid, subacid.

AGILIS, active, swift, sprightly.—Agile, agility, agileness.

ALIENUS, fr. *alius*, another, foreign.—Abalienate, to transfer a title, alien, alienate, to estrange, alias, otherwise, inalienable, alibi, elsewhere.

ALTER, another, change.—Alter, to change, alterable, alteration, alternative, altercation, debate, alternate, to change by turns, adulterate, adulterer.

ALTUS, high, lofty.—Altitude, height, antiloquence, lofty speech,

exalt, exaltation, altimetry, the *mensuration of heights*.

AMPLUS, large.—Ample, amplify, to enlarge, amplifying, amplification, amplitude, abundance.

ANTIQUUS, old, ancient.—Antiquary, one versed in old things, antiquarian, antique, antique, ancient, ancestor, ancestry.

APTUS, fit, meet.—Apt, aptitude, aptly, aptness, adapt, adaptation, inaptitude.

ASPER, rough.—Asperate, to make rough, asperity, exasperate, to provoke, exasperation.

ATROX, atrocis, fierce, cruel.—Atrocious, atrociously, atrocity.

AUSTERUS, severe, rigid.—Austere, austere, austereness, austerity.

BARBARUS, rude, savage, foreign. Barbarous, barbarously, barbarian, one uncivilized, barbarize, barbarism, barbaric, uncivilized.

BEATUS, happy, blessed.—Beati-ty, (fr. beatus, facio,) to make happy in heaven, beatific, beatification, beatitude, being blessed or happy.

BONUS, good...**BENI**, well.—Bounty, goodness, bounteous, bountiful, benediction, blessing, benefaction, benefactor, benefice, a church living, beneficence, beneficent, beneficial, benevolence, benevolent, benign, benignity.

BREVIS, short, brief.—Brevity, brief, briefly, breviary, an epitome, abbreviate, abridge, abridgment.

CAVUS, hollow.—Cave, cavern, cavernous, cavity, concave, hollow, excavate, excavation.

CELER, swift, quick.—Celerity, accelerate, to quicken motion, acceleration, accelerative.

CELSUS, high, lofty, elevated.—Celsitude, height, excel, excellence, excellent, superexcellent.

CENTUM, a hundred.—Century, 100 years, cent. 100th part of a dollar, centage, centennial, cen-

turion, captain of 100 men, centuple, 100-fold, centiped, many feet.

CERTUS, certain, sure.—Certain, certainty, certify, certificate, certitude, ascertain, to make certain, uncertain, uncertainty.

CLARUS, clear, bright, loud.—Clear, bright, evident, clearly, clearance, clearness, clarify, clarion, declare, to make known, declaration, declarative.

CLEMENS, mild, merciful.—Clement, clemency, clemently, inclement, unmerciful, harsh, inclemency.

CRUDUS, raw, unripe.—Crude, raw, crudely, crudity, unripeness...**CRUDELIS**, cruel, cruelty.

CURVUS, crooked, bent, winding.—Curve, a bent line, curved, curvature, incurvate, to bend.

DECIM, ten.—Decimal, decimate, to take the tenth, decimation, decennial, lasting ten years, duodecimal, decalogue, &c.

DENSUS, thick, close.—Dense, density, closeness, compactness, condense, condensation.

DIGNUS, worthy.—Dignity, honour, worth, dignify, to raise to honour, condign, merited, deign, disdain, disdainful, scornful, indignity, indignant, indignation.

DUBIUS, doubtful.—Doubt, doubtful, doubtless, doubting, dubiety, uncertainty, dubious, indubious, indubitable, cannot be doubted, undoubted, undoubtedly.

DURUS, hard, solid, lasting.—Durable, lasting, durably, durability, duration, dure, during, endure, endurable, endurance, indurate, to harden, obdurate, obduracy, &c.

ELEGANS, nice, handsome.—Elegance, beauty of form, or manner, elegant, elegantly, inelegant, inelegance, inelegancy, &c.

EQUUS for *æquus*, even, equal.—Equally, equalize, equality, equation, equanimity, equilib-

tance, equilibrium, equinox, equipoise, equity, equitable, equivocal, equivocate, even, inadequate, &c.

FACETUS, witty, humorous.—*Facete, facetious, facetiously.*

FACILIS, easy.—*Difficult, not easy to do, facility, facilitate, to render easy, facilitation, ability to do with ease, facilis, faculty, power of mind or body.*

FELIX, *felicitis*, happy.—*Felicitate, to make happy, to congratulate, felicitation, felicitous, infelicity, infelicitous.*

FIRMUS, stable, firm, strong.—*Firm, firmly, firmness, firmament, the sky, affirm, to assert positively, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, infirm, weak, feeble, infirmity.*

FORTIS, strong, valiant.—*Comfort, to make strong, comforter, comfortable, fort, forte, fortification, fortify, fortitude, fortress, force, forcible, enforce, enforcement, effort, violent action.*

GRANDIS, great, lofty.—*Grand, grandeur, grandfather, grand-mother, grandee, a person of high rank, aggrandize, grandiloquence, grandiloquous, using lofty words.*

GRAVIS, heavy, weighty.—*Grave, solemn, serious, weighty, gravity, gravitation, grief, grievance, aggrieve, &c.*

INTEGER, entire, not touched.—*Integral, whole, integer, the whole thing, integral, integrity, honesty, uprightness.*

JUVENIS, young, youthful.—*Juvenile, juvenility, youthfulness, junior, younger than another.*

LAXUS, loose, open.—*Lax, laxity, a being loose, laxative, prolix, long, tedious, prolixity, relax, to slacken, relaxation.*

LENIS, gentle, soft, mild.—*Lenity, being mild, lenient, leniment.*

LIBER, free.—*Deliver, to set free, deliverance, liberal, generous,*

liberty, liberate, deliberate, deliberation, illiberal, &c.

LONGUS, long, tall.—*Long, longish, longitude, length, distance east or west, longevity, prolong, prolongation, oblong, elongate, elongation, &c.*

MAGNUS, great, **MAJOR**, greater.—*Magnitude, greatness, magnanimity, mental greatness, magnanimous, magnify, magnificence, magniloquence, master, magistrate, major, majority, majesty.*

MALUS, bad, evil.—*Malediction, a curse, malefactor, malice, malicious, malevolent, malevolence.*

MALIGNUS, envious, malicious.—*Malign, to defame, maligner, malignancy, malignant, malignity.*

MATURUS, ripe.—*Immature, unripe, immaturity, mature, ripe, well digested, maturely, maturity, premature, ripe too soon, prematurely.*

MEDIUS, middle.—*Medium, the middle, mediate, intervening, mediator, one who goes in the middle between two parties, mediatorial, mediatory, mediocrity, middle rate, immediate, intermediate, &c.*

MEMOR, mindful, keeping in mind.—*Memory, memorial, memorable, memoir, commemorate, immemorial, remember, &c.*

MIRUS, strange, wonderful.—*Admirable, admired, admiringly, admiration, miracle, miraculous.*

MISER, wretched.—*Misery, miserable, miser, miserly, commiserate, commiseration.*

MOLLIS, soft.—*Emolliate, to soften, emollient, softening, mollify, mollification.*

MULTUS, much, many.—*Multifarious, great variety, multiform, multilocular, having many cells, multiparous, having many at a birth, multiped, many feet, multiple, manifold, multiplicand, multiply, multiplication, multitude, multitudinous.*

MUTUUS, one another, each other.—Mutual, mutually.

NECESSÉ, (fr. *ne et cesso*), need-ful, absolutely necessary.—Necessary, necessarily, necessarian, necessities, necessity, necessitous.

NOVUS, new.—Newly, news, newsmonger, newspaper, novel, new, a tale, novelty, novice, one un instructed, renew, renewal, renovate, to make new, renovated, innovate, to introduce novelties.

PAR, Paris, like, equal.—Pair, compare, comparison, parity, likeness, disparage, disparity, inequality, incomparable, nonpareil, excellence unequalled, peer, an equal, a nobleman, peerless, peerage.

PRAVUS, crooked, wicked.—deprave, depraved, depravity, &c.

PRIMUS, first.—Prime, early, first-rate, primely, primer, primary, of the first, primarily, primate, primeval, original, ancient, primitive, primordial, first in order, prince, princess, princely, principal, principle, prior, priority, pristine, unprincipled.

PRIVUS, single, one's own, void of.—Privacy, retirement, private, privately, privateer privation, privative, privilege, deprive, &c.

PURUS, pure, clean.—Purely, purify, purification, puritan, impure, impurity.

PUTRIS, rotten, fetid.—Putrid, putrify, putrescence, state of rotting, putrefaction.

QUALIS, of what kind, such.—Quality, nature of a thing, qualify, to fit, to modify, qualification, disqualification, disqualification.

QUATUOR, four.—Quarter, a fourth part, quart, quarter, quadrant, a quarter of a circle, quadruple, quadrangle, quadrate, a square.

RATUS, established, fixed.—Rate, a fixed price, to value, ratable, ratify, to confirm, ratification, underrate.

RUDIS, rude, ignorant.—Rude, rudely, coarsely, unmannerly, rudiment, erudite, erudition, &c.

SACER, *sacri*, holy, devoted, sacred.—Sacred, sacredly, sacrifice, sacrilege, violating sacred things, consecrate, consecration, desecrate, desecration, execrate, execration, sacerdotal, &c.

SAGAX, *sagacis*, knowing, foreseeing.—Sagacious, acute, quick of thought, sagacity, sage, wise, sagely, presage, to foretell.

SANCTUS, holy, sacred.—Saint, a holy person, sanctify, sanctification, sanctimony.

SATIS, enough, sufficient.—Sate, to glut, sated, satiate, to glut, satiety, satisfy, satisfaction, saturate, unsatisfaction.

SENE, *senis*, old.—Senate, senator, senior, seniority, senile, peculiar to old age.

SEVERUS, rigorous, harsh, cruel.—Severe, severely, severity.

SIMILIS, like.—Similar, resembling, simile, similarity, similitude, simulation, pretence, act of feigning, resemble, assimilate, &c.

SOLIDUS, firm, hard, compact.—Solid, solidify, solidity, consolidate, to make firm, compact, solder, soldier, he who receives a solidus or piece of money for military service.

SOLUS, single, forlorn, alone.—Sole, solitary, soliloquize, soliloquy, a speech to oneself only, desolate, desolation.

VAGUS, wandering.—Vagrance, vagrant, vague, vagueness, extravagance, extravagant, &c.

VERUS, true.—Aver, to assert confidently, averment, verdict, verify, verity, truth, veracity, veracious, very, verily, truly.

VILIS, of small value, base, mean.—Reville, to reproach, reviled, vile, vileness, vilify, to make vile, to defame.



acted.—Act, to do something....
n. something done, actor, activity,
actual, really existing, actuate,
actuary, an accountant, agent,
agency, ambiguity, ambiguous,
acting round about, doubtful, co-
gent, enact, exact, exigence, inac-
tive, navigate, navigation, over-
act, react, transact, transaction.

AMO, to love....AMATUS, loved.
—Amiable, worthy to be loved,
amiably, amatory, amour, amor-
ous, amicable, amity, friendship,
enemy, enmity, inimical.

ARDEO, to burn, desire eagerly.
—Ardent, ardently, ardency, ar-
dour, arduous, arson, from *Arsus*,
setting fire to places.

AUDIO, to hear.—Audible, that
may be heard, audibly, audience,
audit, to examine an account, au-
ditor, auditory, inaudible.

AUGEO, to increase....auctus,
increased.—Augment, to increase,
augmentation, auction, a sale by
bidding competitively, auctioneer,
august, grand, author, authority,
unauthorized, &c.

CADO, to fall.—Case, casual, ac-
cidental, casualty, accident, casu-
ist, cascade, accident, an occur-

date, incense, perfume.
rage, incentive, motto,
diary.

CANO, to sing..CANTO
—Cant, canticle, a l
canto, chant, chanticlee
which crows, charm, d
canter, enchant, incanti

CAPIO, to take..CAPT
—Capable, capacious,
much, capacity, the power
in, captive, a prisoner
war, captor, capture, a
acceptation, anticipate
tion, captious, captivate
conceit, conceive, conce
cept, deception, emanc
cept, exception, imperc
capable, incapacity, i
tion, municipal, incipi
pancy, occupy, partici
ceive, precept, principle
recipient, susceptible, &

CEDO, to give up, to y
....CESSUS, p. p. gone,
—Cease, ceaseless, ce
tion, concede, concessio
to agree to, accession, a
going before, decease,
ceed, exceeding, excess,
inaccessible, incessant.

CENSEO, to value, to judge, to blame.—*Censor, a Roman officer, censorious, addicted to censure, censure, censurable, census, numbering the people.*

CERNO, to sift, see, distinguish, judge. **CRETUS**, p. p. sifted, judged.—Concern, concerning, decree, discern, discernment, discernible, discreet, discretion, discretionary, discriminate, excrement, excretion, secret, secretly, secretary, secrete.

CITO, (fr. *cito*, to move, or stir,) to call, to cite, to stir up.—*Cite, to summon into a court, excite, excitement, incite, to animate, recite, recitative, resuscitate, to call up again, to revive.*

CLAMO, to call out, to shout.—*Acclaim, acclamation, claimant, clamour, clamorous, declaim, declamation, noisy, passionate speech, exclaim, exclamation, irreclaimable, proclaim, proclamation, &c.*

CLAUDO (or **CLUDO**... *clausus*, closed,) to shut, to close.—*Clause, cloister, close, closet, conclude, conclusion, disclose, enclose, include, inclusive, preclude, &c.*

CLINO, to bend, to lean, to lie down.—*Decline, declension, incline, inclination, declivity, descent, acclivity, ascension, disinccline, recline, &c.*

CONCILIO, to unite, make friends.—*Conciliate, conciliatory, reconcile, reconciliation, &c.*

CREDO, to believe, to trust.—*Accredited, credence, credential, that which entitles to confidence, credible, credit, creditor, credulous, creed, incredible, incredulity.*

CREO, to make out of nothing, to create.—*Create, creation, creative, creature, Creator, procreate, recreant, recreation.*

CRESCO, to grow, to increase... **CRETUS**, grown.—*Concrete, to grow together into one mass, decrease, increase, excrescence, a*

growing out, recruit, recruiter.

CUBO, or **CUMBO**, to lie down, or recline at table.—*Cumber, cumbrance, incumbent, incubation, sitting upon eggs, incubus, recumbent, lying, leaning, succumb, to yield, recumbency.*

CURRO, to run.—*Concourse, a running together, concur, course, currency, cursory, discourse, excursion, a running out, or expedition, incur, incursion, inroad, invasion, intercourse, precursor, a forerunner, recur, recourse.*

DICO, to speak, to tell.—*Addict, to devote to, contradict, contradiction, diction, language, style, dictate, dictator, benediction, a blessing, edict, indicate, indication, indite, indictment, jurisdiction, malediction, predict, prediction.*

DO, to give... **DATUS**, given.—*Abandon, add, addition, condition, conditional, quality, state, date, dateless, donor, donation, edit, editor, perdition, recondite, &c.*

DOCEO, to teach... **DOCTUS**, taught.—*Docible, docile, docility, doctor, doctrine, doctrinal, document, documentary.*

DUCO, to bring, to lead, to draw.—*Abduce, abduction, a leading away, conduce, conducive, conduct, deduce, deduction, subtraction, duke, educate, education, educe, to bring out, induce, inducement, introduce, misconduct, produce, production, reduce, seduce, to corrupt, traduce.*

EMO, to buy, to redeem.—*Exempt, not liable, exemption, impromptu, peremptory, prompt, quick, ready, promptitude, redeem, to buy back, to ransom, &c.*

ENS, *entis*, being, (fr. *sum, I am, esse, to be*).—*Absent, being from or away, absentee, absence, co-essential, partaking of the same essence, entity, a real being, or existing, essence, the nature, substance, or being of any thing, essential, re-*

cessary to existence, disinterested, identity, exact sameness, interest, misrepresent, misrepresentation, nonentity, not existing, omnipresence, present, BEING before, not absent, presently, presentiment, previous conception, quintessence, 5th essence, the most essential part of any thing, represent, representation, representative.

EO, to go. . . **ITUS**, gone.—Ambient, surrounding, ambition, desire of honour or power, circuit, circuitous, exit, initial, initiate, obituary, perish, sedition, transient, transit, transition, transitory, circumambient, surrounding.

ERRO, to wander, to mistake.—Aberration, the act of wandering, arrant, infamous, err, error, erroneous, errata, errors in books, erratic, errand, unerring, unerringly.

FABRICO, to make, to frame.—Fabric, fabricate, fabrication, act of building, &c., fabricator.

FACIO, to make, to do. . . *factus*, done, or made.—Affect, to act upon, affection, love, affectation, false show, pretence, artifice, amplify, amplification, beatify, beautify, benefactor, one who does good, beneficence, counterfeit, defeat, defect, difficult, edify, edification, effect, a consequence, effective, effectual, fact, factor, faction, factious, forfeit, fortify, glorify, gratify, horrify, infect, magnify, manufacture, modify, munificence, notify, office, officiate, perfect, proficient, profit, prolific, purify, ramify, rectify, sacrifice, sanctify, satisfy, signify, sufficient, suffice, surfeit, testify, verify, versify, vivify, &c.

FARI, to speak.—Affable, courteous, affability, ineffable, unspeakable, infant, infancy, infantile, infanticide, preface, prefatory.

FENDO, to keep off, to strike.—Defend, defendant, an accused person, offence, offend, to displease, offensive, inoffensive.

FERO, to carry, bear, or suffer. . . **LATUS**, borne, or carried.—Circumference, carrying round, confer, to bestow, conference, defer, deference, differ, difference, different, dilate, elate, ferry, fertile, offer, prefer, preferment, proffer, refer, reference, suffer, sufferance, superlative, transfer.

FERVEO, to boil, to rage.—Effervesce, effervescence, a boiling up, fervency, fervent, fervid, hot, zealous, fermentation.

FIDO, to trust in, to confide.—Confide, to rely, confidence, confidential, diffident, not trusting, infidelity, want of faith, perfidy, treachery, perfidious, faith, faithful, faithless, fidelity.

FINGO, to form, to feign.—Fiction, act of feigning, a falsehood, fictitious, fictitious, counterfeit, feign, feint, figment, unfeigned.

FLECTO, to bend. . . **FLEXUS**, bent.—Deflect, to turn aside, flexible, flexibility, inflect, inflexible, that cannot be bent, moved, reflect, reflection, reflexible, &c.

FLIGO, to beat, or strike.—Afflict, to give pain, affliction, conflict, striking against one another, contest, inflict, infliction.

FLUO, to flow.—Affluence, plenty, riches, affluent, confluence, joining of streams, confluent, defluxion, flowing down of humours, efflux, effluvia, influx, influence, influential, reflux, superfluous, superfluity.

FRANGO, to break. . . **FRACTUS**, broken.—Fringe, fraction, a broken part, fracture, fragile, frail, frailty, infringe, to break a contract, infraction, refract, refractory, obstinate, suffrage, &c.

FRUOR, to enjoy, to reap the fruit of.—Fructify, to make fruitful, fruit, fruitful, fruitfulness, fruitless, fruitage, fruiterer, fruition.

FUGIO, to flee.—Fugacious, fleeting, fugitive, febrile, refuge,

refugee, subterfuge, vermifuge, centrifugal.

FULGEO, to shine.—Fulgent, shining, fulgency, effulgence, lustre, refulgence, refulgent.

FUNDO, to pour, to melt.—Affuse, affusion, pouring upon, effusion, fusion, act of melting, fusibility, confound, confuse, confusion, diffuse, profuse, profusion, suffuse, transfuse.

FUTO, to blame, to disprove.—Confute, confutation, refute, refutation.

GERO, to bear, to carry.—**GESTUS**, carried.—Gesture, action, posture, gesticulation, belligerent, waging war, congestion, collection of matter, digest, digestion, indigestion, suggest, suggestion.

GIGNO, to beget.—**GENITUS**, begotten.—Genial, genius, general, generate, generation, a family or race, generous, generic, peculiar to a genus, gender, genus, a class comprising many species, genuine, gentle, congenial, degenerate, ingenious, primogeniture, being first-born, progeny, regenerate, &c.

GRADIOR, (fr. *gradus*) to go step by step.—**GRESSUS**, stepped.—Aggress, aggression, the first act of injury, congress, degrade, degradation, disgrace, degree, digress, digression, egress, going out of, grade, gradation, progress step by step, gradient, steepness, gradual, ingredient, ingress, progress, progression, progressive, retrograde, going backwards, transgress, transgression, &c.

HABEO, to have, to hold.—**HABITUS**, had, held.—Able, ability, disable, disability, debilitate, to weaken, exhibit, exhibition, habilliment, dress, habit, habitation, inhabit, inhabitant, prohibit, to hinder, unable, &c.

HÆREO, to stick, to adhere.—**HÆSUS**, stuck, or adhered.—Adhere, to stick to, adherence, cohere,

coherent, sticking together, consistent, cohesion, hesitate, hesitancy, incoherent, loose, inherent, sticking in, innate, &c.

HORREO, to dread, to be rough and look terrible.—Abhor, to hate bitterly, abhorrence, horrible, horrid, horror, horrific.

HUMEO, to be wet or moist.—Humectate, to make wet, humid, humidity, humour, humoral, relating to the humours, humorist, humorous, jocular, pleasant, &c.

JACEO, to lie.—Adjacent, lying to, or near, circumjacent, lying round, interjacent, jacent, subjacent.

JACIO, to throw, to cast.—**JACTUS**, thrown or cast.—Abject, mean, abjectness, adjective, conjecture, to guess, deject, dejection, eject, to expel, ejection, ejaculate, inject, to throw in, injection, interjection, object, objection, project, to scheme, projectile, reject, to refuse, rejection, subject, subjection, &c.

JUNGO, to join.—**JUNCTUS**, joined.—Adjoin, to join to, adjunct, something joined to, conjoin, to associate, conjugal, conjunction, disjoin, disjunction, disunion, join, joint, joiner, junction, rejoin, rejoinder, answer to a reply, subjoin, subjunction, subjunctive, joined under.

LABOR, to slip or slide.—**LAPSUS**, slipped.—Lapse, fall, collapse, to fall closely together, elapse, to glide away, relapse, to fall back again.

LEGO, to send as ambassador, to bequeath.—**LEGATUS**, sent.—Allege, to affirm, to plead an excuse, allegation, legation, an embassy, legacy, legate, legatee, colleague, delegate, &c.

LEGO, to gather, to read, to choose.—**LECTUS**, chosen, read.—Collect, collector, collective, dialect, diligent, eclectic, selecting,

elect, election, elegance, eligible, illegible, inelegance, intellect, *the power of understanding*, intellectual, intelligent, intelligible, lecture, legible, *readable*, lesson, lexicon, neglect, neglectful, negligence, &c.

LEVO, to lift up, raise.—Alleviate, to make light, elevate, to raise up, irrelevant, *not to the purpose*, leaven, lever, levity, lift, relevant, relieve, relief.

LIGO, to bind, to tie. LIGATUS, bound.—League, a confederacy, liable, liability, ligament, ligature, a band, oblige, obligation, religion.

LINGVO, to forsake, to leave. LICTUS, forsaken, left.—Delinquent, an offender, dereliction, abandonment, relict, relinquish, relinquishment.

LOQUOR, to speak. LOCUTUS, spoken.—Allocation, manner of speaking to, circumlocution, round about speaking, colloquy, colloquial, relating to conversation, elocution, eloquence, grandiloquence, magniloquence, elegant speaking, loquacity, loquacious, of much talk, soliloquy, ventriloquism, ventriloquist.

LUDO, to play, deceive. LUSUS, played.—Allude, to hint, allusion, collude, collusive, *deceptive*, collusion, delude, delusion, elude, illusion, interlude, ludicrous, prelude.

LUO, to wash, to purge. LUTUS, washed.—Abluent, ablution, a cleansing, alluvial, *that has been washed down a river*, deluge, antediluvian, dilute, to make thin or weak, diluent, pollute.

MANDO, to commit, to command.—Command, commend, commendable, countermand, demand, mandate, an order, recommend.

MANEO, to stay, to abide.—Manse, a habitation, parsonage-house, mansion, permanence, permanent, abiding, durable, remain, remainder, remnant.

MEDEOR, to cure, to heal.—Medical, relating to physic, medicine, medicinal, having power to heal, medicate, remedy, a cure, remediable, remedial, curable, remediless.

MERGO, to plunge, dip, overwhelm. MERSUS, dipped, plunged.—Emerge, to rise out of, emergency, immerge, immerse, to put under water, immersion, merge, submerge, submersion.

METIOR, to measure. MENSUS, measured.—Mete, to measure, measure, mensuration, commensurate, proportionable, dimension, immense, immensity, infinity.

MIGRO, to remove, change the abode.—Emigrant, emigrate, emigration, immigration, to remove into a place, migrate, migration, migratory, changing residence, transmigration.

MINEO, to jut out, hang over.—Eminent, high, dignified, eminence, elevation, eminently, pre-eminent, pre-eminency, prominence, prominent, supereminent.

MISCO, to mix, or mingle. MISTUS, or MIXUS, mingled.—Admixture, commingle, intermixture, mingle, miscellany, miscellaneous, comprising various kinds, mix, mixture, promiscuous, unmingled, unmingled.

MITTO, to send. MISSUS, sent.—Admit, admission, admissible, commission, a trust, a charge, commit, commitment, committee, compromise, to adjust by concession, demise, to grant by will, dismiss, dismissal, emissary, emit, to send forth, inadmissible, intermission, intermit, manumit, mission, missionary, omit, omission, permit, permission, permissive, promise, submit.

MONEO, to put in mind, to warn. MONITUS, warned.—Admonition, admonitory, monition, monitor, monitory, monument, premo-

nition, premonitory, summons.

MOVEO, to move....**MOTUS**, moved.—Commotion, *tumult*, emotion, *mental disturbance*, immoveable, locomotion, *power of moving from place to place*, mob, mobile, mobility, *the power of being moved*, moment, motion, move, moveable, movement, promote, promotion, remote, remove, removal, removeable.

MUTO, to change.—Commute, *to change with*, commutable, immutable, mutable, *changeable*, mutability, mutation, mutableness, tranmute, transmutation.

NASCOR, to be born....**NATUS**, born.—Innate, *inbred*, nascent, growing, natal, nation, national, native, natural, naturalist, supernatural, *above nature*, cognate, *related by blood*.

NOCEO, to hurt, injure.—Innocence, *simplicity*, purity, innocence, innocuous, *harmless*, noxious, *hurtful*, nuisance, obnoxious, liable, exposed.

NOSCO, to know....**NOTUS**, known.—Acknowledge, acknowledgment, cognizance, *to own*, foreknow, ignoble, *mean*, ignominy, know, knowledge, knowingly, noble, nobility, *nota-bene*, *note well*, note, notice, notify, notion, notorious, recognize, recognition, unknown.

NUNCIO, to bring news, to announce.—Announce, *to proclaim*, announcement, denounce, enunciate, *to declare*, nuncio, *an ambassador from the pope*, pronounce, pronouncement, renounce.

NUTRIO, to nourish, to suckle.—Nourish, nourishment, nurse, nursery, nurture, nutriment, *that which nourishes*, nutritious.

ORIUR, to rise, to spring....**ORTUS**, risen.—Abortion, *untimely birth*, abortive, orient, *rising as the sun*, eastern, oriental, origin, source, *beginning*, original, originality, originate, &c.

ORO, to speak, beg, pray.—Adore, *to worship*, adoration, inexorable, *not to be moved*, oracle, oracular, orison, *a prayer*, oral, spoken, *not written*, orally, orator, oratory, oration, oratorically, oratorio, orifice, &c.

PANDO, to unfold, to spread.—Expand, *to open out*, expanded, expanse, expansible, expansion, expansive.

PARO, to make ready, to prepare.—Apparatus, apparel, dis-sever, imperative, imperial, imperious, inseparable, irreparable, parade, prepare, preparative, preparatory, preparation, repair, separate, separation, sever, several, &c.

PATIOR, to suffer, endure....**PASSUS**, suffered.—Compassion, pity, sympathy, compassionate, dispassionate, impassive, impatience, impatient, *not able to bear pain*, passion, *motion of the mind*, passionate, passive, patient, *enduring*, *a sick person*, patience.

PELLO, to call, to name.—Appeal, appellation, *a name*, repeal, *to undo*, unrepealed.

PELLO, to drive, to strike....**PULSUS**, driven.—Compel, *to force*, compulsion, compulsory, dispel, *to drive away*, expel, expulsion, impulse, impulsive, *communicating force*, propel, pulsation, pulse, repel, repellent, repulsion, *act of driving back*.

PENDEO, to hang.—Append, *to hang to*, depend, dependency, dependent, *hanging down*, subordinate, *relying on*, impend, impending, *hanging over*, independent, independence, pendent, pending, pendulum, perpendicular, propense, suspend, suspense.

PENDO, to weigh, to lay out.—Compendium, *a brief compilation*, compendious, compensate, compensation, dispense, *to distribute*, dispensation, dispensary, expend, expense, expensive, indispensable.

pensive, pension, pensioner, &c.

PENITEO, for **PENITEO**, to repent.—Impenitent, pain, painful, pang, penal, penance, penitent, penitence, penitential, repent, repentance, &c.

PERIOR, to try, to prove.—Expert, skilful, expertly, experiment, experience, expertness, inexperience, inexpert.

PETO, to seek, to ask. . . **PETITUS**, sought.—Appetence, desire, appetite, centripetal, centre seeking, compatible, compete, competition, competence, a sufficiency, competitor, impetus, impulse, impetuous, incompatible, incompetent, petition, repeat, repetition.

PINGO, to paint. . . **PICTUS**, painted. . . Depict, to paint, to describe, paint, painting, pictorial, picture, pictural, pigment, paint, colour, picturesque, like a picture.

PLACEO, to please.—Complacence, pleasure of mind, complaisance, obliging treatment, complaisant, displease, displeasure, placid, please, pleasant, pleasantry, pleasure, &c.

PLAUDO, to applaud, to praise. . . **PLAUSUS**, praised.—Applaud, to express pleasure by clapping the hands, applause, explode, to go off, explosion, plaudit, applause, plausible, specious.

PLEO, to fill. . . **PLETUS**, filled.—Accomplish, to complete, accomplishment, complement, a full supply, complete, full, perfect, compliment, expletive, something to fill up, implement, incomplete, depletion, an emptying, plethora, replete, supplement, supply, &c.

PLICO, to fold, to knit. . . **PLICATUS**, folded.—Apply, applicable, application, close study, a thing applied, complex, entangled, complexion, complicate, comply, display, double, duplicate, explication, explicative, explicit, plain, clear, imply, implicit, implicate,

inexplicable, multiply, perplex, perplexity, pliable, pliant, reply, simple, simpleton, simplicity, simplify, supply, supplicate, supplication, &c.

PLORO, to cry out, weep, wail.—Deplore, to bewail, deplorable, explore, to try to discover, implore, implorer, unexplored.

PONO, to put or place. . . **POSITUS**, placed.—Apposite, fit, component, composition, compositor, compound, decompose, decomposition, deponent, dispose, disposition, discompose, expose, exposure, exposition, expository, impose, imposition, impostor, indispose, interpose, interposition, oppose, opposition, post, positive, position, posture, postpone, repose, suppose, supposition, transpose, &c.

PORTO, to carry, to bear.—Comport, to agree, comfortable, deportment, conduct, export, exportation, import, to bring in, important, importune, to beg earnestly, importunity, opportune, opportunity, porter, a carrier, strong beer, portable, purport, report, support, transport.

PREHENDO, to take hold, to seize. . . **PREHENSUS**, seized.—Apprehend, to lay hold on, to fear, apprehension, the faculty of conceiving ideas, comprehend, to include, understand, comprise, enterprise, impregnable, that cannot be taken, reprehend, &c.

PREMO, to press. . . **PRESSUS**, pressed.—Compress, to press together, depress, express, expression, expressive, impress, impression, imprint, oppress, oppression, press, pressure, print, printing, reprint, suppress, &c.

PROBO, to prove, to try. . . **PROBATUS**, proved.—Approve, to like, approval, approbation, disapprobation, disapproval, improbable, improve, improvement, probable, probability, probation, probe,

probit, proof, prove, reprobate, reprove, reproof, &c.

PUNGO, to point, to prick.—PUNCTUS, pricked.—Compunction, remorse, expunge, to cross out, poignant, sharp, severe, point, pointedly, punctilious, exact in conduct, punctual, pungent, puncture, a pierced hole, punctuation.

PUTO, to prune, think, adjust... PUTATUS, pruned, thought.—Account, accountant, amputate, to cut off, compute, to reckon, computation, count, depute, deputy, dispute, impute, to ascribe to, imputation, indisputable, recount, repute, to account, reputation, credit, good name.

QUÆRO, to ask, seek, obtain... QUÆSITUS, sought.—Acquire, to obtain, acquisition, disquisition, examination, inquire, inquisitive, inquisitorial, inquisition, perquisite, quest, search, question, an asking, query, request, require, requisite.

RADO, to scrape, to shave..RASUS, shaved.—Abrade, to rub off, abrasion, erase, to rub out, erasure, raze, to subvert from the foundation, razor, rasure.

RAPIO, to snatch, carry away by force....RAPTUS, snatched.—Enrapture, to transport with pleasure, rap, rapid, rapidity, rapture, rapturous, rapine, plunder, ravish.

REGO, to rule, or govern..RECTUS, governed.—Correct, to amend, correction, corrigible, direct, direction, erect, upright, incorrect, indirect, interregnum, time between two reigns, rectify, rectitude, reign, regal, regalia, ensigns of royalty, regency, regent, region, regular, regulate, &c.

RIDEO, to laugh, to mock....RISUS, laughed.—Deride derision, derisive, ridicule, scorn, ridiculous, risible, exciting laughter, risibility.

ROGO, to ask, to request....RO-

GATUS, requested.—Abrogate, to repeal, abrogation, arrogance, haughtiness, arrogant, derogate, to lessen the value, derogatory, interrogate, to question, interrogation, interrogatory, prerogative, an exclusive privilege, prorogue, to put off, rogation, supplication, surrogate, a deputy.

RUMPO, to break, burst..RUP-TUS, broken.—Abrupt, broken, craggy, bankrupt, corrupt, wicked, rotten, disrapture, incorruption, interrupt, irruption, a bursting in, rupture, a break, breach, &c.

SALIO, to leap, to jump.—Assail, assault, to attack, consul, consular, consult, counsel, desultory, from one thing to another, exult, to leap for joy, insult, a leaping on, to deride, pro-consul, resilience, springing back, result, salient, leaping, bounding.

SCANDO, to go, to climb, to mount.—Ascend, to go up, ascendant, ascension, ascent, condescend, to stoop, condescension, descend, descension, scan, to examine closely, scanning, transcend, to rise above, to excel, transcendent, supremely excellent.

SCINDO, to cut..SCISSUS, cut.—Abscind, to cut off, abscission, rescind, to cancel, scissors.

SCIO, to know.—Conscience, conscientious, regulated by conscience, conscious, knowing, omniscience, knowledge of every thing, science, scientific, sciolist, a person of superficial knowledge, prescience, foreknowledge.

SCRIBO, to write....SCRIPTUS, written.—Ascribe, to write, or impute to, ascription, circumscribe, to limit, conscript, describe, description, descriptive, inscribe, to write on, inscription, manuscript, prescribe, prescription, prescribe, to doom to destruction, scribe, scribble, subscribe, subscription, scripture, transcribe.

*close to work, assize, besiege, consider, considerable, dispossess, insidious, sly, treacherous, possess, possession, prepossess, pre-
side, president, repossess, reside, residence, residue, sedan, sedate, sedentary, inactive, session, sediment, subside, subsidiary, helping, subsidy, supersede.*

SENTIO, to feel, to think. SENSUS, perceived.—Assent, *to agree to, consent, dissent, to differ from, dissension, insensate, wanting sensibility, insensible, nonsense, presentiment, resent, scent, sense, sensation, sensible, sensitive, sensual, pleasing to the senses.*

SEQUOR, to follow. SECUTUS, followed.—Consecutive, *successive, consequence, effect, consequent, execute, obsequies, persecute, prosecute, pursue, pursuit, sequel, sequence, subsequent.*

SERVIO, to serve, to obey.—Deserve, *to merit, serve, service, servicable, servile, mean, slavish, servitude, subserviency.*

SERVO, to keep, to save.—Conserve, *to keep safe, a preserve, conservative, observe, observation, preserve, preservation, unreserved.*

SISTO, to stop, to stand. STA-

SPECIO, to see, to look. TUS, seen.—Aspect, *apt, auspicious, circumspect, conspicuous, despicable, despite, disrespect, expectation, inspect, inspection, cuity, perspicuous, clear, prospective, respect, re-
special, species, specific, spectacle, spectator, specu-
pect, suspicion, &c.*

SPIRO, to breathe.—Aspirant *after, aspiration, cor-
agree together, conspiracy, expire, to die, inspire, to
animate, inspiration, perspi-
ration, respire, to breathe,
spiration, spirit, spiritua-
ualize, transpire.*

SPONDEO, to promise. SUS, promised.—Despond, *spair, despondent, espousal, respond, to answer, sponsor, spouse.*

STERNO, to spread, to down.—Consternation, *ter-
confounds, prostrate, prostratum, a layer, strata, straw, street, substratum.*

STINGUO, to prick, mark, Contradistinction, *distinction, oppose, distinguish,*

stitute, constitution, contract, destitute, distance, establish, estate, extant, instance, instability, instant, institute, outstanding, priest prostitute, rest, solstice, stab, stable, stability, stanch, stand, standard, state, statesman, station, stationary, stationery, statue, statute, stay, steadfast, steady, substance, substitute, superstition, understanding, &c.

STREPO, to make a noise.—Obstreperous, *noisy, clamorous*, obstreperously, obstreperousness, strepent, *noisy*, streperous.

STRINGO, to bind, contract, hold fast.—Astringe, to bind together, astringent, binding, astrict, to bind, astricted, constrict, to bind, to cramp, constriction, constrain, to compel, constraint, restrain, restraint, restrict, to limit, restrictive, straight, straightway, strain, unrestricted.

STRUO, to build...STRUCTUS, built.—Construe, to explain, to interpret, construct, to form, to build, construction, deobstruct, to remove obstructions, deobstruent, destroy, to pull down, destruction, destructible, destructive, indestructibility, instruct, instruction, instrument, instrumental, instrumentality, obstruct, to block up, obstruction, obstruent, structure, superstructure.

STUPEO, to want sensibility, to astonish.—Stupefy, stupid, dull, senseless, stupidly, stupor, stupefaction, insensibility, stupendous.

SUADEO, to advise...SUASUS, advised.—Assuage, to soften, to mitigate, dissuade, dissuasive, persuade, to bring over to an opinion or course, persuasible, persuasion, persuasive, persuasiveness, persuasory, suable, swasion, the act of persuading.

SUDO, to sweat.—Exude, to sweat out, to emit, exudation, sudorific, causing sweat, sweat, sweaty.

SUMO, to take...SUMPTUS, taken.—Assume, to take to or upon one, assumed, assumption, assumptive, consume, to waste, to destroy, consumption, consumptive, presume, to suppose, presumption, presumptive, presumptuous, arrogant, confident, reassume, resume, to take back, to commence again, resumption, resumptive.

TANGO, to touch...TACTUS, touched.—Attain, to come to, or reach, to gain, attainment, contact, a touching, contagion, disease caught by touching, contiguity, contiguous, touching, near, contiguity, contingency, accident, casual event, contingent, entire, tact, touch, feeling, skill, taction, tangent, a line touching a circle, tangible, perceptible by the touch.

TEGO, to cover...TECTUS, covered.—Detect, to uncover, detected, detection, integument, a covering, a membrane, protect, protection, protective, protector, protectorate, government by a protector, tegular, tegument, a covering.

TEMPERO, to mix, regulate, temper.—Attemper, to soften, regulate, temper, to moderate, distemper, intemperance, intemperate, temperament, temperance.

TENDO, to stretch, to go, to strive...TENSUS, or TENTUS, stretched.—Attend, attendance, attention, a stretching towards, civility, coextend, contend, to strive, contention, contentious, distend, to stretch out wide, extend, to spread out, extensive, extension, intend, to mean, to design, intense, intenseness, intent, intention, intensive, ostensible, apparent, ostentation, external show, portend, to foreshow, portent, portentous, ominous, pretend, pretender, pretension, superintend, tend, tendency, tender, tendon, tense, tent.

TENEO, to hold...TENTUS, held.—Abstain, to forbear, to hold

from, abstemious, abstinence, *forbearance*, appertain, appurtenance, contain, content, contentment, contentful, continence, *chastity*, continue, continually, continuance, continuation, countenance, detain, detention, discontent, discontinue, discountenance, entertain, entertaining, entertainment, impertinence, impertinent, *meddling*, incontinence, lieutenant, maintain, maintenance, malcontent, obtain, obtainable, pertain, pertinacious, pertinent, *to the purpose*, retain, retentive, sustain, *to support*, sustenance, tenacious, *holding fast*, tenacity, tenant, tenantry, tenement, tenet, tenure, untenable.

TERO, to rub, to wear. TRITUS, worn.—Attrition, *wearing away by rubbing*, contrite, worn, bruised, penitent, contrition, *sorrow for sin*, detriment, *worn off*, damage, detrimental, trite, *worn out*, common, stale, triturate, *to rub to powder*.

TERREO, to frighten.—Deter, *to stop by fear*, determent, terror, terrible, terribly, terrify, terrific, undeterred.

TIMEO, to fear.—Intimidate, *to frighten*, intimidation, timid, timidly, timidity, *want of courage*, timorous, timorousness.

TOLERO, to bear, to endure.—Intolerable, *not to be borne*, intolerance, intolerant, tolerable, tolerance, tolerant, tolerate, *to suffer*, *to permit*, toleration.

TORQUEO, to twist, to writhe. TORTUS, twisted.—Contort, *to twist together*, contortion, distort, *twisted out of form*, distortion, extort, *to draw from by force*, extortion, extortioner, retort, *to throw back*, torment, torture, pain, anguish, tortuous, twisted.

TRAHO, to draw. TRACTUS, drawn.—Abstract, *an epitome*. v. *to separate ideas*, abstraction, attract, attraction, betray, be-

trayal, contract, contraction, detract, *to slander*, detraction, entreat, distract, distraction, drag, draw, extract, extraction, intractable, intractability, portrait, *picture of a face drawn from the life*, portray, protract, *to draw out*, lengthen, protraction, retract, *to draw back*, recant, retreat, subtract, subtraction, trace, *a mark drawn, or made, a footstep*, remains. .v. *to mark out*, *to draw*, traceable, track, tract, traction, tractile, trade, tradesman, trail, train, treason treat treatise, treaty

TREMO, to shake, to shudder.—Tremble, trembling, trembler, tremendous, *that which produces fear*, terrible, tremendously, tremor, *an involuntary trembling*, tremulous, tremulousness.

TRIBUO, to give, grant.—Attribute, *to ascribe to*, n. *inherent quality*, contribute, contribution, contributive, distribute, distribution, distributive, retribute, *to pay back*, retribution, requital, return, tribute, tributary.

TRUDO, to push, to thrust. TRUSUS, thrust.—Abstruse, *thrust from or away*, difficult to comprehend, extrude, *to thrust out*, extrusion, intrude, *to thrust in*, intrusion, intrusive, obtrude, *to thrust into*, obtrusion, obtrusive, protrude, *to thrust forward*, protrusion, thrust.

TUMEO, to swell, to puff up.—Contumacy, *a swelling against*, obstinacy, haughtiness, contumacious, contumely, entomb, entombment, tomb, tumble, tumefy, *to swell*, puff up, tumid, swelled, tumour, *a swelling*, tumult, tumultuous, noisy.

UNDO, to rise in surges, to boil.—Abound, *to have, or be in plenty*, abundance, abundant, inundate, *to overflow*, inundation, rebound, *to be sent back by reaction*, *to result*, redundancy, excess,

redundant, superabound, superabundant, undulate, *to move up and down, like a wave.*

UTOR, to use. . . . USUS, use. — Abuse, *to treat ill*, abusive, abusively, abusiveness, disuse, disusage, inutile, *useless*, inutility, disabuse, misuse, peruse, unused, unusual, use, usage, *treatment*, useful, usefulness, useless, usual, usury, usurp, usurpation.

VACILLO, to move to and fro. — Fickle, *wavering*, fickleness, vacillate, *to waver*, vacillation, wag.

VADO, to go. . . . VASUS, gone. — Evade, *to elude*, to avoid, evasion, evasive, *evasively*, invade, *to assault*, to attack, invader, invasion, invasive, pervade, *to spread through*, pervasion, vade-mecum, *literally, go with me*, a favourite article carried about the person, wade, *to walk through water.*

VALEO, to be well or strong. — Avail, *to be of advantage*, available, profitable, powerful, convalescence, *renewal of health*, convalescent, countervail, *to balance*, to compensate, equivalence, equality of worth or power, equivalent, invalid, a sick person, invalidate, *to weaken*, invaluable, over-value, prevail, prevailing, prevalent, prevalence, unavailable, unavailing, valediction, a bidding farewell, valedictory, valetudinarian, a sickly person, valetudinary, valiant, heroic, value, valuable.

VEHO, to carry. . . . VECTUS, carried. — Convex, *bending externally*, convexly, convexity, convey, conveyance, conveyancer, inveigh, *to censure*, to rail against, invective, railing speech, vehemence, violence, force, strength, vehement, vehicle, veterinary, vex, vexation, vexatious, weigh, weighty.

VELO, to cover, to conceal. — Develop, development, envelope, to enclose, hide, reveal, revelation, veil, veil, vellum, unrevealed.

VENIO, to go, to come. . . VENTUS, come. — Advent, *coming of Christ*, adventitious, casual, accidental, adventure, enterprise, avenue, a passage, circumvent, *to deceive*, contravene, convene, convenience, convenient, convent, convention, covenant, covenanter, event, eventual, inconvenient, intervene, intervention, invent, inventive, invention, inventory, misadventure, prevent, prevention, revenue, venture, venturesome.

VERTO, to turn. . . VERTUS, turned. — Advert, *to turn to*, refer to, advertency, adverse, adversity, advertise, animadvert, anniversary, avert, *to turn from*, averse, controvert, *to debate*, controversy, controversial, convert, conversion, converse, divert, *to turn aside*, to please, diversion, divers, diversity, divorce, divorcement, inadventure, incontrovertible, introvert, *to turn inwards*, invert, *to turn upside down*, obverse, perverse, stubborn, pervert, *to corrupt*, revert, *to fall back*, subvert, *to overthrow*, transverse, across, traverse, universe, universal, version, verse, versatile, variable, easily turned.

VIDEO, to see. . . . VISUS, seen. — Advice, instruction, counsel, advise, envy, envying, evidence, proof, evident, evidently, imprudence, imprudence, invidious, envious, malignant, invisible, provide, providence, provision, proviso, prudence, prudent, purvey, review, revise, revision, revisit, supervise, survey, view, visage, visible, visit, visitant, visual.

VIDUO, to deprive of, to part. — Avoid, *to shun*, avoidable, device, scheme, contrivance, deviser, devoid, vacant, empty, divide, dividend, individual, indivisible, subdivide, void, voidable, widow.

VINCO, to conquer, to overcome. . . VICTUS, conquered. — Convince, *to satisfy the mind by evidence*, convince

vict, to prove guilty, evince, evincibly, eviction, *dispossession*, invincible, not to be overcome, province, provincialism, a mode of speaking in a province, vanquish, victim, victor, victory, victorious.

VIVO, to live, . . VICTUS, lived.—Convivial, *festal, social*, revive, revivify, reviviscence, *renewal of life*, survive, to outlive, survivor, unrevived, viand, victual, n. victuals, food, vital, essential to life, vitality, vivid, vivify.

VOCO, to call, . . VOCATUS, called.—Advocate, *one who pleads*, advocacy, avocation, *business that calls*, avouch, to affirm, convocation, convoke, to call together, equivocal, ambiguous, equivocation, evoke, to appeal, evocation, invoke, to call upon, irrevocable, provocation, provoke, revocable, revocation, revoke, to repeal, vocal, vocation, voice, vouch, vouchsafe, vowel.

VOLO, to will, to be willing.—Benevolence, *good will, kindness*, benevolent, involuntary, indepen-

dent of the will, malevolence, ill-will, volition, the act or power of willing, voluntary, acting from choice, voluntary, volunteer.

VOLVO, to roll. . VOLTUS, rolled.—Circumcise, circumvolution, a turning round, convolute, twisted, devolve, involve, involute, revolt, revolution, revolve, to roll round, to meditate, revolutionize, voluble, volume, voluminous, volute, a spiral scroll at the top of a column.

VORO, to eat, to devour.—Devour, to eat up, devouringly, carnivorous, feeding on flesh, graminivorous, eating grass, herbivorous, feeding on herbs, insectivorous, feeding on insects, omnivorous, feeding on every thing, ossivorous, feeding on bones, piscivorous, feeding on fishes, vermivorous, feeding on worms, voracity, voracious.

VOVO, to vow. . VOTUS, vowed.—Avow, to own, acknowledge, declare, avowal, avowedly, devote, to dedicate by vow, devotedness, devotion, praise, prayer.

DERIVATIVES FROM GREEK ROOTS.

THE GREEK ALPHABET.

Names.	Caps.	Small.	Sound.	Names.	Caps.	Small.	Sound.
Alpha	A	α	a	Nu	N	ν	n
Beta	B	β	b	Xi	Ξ	ξ	x
Gamma	Γ	γ	g*	Omicron	O	ο	o sh
Delta	Δ	δ	d	Pi	Π	π	p
Epsilon	E	ε	e short	Rho	P	ρ	r
Zeta	Z	ζ	z	Sigma	Σ	σ, s†	s
Eta	H	η	ee†	Tau	T	τ	t
Theta	Θ	θ	th	Upsilon	Υ	υ	u
Iota	I	ι	i	Phi	Φ	φ	ph
Kappa	K	κ	k	Chi	Χ	χ	ch
Lambda	Λ	λ	l	Psi	Ψ	ψ	p
Mu	M	μ	m	Omega	Ω	ω	o

* Hard, as in good. † Or e long. ‡ Final. § Hard, as in e

Ἀγγέλλω, *angelo*, *to bring tidings.—Angel, a messenger, a heavenly being, angelic, angelical, angelicalness, archangel, (arche, angelos,) evangelist, one of the four writers of the gospels, a preacher, evangelism, evangelical, evangelize.

ἄγω, *ago*, to drive or lead ... αγωγος, a leader, a driver.—Demagogue, a leader of the populace, hydragogue, a medicine for increasing the secretions and excretions, emmenagogue, mystagogue, an explainer of mysteries, paragogue, a letter or syllable added to a word, pedagogue, stratagem, synagogue.

ἄγων, *agon*, a combat, strife, a writhing.—Agony, violent pain, agonistes, a prize-fighter, agonism, agonistic, agonize, agonizingly, antagonistic, antagonistical.

Ἄδαμας, (fr. δαμαω,) *adammas*, adamant, a very hard stone.—Adamantian, adamantine, hard, diamond.

Ἄηρ, *aer*, the air.—Aerial, belonging to the air, high, lofty, aeriform, having the form of air, aerify, aerolite, a meteoric stone, aerology, aerometer, a measurer or weigher of air, aeronaut, one who sails in the air, aerostation, air, airy, airiness, artery, ether, refined air, meteor, meteoric.

Ἀκαδημία, *academia*, a grove of Athens, where Plato taught philosophy.—Academy,

a school, a place of education, academian, academic, academical, academician, academist.

Ἀκουω, *akouo*, to hear.—Acoustic, relating to hearing, acoustics, theory of sounds, diacoustics.

Ἄλγος, *algos*, pain of body, or of mind.—Antalgic, opposed to pain, cardialgia, heart-burn, cephalalgia, headache, odontalgia, toothache, otalgia, earache.

Ἀλλεγορία, *allegoria*, allegory; (fr. allos, agora.)—Allegory, a figurative discourse, implying something not literally expressed, allegoric, allegorical, allegorically, allegorist, allegorize.

Ἀλλελων, *allelon*, one another, each other.—Parallel, (para allelon) like, equal, &c., parallelable, parallelism.

Ἄλφα, *alpha*, first letter in the Greek Alphabet.—Alpha, alphabet, alphabetical, alphabetically.

Ἄνεμος, *anemos*, the wind.—Anemone, the wind-flower, anemography, anemoscope, anemometer.

Ἄνθρωπος, *aner*, *andros*, a man.—Androgyne, androgynal, having two sexes, Andrew, Alexander, Alexandria, androphagus, a man-eater.

Ἄνθος, *anthos*, a flower.—Anther, tip of a flower stamen, anthology, a collection of flowers or poems, anthological, antho-

* When the letter γ, gamma, or g, is in duplicate, the first is sounded like *ng*.

mania, exanthematous, eruptive, efflorescent, exanthemata, helianthus, sun-flower, polyanthus.

Ἀνθρωπος, *anthropos*, a man.—Anthropology, a discourse on man, anatomy of man, anthropomorphite, a believer that the Deity has a human form, anthropopathy, man's affections, anthropophagi, cannibals, anthropophagy, anthroposophy, lycanthropy, madness, misanthropic, hating mankind, misanthropy, philanthropist, philanthropy, the love of man, philanthropic.

Ἀρχή, *arche*, the beginning, authority, government, part of a circle.—Anarch, author of confusion, anarchy, anarchical, antimonarchical, arch, chief, principal, roguish, sly, archly, shrewdly, waggishly, archness, archaiology, archæology, knowledge of antiquity, archaism, an ancient phrase, archangel, archbishop, archbishopric, archdeacon, archdeaconry, archduke, archduchess, archetype, the original, archdiaconal, archiepiscopal, relating to an archbishop, architect, a designer and builder, architectural, architrave, part of an entablature resting on the capital, archives, a place for ancient records, archipelago, heptarchy, government of seven kings, hierarchy, ecclesiastical government, rank of celestial beings, monarch, monarchical, monarchical, monarchy, oligarchy, government by a small number, patriarch, patriarchal, tetrarch.

Ἀργος, *argos*, idle, inactive.—Lethargy, morbid drowsiness, lethargic, lethargically.

Ἀριστος, *aristos*, the noblest, or the best.—Aristocracy, aristocrat, aristocratic, aristocratical, relating to government by the nobles—aristocracy.

Ἀριθμος, *arithmos*, number.—Arithmetic, arithmetical, arithmetically, arithmetician, logarithms.

Ἀρτηρία, *arteria*, the wind-pipe.—Artery, arterial.

Ἄστρον, *astron*, a star.—Aster, a star, or flower, asterisk, astral, starry, asteroid, a small planet between Mars and Jupiter, astrography, a description of the stars, astrology, astrologer, astrological, astronomy, astronomical, disaster, misfortune, disastrous.

Ἄυρος, *autos*, one's self.—Autobiography, writing of one's own life, autocracy, unlimited power, autocrat, autograph, one's own handwriting, automaton, autonomy, autopsy, ocular demonstration, autoptical.

Βάλλω, *ballo*, to cast, throw, give.—Ball, ballot, bullet, emblem, hyperbole, a figure which expresses more or less than the truth, hyperbolic, parable, problem, symbol, a typical figure, symbolize.

Βαπτίζω, *bapto*,...βαπτίζω, *baptizo*, to dip, to immerse, to wash.—Anabaptist, baptize, baptism, baptist, baptismal, pedobaptism, pedobaptist.

Βιβλος, *biblos*, a book.—

Bible, biblical, bibliographer, *one well acquainted with books*, bibliographical, bibliography, bibliomania, *rage for possessing certain books*, bibliopolist, a bookseller, bibliothecal, bibliothecary, a librarian.

Bios, *bios*, life.—Amphibious, amphibiousness, autobiography, biography, biographer, biographical, cenobite, *a person living in community*.

Βλαπτω, *blapto*, to hurt, hinder, injure.—Blasphe^me, to speak impiously of God, blasphem^er, blasphemously.

Βοτανε, *botane*, an herb.—Botany, *the study of plants*, botanic, botanical, botanist, botanize, botanologist, &c.

Βρονχος, *bronchos*, the throat, or windpipe.—Bronchial, *relating to the windpipe*, bronchocele, *tumour in the throat*, bronchotomy.

Γαμεω, *gameo*, to marry... γαμος, *gamos*, marriage.—Agamist, *one unmarried*, amalgam, *a mixture of metals*, &c., amalgamate, bigamist, bigamy, *marriage to two persons at the same time*, cryptogamy, *misogamy*, *hating marriage*, monogamy, monogamist, *one opposed to second marriage*, polygamy, polygamist.

Γη, *ge*, the earth.—Apogee, *the greatest distance from the earth*, geocentric, geography, geographer, geographical, geology, geologist, geometry, *the science of quantity and mensuration*, geometrical, geometrician.

Γενεα, *genea*, (fr. γενω or γινομαι, to be born,) a generation, a birth, a race.—Genealogy, *descent of families*, Genesis, heterogeneous, heterogeneous, *of opposite qualities*, homogeneous, *having the same nature*, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen.

Γλωσσα, *glossa*, or γλωττα, *glotta*, the tongue, language.—Epiglottis, *the covering at the top of the windpipe*, glottis, *opening of the windpipe*, gloss, *a comment*, glossary, glossy, polyglot, *of several languages*.

Γλυφω, *glypho*, to carve or engrave.—Anaglyph, *a carved figure*, glyph, *a cavity in building*, glyptography, hieroglyph, hieroglyphic, hieroglyphical.

Γινωσκω, *ginosko*, to know.—Gnomon, *that which indicates*, gnomonics, gnosticism, diagnostic, *a symptom*, physiognomy, prognostic.

Γωνια, *gonia*, an angle, or corner.—Diagonal, *through the corners*, diagonally, endecagon, tetragon, *a four-sided figure*, pentagon, *a five*, &c., hexagon, *a six*, &c., heptagon, *a seven*, &c., octagon, *a eight*, &c., nonagon, *a nine*, &c., decagon, *a ten*, &c., dodecagon, *a twelve*, &c., polygon, *many sides*, trigon, trigonometry.

Γραμμα, *gramma*, (fr. γραφω, to write,) a letter, literature.—Grammar, grammatical, anagram, *transposition of letters in a word*, diagram, epigram, monogram, parallelogram, programme.

Γραφῶ, *grapho*, to write, to describe.—Anemography, a description of the winds, apograph, astrography, autobiography, autograph, bibliography, biographical, caligraphy, chorography, cosmography, ethnography, epigraph, geography, hagiography, lexicography, lexicographer, metallography, orthography, paragraph, phytography, stenography, topography, topographer, zoography.

Γυμνος, *gymnos*, or *gymnos*, naked.—Gymnics, athletic exercises, gymnasium, gymnastic.

Γυνή, *gune*, or *gyne*, a woman.—Androgynal, gynarchy, gynandria, misogynist, monogynia, polygynia.

Δεκα, *deka*, ten.—Dean, deanery, decachord, musical instrument with ten strings, decade, ten, decagon, ten sides, decalogue, ten commandments, December, decempedal, decemviri, the ten men who composed the Roman laws, decemvirate, decimal, decimate, decennial, continuing ten years, decuple, tenfold, duodecagon, twelve sides, duodecimo.

Δημος, *demos*, the people.—Demagogue, a popular factious orator, democracy, democrat, democratical, endemic, in the people, or peculiar to a country, epidemic, affecting the people, epidemical.

Δαίμων, *daimon*, a spirit.—Demon, demoniac, devilish, demonship, demonology, demonist, pandemonium.

Δεσποτής, *despotes*, a tyrannical master.—Despot, despotic, despotical, despotism.

Διαίτα, *diaita*, food.—Diet, dietary, dietetic, dieter, dieting.

Διπλώμα, *diploma*, a writing, conferring a privilege.—Diplomacy, diplomate, diplomatic, diplomatist.

Δόγμα, *dogma*, an opinion.—Dogma, a doctrinal notion, &c., dogmatic, dogmatism, dogmatist.

Δόξα, *doxa*, fame, glory.—Doxology, heterodox, erroneous, orthodox, correct in doctrine, paradox, false in appearance, true in fact, paradoxical.

Δράμα, *drama*, a play.—Drama, dramatic, dramatical, dramatist.

Δρόμος, *dromos*, a running.—Dindrom, a course, a vibration, hippodrome, a race-course, orthodromy, sailing in a straight course, prodrome, syndrome.

Δρυς, *drus*, the oak-tree.—Druid, druidical, druidism, dryad.

Δυναμῖς, *dunamis*, power.—Dynasty, a race of kings, hydronamics, dynamics, &c.

Δυσ, *dus*, or *dys*, difficulty, weakness.—Antidysenteric, dysentery, laxity, bloody flux, dyspepsy, indigestion, Dysury, difficulty in voiding urine.

Ἔθος, *ethos*, custom, manners.—Ethics, ethic, ethical, relating to morals, ethology.

ἔθνος, *ethnos*, a nation.—

Ethnic, a *heathen*, ethnical, ethnography.

Eidos, *eidos*, or *oidos*, (fr. *Eiδω*, to see) a form, figure.—Cycloid, a *geometrical curve*, prismatoid, rhomboid, spheroid, trepezoid, variatoid, a *disease*, idol, idolize, idolater.

Εκατον, *hecaton*, a hundred.—Hecatomb, a *sacrifice of 100 oxen*.

Ελαω, *ελασω*, *elao*, *elaso*, to drive, to draw.—Elastic, elastical, elasticity.

Ελλην, *hellen*, a Greek.—Hellenic, hellenism, a *Greek idiom*, hellenist, hellenistically.

Εντομον, *entomon*, an insect.—Entomology, entomological, entomologist.

Επτα, *hepta*, seven.—Heptagon, heptagonal, heptachord, heptandria, heptarchy, a *seven-fold government*.

Ερημος, *eremos*, lonely, solitary.—Eremit, a *hermit*, permit, hermitic, hermitage.

Εργον, *ergon*, a work, operation.—Chirurgeon, surgery, surgeon, surgery, surgical, energy, energetic, George, georgic, a *rural poem*, metalurgy, &c.

Ετερος, *heteros*, other, dissimilar.—heterarchy, the *government of an alien*, heterodox, heterodoxy, heterogeneous.

Ετυμος, *etymos*, true, real.—Etymology, etymological, etymologist.

Ευ, *eu*, well, good.—Evangelist, *evangelism*, evangelic,

evangelical, eucharist, eulogy, eulogize, euphony.

Εξ, *hex*, six.—Hexachord, hexagon, hexameter, hexandria, hexangular, hexaped.

Ζηλος, (fr. *ζεω*, to boil,) *zelos*, zeal.—Zeal, zealot, a *person hotly engaged in any cause*, zealous, zealously.

Ζωον, *zoon*, an animal.—Zodiac, the *apparent path of the sun*, &c., zodiacal, zoography, *description of animals*, zoolite, *petrified animal substance*, zoology, a *treatise on animals*, zoologist, zoophorous, zoophyte, zootomist, a *dissector of animals*.

Ηλιος, *helios*, the sun.—Aphelion, *part of a planet's orbit most remote from the sun*, heliacal, heliocentric, helioscope, heliotrope, parhelion, perihelion.

Ημερα, *hemera*, a day.—Ephemeris, an *insect living only a day*, ephemeral, ephemerides, ephemeris.

Ημιστος, *hemistus*, half.—Hemicycle, hemisphere, hemispheric, &c.

Ηρος, *heros*, a hero.—Hero, a *courageous man*, heroine, heroic, heroical, heroism.

Θεωπος, *theoros*, a speculator.—Theorem, a *kind of proposition*, theoretic, theoretical, theorist, theorize, theory.

Θεος, *theos*, God.—Atheism, atheist, atheistic, enthusiasm, enthusiast, monotheism, pantheism, pantheist, pantheon, polytheism, theism, theocracy, theology, theologian, theological

Θεσις, thesis, a placing, or putting.—**Anathema**, a curse, anathematize, antithesis, *opposition of words*, antithetical, epithet, hypothesis, parathesis, parenthesis, parenthetical, synthesis, *composition*, synthetical, theme, thesis.

Ιερος, hieros, sacred.—**Hierarch**, the chief of a sacred order, hierarchy, hieroglyph, hieroglyphical, hierogram, hierography, hieropolis, &c.

Ιππος, hippos, a horse.—**Hippocentaur**, a fabulous monster, hippodrome, hippopotamus.

Ιδεα, (fr. *εἶδω*, to see,) a mental image.—**Idea**, ideal, idealize, idealism.

Ιδιος, idios, peculiar.—**Idiocracy**, idiocy, idiom, idiomatical, idiomatic, idiosyncrasy, idiot, idiotism, idiotcy.

Ισος, isos, equal.—**Isochronal**, of equal times, isochronous, isosceles, *having two sides equal*, isothermal, of equal heat.

Ιστορια, historia, narrative of past events.—**History**, historian, historic, historical, historiography, story.

Ιχθυς, ichthys, a fish.—**Ichthyology**, the science of fish, ichthyophagi.

Κακος, cacos, evil, bad, ill.—**Cachexy**, a bad habit of body, cachectic, cacoehymic, cacodæmon, an evil spirit, cacophony, a bad sound of words.

Καρδια, cardia, the heart.—**Cardiac**, cardiacal, cordial, **cardialgia**, the heart-burn, peri-

cardium, the membrane enclosing the heart.

Καυστικός, fr. καίω, kaustikos, burning.—**Caustic**, caustical, cauterize, cauterization, cautery, holocaust.

Κεντρον, centron, the middle or centre, a whip, spur.—**Centre**, central, centric, centrical, in the centre, centrifugal, *flying from the centre*, centripetal, *tending to the centre*, concentric, *having a common centre*, concentrical, concentrate, eccentric, *deviating from the centre*, irregular, eccentricity, geocentric, *same centre as the earth*.

Κεφαλη, cephale, the head.—**Acephalist**, acephalous, *without a head*, bicephalous, *having two heads*, cephalic, *remedial for the head*, hydrocephalous, *water in the head*.

Κληρος, cleros, a lot, or portion.—**Clergy**, clergyman, clerical, clerk, clerkship.

Κλινω, clino, to bend, lie down. See *Climo*, Latin Verbs.

Κοπη, cope, (fr. *κοπώ*, to cut,) a calling.—**Coppice**, apocope, syncope, *contraction of a word*, a fainting fit.

Κοσμος, cosmos, the world, ornament, beauty.—**Cosmetic**, a wash to promote beauty, cosmogony, the creation of the world, cosmogonist, cosmography, cosmopolite, cosmorama, *views of parts of the world*, microcosm, a little world, man.

Κρανιον, cranium, or **cranium**, the skull.—**Cranium**,

craniology, craniotomy, examination of the skull, pericranium.

Κρατος, cratos, power, strength, government.—Aristocracy, the principal persons in the state, aristocrat, aristocratic, aristocratically, autocracy, autocrat, an absolute monarch, democracy, a republic, government by the people, democratic, democratically, gynocracy, female government, stratocracy, military government, theocracy, Divine government.

Κρινω, κριτης, crino, crites, to sift, separate, discriminate.—Crisis, a critical time, a turn, criterion, critic, critical, criticise, to judge, to censure, criticism, hypercritical, critical beyond reason, hypocrisy, hypocrite.

Κρυπνω, crypto, or *crypto*, to conceal, to hide.—Apocrypha, books of doubtful authority, authors not known, apocryphal, crypt, a cell, or cave, cryptography, secret writing, cryptogamy, concealed fructification.

Κρυσταλλος, crustallos, or *crystallos*, congealed.—Crystal, a solid body, a kind of glass, crystalline, crystallize, crystallization.

Κυκλος, kuklos, or *cyclus*, a circle, orb.—Cycle, a circle, space of time, cycloid, a geometrical curve, epicycle, cyclops, cycles, cyclopædia, cylinder, encyclopædia.

Κωμος, comas, a jovial meeting, a hymn.—Comedy, comedian, comic, comical, diverting, droll, encomiast, encomium.

Κωνος, conos, a cone.—Conic, conical, conics, conic sections, coniferous.

Λαος, laos, the people.—Laic, belonging to the people, laity, lay, layman, not clerical.

Λατρεία, latria, service, worship.—Demonolatry, idolater, idolatry, idolatrous.

Λεγω, lego, to speak, read, gather.—See *Lego*, (the 2nd.) page 247, that word being the same as the Greek *Λεγω*.

Λειπω, lipo, to fail, leave out.—Eclipse, ecliptic, ellipsis, something omitted, elliptical, &c.

Ληθη, lethe, forgetfulness, death.—Lethe, lethean, lethargy, lethargic, lethargical.

Ληψις, (fr. λαμβανω), lepsis, a taking or receiving.—Analeptic, catalepsis, catalepsy, dilemma, epilepsy, epileptic, prolepsis, proleptic.

Λιθος, lithos, a stone.—Aerolite, a stone fallen from the atmosphere, litharge, lithography, lithographer, lithographic, lithomancy, lithotomy, surgical extraction of stone, lithotomist.

Λογος, logos, a word, discourse, reason, science, &c.—

Amphibology, doubtful meaning, analogy, analogical, analogous, anthology, antilogy, a contradiction between words, apology, apologetical, apologist, apologize, astrology, botanology, catalogue, chronology, chronologer, conchology, craniology, decalogue, dialogist, dialogue, doxology, eclogue, entomology, epi-

logue, ethology, etymology, eulogy, eulogium, genealogy, genealogical, geology, geologist, illogical, logarithms, logical, logically, martyrology, meteorology, mineralogy, monologue, mythology, neology, neurology, nosology, *doctrine of diseases*, ontology, osteology, &c., &c.

Λυσις, lysis, (fr. *Λυω*, to loose, to dissolve) a solution, or untying.—Analysis, analytical, analyse, paralysis, palsy, *a privation of feeling and motion*, paralytical, palsied, paralytic, paralyze.

Μαθημα, mathema, learning.—Mathematics, mathematical, mathematician, mathesis, philomath, *a lover of science*.

Μανια, mania, madness.—Antimaniacal, bibliomania, mania, maniac, maniacal.

Μαρτυρ, martyr, a witness.—Martyr, martyrdom, martyrology, martyrologist, proto-martyr.

Μαχη, mache, a battle.—Logomachy, *fight about words*, monomachy, *a single fight*.

Μελαν, melan, black, dark.—Melancholic, melancholy, melancholiness.

Μελι, meli, honey.—Hydromel, mellifluence, *a flow of sweetness*, mellifluent, mellifluous, oxymel, *vinegar and honey*.

Μεταλλον, metallon, a metal.—Metal, metallic, metalline, metallist, metallurgy, metallurgist.

Μετεωρα, meteora, lumi-

nous bodies in the air.—Meteor, meteoric, meteorolite, meteorology, meteorologist.

Μετρον, metron, a measure.—Altimetry, anemometer, *a wind measurer*, areometer, barometer, chronometer, diameter, diametrical, dynamometer, electrometer, eudiometer, galvanometer, geometry, goniometer, hydrometer, hygrometer, pantometer, perimeter, photometer, thermometer, trigonometry.

Μηχαναω, mechanao, to contrive, to invent.—Mechanic, mechanics, mechanical, mechanically, mechanician, mechanism, mechanist.

Μισος, misos, hatred, enmity.—Misanthrophy, misanthrope, misanthropist, &c.

Μνωω, mnao, mneo, to remind.—Amnesty, *an act of oblivion*, mnemonic, mnemonics, *art of memory*.

Μονος, monos, one, alone. Monachism, monad, monadic, monarch, monarchy, monarchical, monastery, monastic, monk, monopoly, monosyllable, monotheism, monotony, monotonous, *sameness*.

Μορφη, morphē, a shape, form, figure.—Amorphous, *without form*, metamorphose, *to transform*, metamorphosis, poly-morphous, *many shapes*.

Μυθος, muthos, a fable, fiction, word.—Myth, mythic, mythical, *fabulous*, mythology, mythologist, mythological.

Ναυς, naus, ος ναυς, a

ship.—Circumnavigate, circumnavigation, naufrage, *shipwreck*, naumachy, *a sea-fight*, naval, navy, navigable, navigate, navigation, unnavigable.

Νεκρος, *necros*, a dead body.—Necrology, necrologist, necromancy, *foretelling by means of the dead*, necromancer, necrosis, *disease of the bones*.

Νεος, *neos*, new.—Neapolis, neogamist, *newly married*, neology, *use of new words*, neophyte, *a new convert*.

Νησος, *nesos*, an island.—Chersonesus, Peloponnesus, Polynesia, *islands in the South Sea*.

Νευρον, *neuron*, a nerve, a string.—Enervate, *to take out the nerve, i. e. to weaken*, enervation, nerve, nervine, nervous, nervously, neurology, unnerve.

Νομος, *nomos*, a law.—Anomaly, Antinomian, antinomianism, *against the law*, antimony, astronomy, Deuteronomy, economy, economics, economise.

Οδος, *odos*, a way, journey.—Episode, Exodus, immethodical, method, methodical, methodism, period, periodical, synod.

Ολος, *holos*, all, the whole.—Catholic, universal, liberal, catholicity, catholicism, catholicicon, holocaust, holograph.

Ομος, *homos*, like, equal.—Homogeny, joint nature, homogeneal, homœopathy, homologous, *of the same proportions*, homotonous.

Ονομα, *onoma*, a name.—Anonymous, *without a name*,

homonymy, *similarity of name*, metonymy, *a word figuratively put for another*, paronymous, patronymic, *an ancestral name*, pseudonymous, *fictitious name*, synonymous, *the same meaning*.

Οπτω, *opto*, to see.—Autopsy, *ocular proof*, catoptrica, dioptrica, dropsy, hydropsy, hydroptic, optics, optic, optical, optician, synopsis, *a general view*.

Οραμα, *orama*, a view, the thing seen.—Cosmorama, *various pictures of places*, diorama, *transparent ditto*, marinorama, *sea-views*, panorama, *an entire view*.

Οργανον, *organon*, or organum, an instrument.—Disorganize, inorganic, inorganically, organ, organic, organically, organist, organize, organization.

Ορθος, *orthos*, right, accurate.—Orthodox, orthodoxy, orthodromy, orthoepy, *pronunciation*, orthoepist, orthography.

Ορος, *horos*, a boundary.—Aphorism, aphoristical, aphorist, horizon, horizontal, horizontally.

Οστέον, *osteon*, a bone.—Osteocolla, *a spar*, osteology, *a description of the bones*, osteoluger, periosteum, *the membrane over the bones*.

Οξύς, *oxys*, acid, sharp, acute.—Oxalic, oxycerate, oxyd, *a substance containing oxygen*, oxydize, oxygen, oxymel, paroxysm, *a fit*.

Παραδεισος, *paradisos*, a

garden of pleasure.—Imparadise, paradise, paradisaean, paradisiacal.

Πας, παν, παντος, pas, pan, pantos, all.—Panacea, a medicine for all, pancratical, pancreas, a bodily gland, pandemic, pandæmonium, the assembly of fallen angels, panegyric, panoply, panorama, pantologia, pantheism, pantheist, pantheon, pantomime.

Παθος, pathos, feeling, passion.—Antipathy, anthropopathy, man's passions, apathy, homœopathy, pathos, pathetic, pathological, pathology, sympathy.

Πεταλον, petalon, a flower-leaf.—Apetalous, without petals, bipetalous, two petals, monopetalous, octopetalous, pentapetalous, petal, a flower-leaf, petalous, polypetalous, tripetalous.

Πετρα, petra, a rock.—Peter, petre, petrescence, changed to stone, petrify, petrified, petrification, petroleum, rock oil, salt-petre.

Πλανη, plane, a wandering about.—Planet, planetary, planet-struck.

Πλασσω, plasso, to form in clay.—Cataplasm, a poultice, em plaster, metoplasma, a transposition, plasm, plastic, giving form, plaster, plastering, proplastic, protoplastic.

Πλεω, pleo, to fill.—Accomplish, to complete, accomplishment, complement, a filling, completion, complete, completeness, completion, compliment, complimentary, depletion, exple-

tive, implement, incomplete, manipulation, pleonasm, plethora, replete, repletion, supplement, supplementary, supply.

Πνευμα....ατος, pneuma, pneumatosis, wind, breath spirit.—Dyspnoea, difficult breathing, peripneumony, pneumatics, science of air, &c., pneumatology, pneumonia.

Ποιω, poieo, to make.—Poem, poesy, poet, poetess, poetaster, a petty poet, poetic, poetical, &c.

Πολεμος, polemos, war.—Polemic, polemical.

Πολις, polis, a city.—Acropolis, Constantinople, city of Constantine, cosmopolite, Helropolis, impolicy, impolitic, interpolate, interpolation, metropolis, metropolitan, police, policy, polite, politics, polish, political.

Πολυ, poly, many.—This is applied to many preceding words, as polygamy, &c., &c.

Πους, ποδος, pous, podos, the foot.—Antipodes, antipodal, podagrical, gouty, polypoda, polypous, tripod.

Πρακτος, (fr. πρασσω, to do), practos, done.—Impracticable, impracticability, malpractice, practicable, practicably, practicability, practice, practical, practitioner, pragmatic, &c.

Πρωτος, protos, first.—Protocol, the original copy, protomartyr, prototype, protoxyd.

Πυρ, πυρος, pyr, pyros, fire.—Empyrosis, empyreal, of pure fire and light, pyramid,

pyramidical, pyre, pyrite, *fire-stone*, pyritology, *a treatise on pyrites*, pyroligneous, *acid from burnt wood*, pyrometer, pyrotechnic, *art of making fireworks*, pyrotechnist.

Ρεω, *rheo*, to flow.—Catarrh, *a cold, increased defluxion from the nose*, catarrhal, diarrhoea, *a flowing through, laxity*, hemorrhage, hemorrhoids, resin, *a substance that flows from trees*, &c., rhetoric, rhetorical.

Σαρξ, *sarx*, flesh.—Anasarca, *dropsy of the whole body*, sarcasm, *keen reproach, or taunt*, sarcastic, sarcology, sarcophagy, sarcophagus, *a tomb*.

Σκοπεω, *scopeo*, or *scopeo*, to see, look.—Archbishop, astroscope, bishop, bishopric, episcopacy, episcopal, microscope, microscopical.

Σοφος, σοφια, *sophos, sophia*, wisdom.—Chirosophist, pansophy, philosophy, philosophic, philosophical, philosopher, philosophize, sophism, *a fallacy*, sophist, sophistical, sophisticate, *to adulterate*, sophistry.

Στελλω, *stello*, to send.—Apostle, *one sent, a messenger*, apostolic, apostolical, diastole, *dilatation of the heart*, epistle, epistolary, install, peristaltic, *spiral motion of the bowels*, stole, *a long robe*, systole.

Στροφη, *strophe*, to turn.—Anastrophe, *inversion of the order of words*, apostrophe, apostrophic, apostrophize, catastrophe, *a final event, a calamity*, strophe.

Σφαира, *sphaira* or *sphæra*, a sphere, or globe.—Atmosphere, atmospheric, hemisphere, *half a globe*, semispheric, sphere, spherical, spheroid, spheroidal.

Ταφος, *taphos*, a tomb.—Cenotaph, epitaph.

Τεχνη, *techne*, art, or science.—Polytechnic, pyrotechnics, technic, technical, &c., &c.

Τομος, *tomos*, a cutting, a division.—Anatomist, anatomize, atom, atomic, bronchotomy, *incision into the windpipe*, entomology, entomologist, epitome, epitomize, lithotomy, lithotomist, phlebotomy, tome, tracheotomy, zootomy, *dissecting animal bodies*.

Τονος, (fr. *τεινω*, to stretch,) *tonos*, tension, stretching, tone, sound.—Astonish, *to stun with sudden fear, terror, wonder*, &c., astonishing, astonishment, astound, attune, barytone, detonate, detonation, intone, monotone, monotony, monotonous, peritoneum, semitone, thunder, toned, tonic, tune, tunable, &c.

Τοπος, *topos*, a place.—Topic, *any subject*, topical, topically, topography, *description of any place*, topographical, utopian, visionary.

Τυπος, *typos*, or *typus*, a figure, impression, type.—Antitype, *that which agrees with the type*, archetype, *original pattern*, pretypify, prototype, stereotype, type, typical, typify, typography, typographic, typographical.

Υγρος, hygros, moist, wet.—Hygrometer, hygroscope, instruments to measure the moisture and dryness of the air.

Υδωρ, hydor, water.—Hydra, a monster with many heads, hydragogues, hydraulics, hydrocele, hydrocephalus, hydrodynamics, hydrogen, hydromancy, hydromel, honey and water, hydrometer, hydrophobia, hydrophathy, dropsy, dropsical, hydroptic, hydrostatics.

Υμην, hymen, the god of marriage.—Hymen, hymeneal, hymenean.

Φαγω, phago, to eat.—Androphagus, (see *Ανθρωπος*,) ichthyophagus, phagedena, an eating ulcer, phytiphagous, feeding on plants, sarcophagus, a tomb, sarcophagy, eating flesh.

Φαινω, phaino, or *phano*, to show or appear...*φαισις, phasis*, an appearance.—Apophasis, diaphanous, transparent, emphasis, emphatic, epiphany, fancied, fanciful, phantasm, fantastic, fantastical, phantom, phæton, phase, phasis, an appearance, phantasmagoria, phenomenon, sycophant.

Φαρμακον, pharmacon, a medicine, remedy.—Pharmacy, pharmaceuticals, the science of preparing medicines, pharmaceutical, pharmacology, pharmacopœia, directions for compounding medicines, pharmacopy.

Φερω, phero, to bear.—Diaphoretic, promoting perspiration, metaphor, metaphorical,

periphery, circumference, phosphorus, phosphorescent, zephyr, a soft wind.

Φιλος, philos, a lover, friend.—Philadelphia, brotherly love, philanthropy, philanthropic, philanthropist, philology, philologist, philological, philomel, the nightingale, philosophy, philosophical, philosophize.

Φρασις, (fr. φραζω, to say,) phrasis, a phrase, saying, speech.—Antiphrasis, antiphrastic, metaphor, a close version, paraphrase, a verbal explanation, phrase, phraseology, mode of expression, periphrase.

Φρην, phren, the mind.—Frantic, mad, furious, frenzy, madness, phrenitis, inflammation of the brain, phrenology, phrenologist.

Φυσις, physis, (fr. *φυνω*, to bring forth,) nature, a bringing forth.—Metaphysics, science of the mind, metaphysical, metaphysician, physis, physician, physical, relating to nature, physicotheology, physiognomy, physiognomist, physiology, physiological.

Φωνη, phone, a sound, voice.—Antiphon, response, antiphonal, aphony, loss of voice, cacophony, bad sound, dysphony, euphony, a good sound, euphonic, phonetic, expressive of sound, phonics, phonology, polyphony, symphony, tautophony, sound repeated.

Φως, φωτος, phos, photis, light.—Phosphate, a species of salt, phosphor, morning-star,

phosphorus, a substance which inflames as soon as exposed to the atmosphere, phosphorate, to impregnate with phosphorous, phosphoresce, phosphoric, phosphorite, phosphorous, phosphuret, photology, photometer, a measurer of light.

Xaos, chaos, a confused mass, disorder.—Chaos, chaotic.

Χαρακτηρ, *character*, a mark, stamp, personal qualities, &c.—Character, characteristic, characteristically, characterize.

Χαρις, χαριτος, charis, charitos, kindness, love, good-will.—Charity, charitable, charitableness, eucharist, the act of giving thanks, the Lord's Supper, eucharistical, uncharitable, uncharitableness.

Χειρ, cheir, hand.—Chiragra, gout in the hand, chirurgical, chirograph, a writing, chirographer, chirographist, chiromancy, chirurgery, curing by external applications, chirurgeon, chirurgical.

Χολη, chole, bile, hatred, wrath.—Cholera-morbus, cholera, choleric, cholic, melancholy, melancholic.

Χονδρος, chondros, the liver, the spleen.—Hypochondry, hypochondria, hypochondriac, a melancholy person, hypochondriacal.

Χριστος, Christos, Christ, the anointed Saviour.—Antichrist, antichristian, Christ, Christianity, Christianlike, Christmas, chrism, consecrated

oil, Christendom, unchristian.

Χρονος, chronos, time.—Anachronism, error in computing time, chronic, continuing a long time, chronical, chronicle, chronogram, chronography, chronology, chronologist, chronological, chronometer, isochronal, having equal times, synchronal, synchronous, at the same time.

Χρυσος, chrusos, or *chrysos*, gold.—Chrysalis, chrysolite, chrysoprasus, precious stones.

Χρωμα, chroma, colour.—Chrome, a mineral, chromatic, relating to colour, or music, achromatic, destitute of colour.

Χυμος, chumos, or *chymos*, fluidity, juice.—Alchymy, chemistry of metals, alchymist, caco-chymy, bad humours or blood, chymistry, chemistry, chemist, chymic, chymical.

Ψευδος, (fr. *ψευδω*, to deceive,) *pseudos*, false, falsehood.—Pseudograph, pseudology, pseudo-prophet, &c.

Ψυχη, psuche, or *psyche*, the breath, soul.—Psyche, cupid's wife, metempsychosis, psychology, psychomachy.

Ωδε, ode, a hymn or song.—Comedy, melody, melodious, monody, ode, palinode, parody, prosody, psalmody, rhapsody, tragedy.

Ωρα, hora, an hour.—Horal, horary, relating to an hour, horography, horologe, horology, horoscope, the configuration of the planets at the hour of birth, horometry, hour, hourly.

WORDS DERIVED FROM THE FRENCH.

237 The French Language is the great medium through which English words of Latin origin are derived. By this transition, they have suffered abbreviation and other changes.

ABANDON, from *abandonner*, hence abandoned, abandonment.

ABEYANCE, *bayer*, something in reversion.

ABRIDGE, *abreger*, abridgment.

ABUT, *a, bout*, to border upon, to meet—abutment, abuttal.

ACCOUTRE, old Fr. *accoustrer*, to furnish.—accoutrement.

ACCRUE, part. of *accroître*, to be added to, &c.

ACHIEVE, *achever*, (*a* to, *chef*, a head)—to perform, to finish, &c.

ACQUIT, L. *ad*, Fr. *quitter*, to set free—acquittance, acquittance.

ADIEU, *a to, Dieu*, God—farewell; literally, I commend you to the care of God.

ADJOURN, *ajourner*, to defer, (*a*) to another (*jour*) day.

ADORE, *adorer*, fr. Lat. *ad*, *oro*.

ADROIT, *a, droit*, skilful.

ADVANCE, *avant*, or *avancer*: to bring (*a*) to the (*van*,) or front line of the army—*van* from L. *ab ante*.

ADVISE, *aviser*, to counsel.

AFFRAY, *effrayer*, to terrify. .n. a quarrel.

AGIST, *gite*, to pasture cattle—agistment, agistor.

AGREE, *agreer*, to concur—(*a*) at (*gre*) concord—to become friends—agreeable, agreeably, agreement.

ALARM, *à l'arme*, to call to arms, to announce danger.

ALAS, *hélas*, an exclamation.

ALERT, *alerte*, from *l'art*, according to art or rule, to be erect, watchful, &c., like a sentinel.

ALLURE, *leurrer*, to entice.

ALMOND, *amande*.

AMATEUR, *a* lover of any science.

AMBUSH, *en, bois*—*en*, in or among, *bois*, a wood or bushes.

AMENABLE, *a, mener*, liable to account—from '*Mandat d'amener*, an order to appear in court.

AMEND, *amender*, derived from the Lat. *emendare*, to correct.

AMUSE, *amuser*, to divert the mind with the muses, learning, &c.—from the Lat. *a, musa*.

ANCESTOR, *ancetre*, fr. Lat. *antecessor*, one who has served, or lived before us.

ANCIENT, *ancien*, from Lat. *antiquus*, or *anticus*.

ANNOY, fr. *ennuyer*, to incommode, vex, &c.

ANTLER, *andouiller*, branch of a stag's horn.

APPRIZE, *appris*, to give notice.

APRICOT, *abricot*.

ARM, *armer*, fr. L. *armare*, to arm.

ARRANGE, *ranger*, to put in proper order.

ARREAR, *arriere*, behind-hand.

ARREST, *arreter*, to obstruct.

ARRIVE, *arriver*, to arrive, to disembark.

ARTILLERY, *artillerie*.

ASSASSIN, a secret murderer.

ASSAY, *essayer*, to try or prove.

ATTACH, *attacher*, to take, &c.

ATTACK, *attaquer*, to assault, &c.

Avalanche, a mass of snow sliding down a mountain.

AVAUNT, *avant*, hence, begone.

BABBLE, *babiller*, probably from the Hebrew, Babel,—to talk confusedly, to prattle.

BACHELOR, *bachelier*, origin of the word uncertain.

BAFFLE, *bester*, to elude—baffler.

Bagatelle, a trifle.

BAIL, *bailler*, to free on security.

BALANCE, *balancer*, fr. Lat. *bis*,

twice, and *lanx*, scales,—a pair of scales, difference of account.

BALE, *balle*, a package of goods.

BALE, *bailler*, to lade out water.

BALL, *bal*, dancing.

BALLOT, *balotte*, a ball used in voting.

BALUSTER, *balustre*, a small pilaster—balustrade.

BANISH, *bannir*, to expatriate.

BANK, *la banque*—bankrupt.

BANNER, *banniere*, a military standard.

Banquet, a feast—banquet-house.

BANTER, *badtner*? to rally.

BAR, *barre*, prob. fr. the Saxon *byrgan*, to fortify, to defend.

BARBACAN, *barbacane*, an outward fortification.

BARGAIN, *barguigner*, a contract

Baron, next to a viscount.

BARREL, *baril*, a round vessel.

BARTER, *barater*, to traffic by exchanging.

BASIN, *bassin*, a small vessel.

BASTILE, *bastille*, a state-prison.

Bastion, a bulwark of earth.

BATTER, *battre*, to beat down.

BATTLE, *bataille*, a fight—battalions, battalion, battlement, &c.

BAWBLE, *babiole*, a trinket.

BEAGLE, *bagle*, a small hound.

BEAK, *bec*, the bill of a bird.

BEAU, *bo*, a man of dress, a fop.

BEAUTY, *beau*, an assemblage of graces, &c.—beauteous, beauteously, beautiful, beautifulness, beautify.

BEEF, *bœuf*, flesh of an ox.

Belle, a gay young lady.

BENISON, *benir*, a blessing.

BEVEL, *biveau*, a kind of square.

BIAS, *biats*, the weight lodged on one side of a bowl, partiality.

BILL, *billet*, a written paper, account of money due;—billet, a note—a ticket denoting the lodgment of soldiers, billet-doux, a love-letter.

Billion, a million of millions.

Bivouac, night-guard of an army.

BLAME, *blamer*, to charge with

a fault;—blamable, blamably, blameful, blameless, blameworthy.

BLANCH, *blanc*, to whiten.

BLANK, *blanc*, white, without writing.

BLANKET, *blanchet*.

BLEMISH, *blemir*, to mark with any deformity.

BOBBIN, *bobine*, a small pin to wind thread upon.

Bonnet, a covering for the head.

BOOT, *botte*.

BOSS, *bosse*, a stud.

BOUND, *bondir*, to spring.

BOUNTY, *bonte*, fr. Lat. *bonitas*, goodness,—bounteous, bountiful.

BOWELS, *boyau*, the intestines.

BOWL, *boule*, a ball for playing.

BRANCH, *branche*, a bough.

Brave, courageous, gallant.

BRAWL, *brailler*, a noisy quarrel.

BREEZE, *brise*, a gentle gale.

Bribe, a reward to pervert the judgment;—bribery.

BRICK, *brigue*.

Brigade, a division of troops;—brigadier, an officer over a brigade, brigand, brigandage.

BRILLIANT, *briller*, shining, sparkling; brilliancy, brilliant.

BRISK, *brusque*, lively, briskly, briskness, &c.

BROIDER, *broder*, to adorn with needlework.

BROIL, *brouiller*, a quarrel.

Broil, *bruler*, to cook on coals.

BROTHEL, *bordel*, a bad house.

Brunette, a female with a brown or dark complexion.

BRUSH, *brosse*;—brushy, brushwood.

BUCKLE, *boucle*.

BUCKRAM, *bougran*, stiffened cloth. a. stiff, precise.

BUDGET, *bougette*, a bag, orstock. *Buffet*, a cupboard.

BUFFOON, *bouffon*, a low jester.

BULLET, *boulet*, a metallic ball.

Bulletin, an official report.

BULLION, *billon*, gold or silver.

BUOY, *bouee*, a float on the

water ;—buoyancy, buoyant.
BURDEN, *bourdon*, a chorus.
BUREAU, a chest of drawers.
BUTCHER, *boucher* ;—butchery.
BUTTON, *bouton* ;—button-hole.
CABINET, a closet, a room in which consultations are held.

Cadet, a volunteer expecting a commission.

Cage, an inclosure for birds.

CAJOLE, *cajoler*, to flatter, coax.

CAITIFF, *chetif*. Italian, *cattivo*, from Lat. *captivus*, a captive.

Calibre, the bore of a gun, capacity, sort, &c.

CALM, *calme*—calmly, calmness.

Canaille, the rabble, fr. *canis*, a dog.

CANDLE, *chandelle*.

Canteen, a tin vessel.

Canton, a division of a country.

Cap-a-pie, from head to foot.

CAPARISON, *caparacon*, a covering for a horse.

Caprice, whim, fancy ;—capricious, capriciously, capriciousness.

CAPSTAN, *cabestan*.

CAPTAIN, *capitaine*,—captaincy.

CARCASS, *carcasse*, a dead body.

CAREEN, *careener*, to calk.

CAREER, *carriere*, a course, &c.

CARMINE, *carmin*.

CAROUSE, *carrousse*, to revel.

CASE, *caisse* ;—case-hardened.

CASH, *caisse*, money ;—cashier.

CASK, *caque*, a barrel ;—casket.

Cascade, fr. Lat. *casum*, a waterfall.

CATER, *acheter*, to provide food.

CHAFE, *chauffer*, to warm by rubbing, to fret.

CHAIR, *chaire*.

Chaise, a light carriage.

CHALDRON, *chaudron*.

Chance, fr. Lat. *cadentia*.

CHANGE, *changer*, fr. Lat. *ambio* ;—changeable, changeling.

CHARGE, *charger* ;—chargeable.

CHASE, *chasser*, to hunt.

CHAT, *caqueter*, to prate.

Chateau, a castle.

CHECK, *echec*, to repress.

CHES, *echecs*, a game.

Chicane, trick, artifice ;—chicanery.

CHIEF, *chef*, principal ;—chiefly.

CHIVALRY, *cheval*, knighthood, valour ; chivalrous.

CHUCK, *choquer*, to jerk quickly.

CHUM, *chomer*, a chamberfellow.

Cinque, the number five.

CIPHER, *chiffre*.

CLACK, *claquer*, a sharp noise.

CLARET, *clairret*, a wine, a colour.

COACH, *coche*, a vehicle.

COAT, *cotte*, a garment.

COCKNEY, *cocagne*, a native of London.

COFFEE, *cafe*.

COFFER, *coffre*, a chest.

Colonel, a commanding officer.

COMBAT, (Lat. *con*, Fr. *battre*,) to fight ;—combatant.

COMPANY, *compagnie* ;—companion, companionship.

COMPRISE, *compris*, to include.

CONJURE, *conjur*, fr. Lat. *conjurare*, to enjoin solemnly.

Connoisseur, a judge, a critic.

Contour, outline of a figure.

CONTRIVE, (Lat. *con*, Fr. *trouver*,) to plan, to devise.

CONTROL, *contre, role*, check, restraint ; controllable.

COPY, *copie*, a manuscript, an imitation.

Coquette, a vain female.

CORPORAL, *caporal*, an infantry officer.

Corridor, a gallery or passage.

Corvette, an advice boat.

COSTUME, *coutume*.

COUCH, *coucher*, to lie down . . . a seat of repose ;—couchant.

COURT, *cour*, the residence of a monarch ;—courtier, courteous.

COWARD, *couard*, a timid person.

CRASH, *ecraser*, noise of breakage.

CRAVAT, *cravate*, a neckcloth.

CRUET, *cruchette*, a vial.

CRUSH, *ecraser*, to bruise.

- CRY, *crier*.
 CUIRASS, CUIRASSE, a breastplate
 --cuirassier.
 CURB, *courber*, part of a bridle.
 CURFEW, *couvre-feu*, evening bell
 DAM, *dame*, a female parent.
 DAMAGE, *dommage*, hurt.
 DAMSEL, *damoiselle*, a young woman.
 DANDELION, *dent, de, lion*, plant.
 DANDY, *dandin*, a fop.
 Danger, risk, peril;—dangerous.
 DART, *dard*, a weapon.
 DEBAR, (Lat. *de*, Fr. *barre*,) to hinder, exclude.
 DEBAUCH, *debaucher*, to corrupt
 ..n. intemperance, fr. *vacchus*.
 DEBONAIR, civil, well-bred.
 DECIPIER, Lat. *de*, Fr. *chiffre*, to explain, unfold.
 DEFT, *defter*, fr. Lat. *de*, *fidō*, to challenge, to dare.
 DEMEAN, Lat. *de*, Fr. *mener*, to behave.
 DEMURE, *des, mœurs*, grave.
 DESPATCH, *depecher*, to send hastily, &c.
 DETACH, *detacher*;—detachment.
 DETAIL, Lat. *de*, Fr. *tailler*, to relate minutely.
 DEVELOP, *developper*, to unfold.
 DISADVANTAGE, L. *dis*, Fr. *avant*, loss, injury;—disadvantageous.
 DISAGREE, L. *dis*, Fr. *a, grè*.
 DISARRANGE, L. *dis*, *ad*, Fr. *ranger*, to put out of order.
 DISCOURTEOUS, L. *dis*, Fr. *cour*.
 DISEASE, L. *dis*, Fr. *aise*.
 DISENGAGE, L. *dis*, *in*, Fr. *gager*, to separate, to extricate.
 DISFRANCHISE, L. *dis*, Fr. *franc*, to deprive of privileges, as voting.
 DISGUISE, *deguiser*, to conceal by counterfeiting.
 Dishabille, fr. *des habiller*, loose dress.
 DISHEVEL, *de cheveu*, or *decheveler*, fr. L. *dis*, asunder, and *capillus*, the hair.
 DISSEVER, L. *dis*, Fr. *sevrer*, to part in two.
 DISTRESS, *detresse*, misfortune.
 Douceur, a bribe, a lure.
 DRESS, *dresser*, to clothe.
 DROLL, *drôle*, comical, odd;—drollery, drollish.
 DRUG, *drogue*, an ingredient in medicine.
 DUNGEON, *donjon*, a dark prison.
 Dupe, a credulous person.
 EASE, *aise*, quiet, rest.
 EMBARRASS, *embarras*.
 EMBEZZLE, *embler*, to appropriate by breach of trust.
 EMBOSS, *en, bosse*, to form with protuberances.
 Embrasure, aperture for cannon.
 EMERY, *emeri*, a mineral.
 ENCHASE, *en, caisse*, to infix.
 ENCROACH, *en, croc*, to intrude.
 Enceinte, inclosure, pregnant.
 ENDEAVOUR, *en, devoir*, an effort.
 ENFEEBLE, *en, foible*, to weaken.
 ENFRANCHISE, *en, franc*, to make into a freeman, a voter.
 ENGAGE, *en, gager*, to bind, enlist
 ENHANCE, *en, hausser*, to raise, to advance;—enhancement.
 ENJOY, *en, joie*;—enjoyment.
 ENLIST, *en, liste*, to enrol.
 ENNUY, lassitude, disgust.
 ENTRANCE, *en, transe*, to put into a trance.
 ENVELOP, *envelopper*, to inwrap.
 ENVIRON, *en, virer*, to surround.
 EQUERRY, *ecuyer*, one having the care of horses.
 EQUIP, *equiper*, to fit out.
 ESCAPE, *echapper*, to flee from.
 ESCORT, *escorte*, a guard.
 ESCRITOIRE, *ecrtoire*, a box with writing materials.
 Esplanade, space before a fortification.
 ESPY, *èpter*, to see at a distance; fr. L. *specere*.
 ESSAY, *essayer*, to attempt:—essay, essayist.
 Etiquette, forms of ceremony.
 FAINT, *faner*;—faintish, faintly.
 FANATIC, *fanatique*, fr. L. *fanaticus*, wildly enthusiastic.

- FEIBLE**, *foible*, weak.
FINE, *fin*, small, thin.
FLANK, *flanc*, part of an animal.
Foible, a weakness.
FOIL, *affoler*, to defeat.
FOIST, *fausser*, to insert wrongfully.
FOOL, *fol*, one of weak understanding.
FOREIGN, *forain*, belonging to another country.
FOREST, *foret*;—forester.
Forge, a place for working iron.
Franchise, privilege, right to vote.
FRANK, *franc*, free, liberal, open.
FRAY, *effrayer*, a broll, quarrel.
FRIGATE, *frégate*, a small ship of war.
FRINGE, *frange*, an ornamental border.
FRISE, *friser*, to curl.
FROCK, *froc*, a dress, coat.
FUR, *fourrer*, skin with soft hair.
FURNISH, *fournir*, to supply, &c.
Fusée, a pipe for firing a bomb.
GALLANT, *galant*, gay, splendid.
GALLERY, *galerie*.
GALLOP, *galop*.
GAOL, *geole*, a prison.
GARB, *garbe*, dress.
GARLAND, *guirlande*, a wreath.
GARRET, *guérite*.
GARRISON, *garnison*.
GAUGE, *jauge*, to measure capacity or power.
GAY, *gai*, airy, cheerful;—gayety, or gaiety, gayesome.
GAZEL, *gazelle*, an Arabian deer.
GIANT, *geant*, fr. L. *gigante*.
GIBBET, *gibet*, a gallows.
GLACIS, a sloping bank.
GLEAN, *glaner*, to gather after reapers.
GOAL, *gaale*, the point to which racers run.
GOBLET, *gobelet*, a cup.
GORMAND, *gourmand*, a glutton.
GRANT, *garantir*, to give.
Grenade, a small bomb-shell.
GRAVEL, *gravelle*, hard rough sand.
- Grotesque**, whimsical, fantastic.
GUARD, *garder*, to protect.
Guerdon, a reward.
GUIDE, *guider*, to direct.
Guise, manner, dress.
GUTTER, *gouttière*, a passage for water.
HACK, *haquenné*, a horse let out for hire.
HALE, *haler*, to drag by force.
Harangue, a speech.
HARNESSE, *harnais*, armour, &c.
HARPOON, *harpon*, a dart to strike whales with.
HASH, *hacher*, to mince.
Hauteur, pride, haughtiness.
HAZARD, *hasard*, chance, &c.
HEINOUS, *haine*, atrocious.
HIDEOUS, *hideux*, horrible.
HOSTAGE, *otage*, one given as a pledge.
Hotel, an Inn.
INVEIGLE, *aveugler*, to allure.
JAIL, *geole*, a prison.
Jamb, a door-post.
JAR, *jarre*, an earthen vessel.
JAUNDICE, *jaune*, a disease.
JAW, *joue*, part of the mouth.
JEALOUS, *jaloux*, suspicious.
JEWEL, *joyau*, a rich ornament.
JIG, *gigue*, a sort of dance.
JOSTLE, *jouter*, to knock against.
JOURNAL, *jour*, a diary.
JOY, *joi*, gladness.
JUICE, *jus*, sap of vegetables, &c.
JUMBLE, *comble*, to mix confusedly.
LEASE, *laisser*, a contract.
LEES, *lie*, dregs.
LEISURE, *loisir*.
LEMON, *limon*.
Levant, eastern parts and coasts of the Mediterranean sea.
Levee, an assembly of visitors.
Lieu, place, room, stead.
Lieutenant, a military officer.
LILACH, *lilas*, a shrub.
Lime, a sort of lemon.
LIST, *liste*, a catalogue.
LIVERY, *livrée*, form of dress.
LOUNGE, *longir*, to live idly.

- LOZENGE**, *losange*.
LURE, *leurre*, enticement.
LUTE, *luth*, a musical instrument.
MADAM, *ma, dame*.
Mademoiselle, miss, young girl.
MAGAZINE, *magazin*, an arsenal, &c., a periodical.
MAIL, *maille*, coat of steel.
MAIL, *maille*, a bag for letters.
MANGE, *mangeaison*, a disease amongst animals.
MANNER, *maniere*, form, custom.
MANOR, *manoir*.
MARAUDER, *maraud*, a plunderer.
MARCH, *marcher*, to move by steps, &c.
MARSHAL, *marechal*, chief commander.
MARMALADE, *marmelade*.
MARVEL, *marveille*, a wonder.
MASK, *masque*, a disguise.
MASON, *macon*, a stone builder.
MATCH, *meche*, a combustible spell of wood.
MAVIS, *mauvais*, a thrush.
Mediocre, of moderate degree.
MEDLEY, *meler*, a mingled mass.
MENIAL, fr. the O. French, *mes-nial*, pertaining to servants.
MERCY, *merci*, clemency.
MESS, *mets*, a portion of food.
MESSUAGE, *maison*, a dwelling-house, &c.
MIEN, *mine*, look, air, &c.
Mignonette, a flower.
Mine, a pit, &c.
MINION, *mignon*, a favourite.
Mirage, an optical illusion.
Misnomer, a wrong name.
MOAT, *motte*, a deep ditch.
MODERN, *moderne*, from L. *modernus*, fr. *modo*, just now.
MOHAIR, *moire*, hair of a kind of goat.
MOIST, *moite*, damp.
Monsieur, sir, Mr.
MORTGAGE, *mort, gage*.
MOSAIC, *mosaique*.
MOSQUE, *mosquee*.
MULLION, *moulure*, a window division.
MUSHROOM, *mousseron*.
MUSKET, *mousquet*.
MUSTARD, *moutarde*.
MUTINY, *mutin*.
MUTTON, *mouton*.
MUZZLE, *museau*, to bind the mouth.
NAIVE, *naivete*, natural, artless, unaffected.
NAVE, *nef*, body of a church.
NAPKIN, *nappe*.
NECESSARY, *necessaire*, from the Latin, *necessarius*, compound of *ne*, not, and *cessare*, to cease.
NEGRO, *negre* from L. *niger*, black.
Net, clear after deductions.
Niche, a hollow for a statue.
Noblesse, the nobility.
Noise, a loud sound.
NEPHEW, *neveu*, from L. *nepos*, a son of a brother or sister.
NOVEL, *nouvelle*, from novellus L. diminutive of novus, new.
NUMBER, *nombre*, from L. *numerus*.
OCCUPY, *occuper*, fr. L. *occupare* to take or hold.
ONEROUS, *onereux*, from L. *onerosus* an oppressive load, prob. from the Greek *onos*, an ass.
ONION, *oignon*, fr. L. *untione*.
OOZE. A corruption of *eaux*, waters.
ORDAIN, *ordonner*, L. *ordinare*.
ORDNANCE, *ordonnance*, guns, &c. made according to ordinance, or order.
ORISON, *oraison*, fr. L. *oratione*.
ORIEL, *oriot*, a projecting window.
Oster, a water willow.
OSTRICH, *autruche*.
OUNCE, *once*, from L. *uncia*.
OUST, *oter*, to eject.
OUTFLANK, Sax. *ut*, Fr. *flanc*.
Outrage, open violence.
OVERCHARGE, Sax. *ofer*, Fr. *charger*.
OVERHAUL, Sax. *ofer*, Fr. *haler*, to examine again.

OVERPOWER, *Sax. ofer. Fr. pouvoir.*

OVERTURN, *ouverture* an opening, a proposal.

OYER, *outr*, a hearing, a judicial court.

O YES! *oyez*, hear ye!

PAIR, *pai*, from L. *par*. equal.

PALACE, *palais*, from L. *palatium*

Palette, a painter's board.

PALFREY, *palefroi*, a small horse.

Palisade, *palissade*, from *palus*, L. a stake, or fence.

Pamphlet, a stitched book, from *parunfilet*, by a thread.

PANE, *panne*, O. F., square of glass

PANEL, *panneau*, a roll of jurors.

PANSY, *pensee*, a kind of violet.

PANT, *panteler*, to beat, as the heart.

Parade, from *parrata*, Italian.

PARAGON, *parangon*, a model.

PARAPET, *parapetto*, L. *per*, *pectus*, a wall breast high.

PARASITE, from the Gr. *para*, beside, and *sitos*, corn or food, one who sits at rich men's tables, eating and flattering.

PARBOIL, *parbouiller*, to half-boil

PARDON, *pardonne*, from L. *per*, intensive, and *donare*.

PARISH *paroisse* from *parochia*, L. and *paroikia*, Gr.

PARLEY, *parler*, to speak—hence, parliament, talking, and parlour, from *parloir*, a room for conversation.

Parole, a verbal promise.

PARSE, *faire les parties*, to resolve a sentence into the elements or parts of speech.

Parsley, *purcel*, a plant.

Parterre, a level plot of ground.

PASTE, *pate*, adhesive mixture.

PATROL, *patrouille*, a moving guard

Pavilion, from L. *papilio*,

PAY, *payer*, from L. *pacare*,

PEACH, *peche*, a fruit.

PEASANT, *paysan*, from L. *paganus*.

PELISSE, from *pelis*, L. a fur coat

or robe; the root is *phellos*, Gr., the bark or covering of a tree.

PELL-MELL, *pele-mele*, confusedly

PERDUE, *perdu*, from *perditus*, L., lost, applied to a soldier of the forlorn hope, to a sentinel, or to one in desperate circumstances.

Pet, *petite*, a little favourite.

PETTICOAT, *petit*, *cotte*.

Petulant, from L. *petulans*.

PHEASANT, *faisan*, Gr. *phasias*, a fowl.

PICKET, *piquet*, a guard before an army.

Piece, a fragment.

PIERCE, *percer*, to penetrate.

Pigeon, a bird.

PIKE, *pique*, a long lance, a fish.

PILFER, *piller*, to steal.

PILGRIM, *pelerin*.

PILL, *piller*, to strip.

PILLAGE, *piller*, from L. *pillare*.

PILLORY, *pilori*.

PILOT, *pilote*, a guide.

PINCH, *pincer*, L. *pinser*, to squeeze, to gripe, &c.

PINANCE, *pinasse*, a kind of boat.

PIONEER, *pionnier*.

Piquant, sharp, pungent, severe.

Pique, to touch to the quick.

PISTOL, *pistolet*, a hand-gun.

Piston, the moving rod of a steam cylinder.

PITTANCE, *pitance*, an allowance.

PITY, *pitie*, compassion.

Pivot, a pin on which any thing turns.

Placard, a printed bill.

Place, from L. *platea*.

Plan, a scheme.

PLANK, *planche*, from L. *plancus*.

PLASTER, *platre*, from *emplastrum*. L.

PLATOON, *peleton*, a small square body of soldiers.

PLEA, *plaid*, an apology, &c.

PLEDGE, *pleige*, something given in security.

PLUNGE, *plonger*, to enter water suddenly, &c.

POACH, *pocher*, to boil slightly.

- POLTROON, *poltron*, a coward.
Poignant, sharp, piercing.
 PONIARD, *poignard*, from L. *pugione*.
 POISON, from L. *potio*.
 POLICE, F. from L. *politia*, and Gr. *polis*, a city.
 POOR, *pauvre*, from L. *pauper*.
 PORCH, *porche*, from L. *porticus*.
 PORTRAY, *portraire*.
 POT, a vessel.
 POVERTY, *pauvreté*, L. *paupertus*.
 POULT, PULLET, *poulet*, from L. *pullus*, a chicken.
 POWDER, *poudre*, from *pulvere*, L. to reduce to dust.
 POWER, *pouvoir*, ability, strength.
 PRAY, *prier*, L. *precari*.
 PREACH, *predicher*, L. *prædicare*.
 Premier, first, chief, &c.
 PRISON, PRISONER, from F. *pris*, L. *prensus*, taken.
 PRIVY, *prive*, from L. *privatus*.
 PRIZE, *prise*, something captured.
 PROFILE, *profil*, from *pro* and *flum*, L. outline, side face.
Promenade, a walk for pleasure.
 PROMULGE, *promulguer*, L. *promulgare*.
 PROTOCOL, *protokolon*, from Gr. rough draft.
Province, from L. *provincia*.
 PROVOST, *prevost*, or *prevot*, from *præ*, *positum*, L. a chief ruler.
 PROWESS, *prouesse*, from *probitas*, L. valour.
 PUISNE, PUNY, *puisne*, or *putne*, younger, inferior, petty, small.
 PUISSANCE, from *potentia*, L. strength, force.
 PUN, *pointe*, from L. *punctum*, a point, a play upon words which agree in sound, but differ in meaning.
 PURCHASE, *pour*, *achat*, to buy.
 PURLIEU, F. from *pur*, clear, and *lieu*, a neighbourhood, district.
 PURSE, *bourse*, L. *bursa*.
 PUSH, *pousser*, to thrust, &c.
 Quadrille, a dance.
 QUAFF, *cotter*, to drink.
- QUARANTINE, *quarantaine*, a space of 40 days.
 QUARRY, *carrière*, *quadrare*, L.
 QUAY, pro. *ke*, *quai*.
 QUEST, or *quete*, from L. *questus*, seeking for.
 QUIRE, *cahier*, 24 sheets of paper.
 QUIT, *quitter*, to leave, &c.
 QUOTE, *coter*, to cite, to note.
Rage, fury.
 RALLY, *railler*, to reunite scattered troops.
 RALLY, *railler*, to banter, &c.
 RAMP, *ramper*, to climb.
 RANGE, *rang*, to place in order.
 RANSOM, *rançon*.
 RAPIER, *raipere*, a small sword.
 RAVAGE, *ravager*, fr. L. *rapio*.
Ravine, a deep hollow.
 REBOUND, L. *re*, F. *bondir*, to spring back.
 REBUKE, L. *re*, Fr. *boucher*.
Reconnoître, to survey, examine.
 REFINE, L. *re*, Fr. *fin*, to purify.
 REFUSE, *refuser*, to deny a request.
 REGALE, *regaler*, to refresh, &c.
 REGARD, *regarder*, to observe.
Regiment, fr. L. *rego*, a body of soldiers.
Regret, grief, sorrow.
 REJOICE, L. *re*, Fr. *joie*.
 RENCONTRE, a collision, from L. *re*, *in*, *contra*.
Rendezvous, F. place of meeting.
 RENEGADE, *renegat*, an apostate, from L. *renegatus*.
 REPAST, *repas*, from the Lat. *re*, again, and *pastus*, food.
 REPRIEVE, *repris*, to respite after sentence of death.
 REPROACH, *reprocher*, F. from L. *reprobare*, (re *proximus*.)
 RESCUE, *recousse*, or *recours*, from L. *re excussus*.
 RESEMBLE, *ressembler*, from L. *re similis*.
 RESERVOIR, pr. *raisatvooar*, from L. *reservare*.
 RESORT, *ressortir*, L. *re*, *sors*, to frequent, &c.

RESPIRE, *reptir*, pause, delay.
RETAIL, *L. re, Fr. tailler*.
RETIRE, *L. re, Fr. tirer*.
RETRANCH, *L. re, Fr. trancher*,
 to lessen.
RETRIEVE, *L. re, Fr. trouver*, to
 recover.
Reverie, loose musing.
RIBALD, *ribaud*, low, base, mean.
RIFLE, *rifler*, to rob.
RISK, *risque*, hazard.
RIVET, *river*, to fasten.
ROAST, *roûtir*.
Robe, an elegant dress.
ROCK, *roc*.
ROLL, *rouler*, to move in a circle.
ROMANCE, *roman*, a fiction.
Rouge, red paint.
Route, a way, road.
Routine, a course of business,
 custom.
Ruse, stratagem, trick.
SALOON, *salon*, a spacious hall.
Sap, saper, to undermine.
SASH, *chassis*, frame of a window.
Satin, a kind of silk.
SCAFFOLD, *échafaud*.
SCALD, *echauder*, to burn with
 hot liquid.
SCOURGE, *escourgee*, a whip.
SCOUT, *ecouter*, one sent to watch
 an enemy.
SCREEN, *ecran*, shelter.
SCROLL, *ecroule*, a roll of writing.
SCULLERY, *ecuelle*.
SCUTTLE, *ecoutille*, hole in a
 ship's deck.
SEARCH, *chercher*, to look
 through, &c.
SEASON, *saison*.
SEIZE, *saisir*, to grasp.
SENESCHAL, *seneschal*, a steward.
SEVER, *sevrer*, to separate.
SHOCK, *choc*, a violent collision.
SHOT, *ecot*, a reckoning.
Siege, attack on a fortified place.
SIR, *sire*, a word of respect.
SKIRMISH, *escarmouche*, a slight
 fight in war.
SLANDER, *esclandre*, defamation.
SLATE, *eclater*, a thin stone.

SOAR, *essor*, to fly aloft.
SOCKET, *souche*, a hollow.
SOJOURN, *sejourner*, to dwell for
 a time.
Sombre, dark, gloomy.
SPICE, *epice*, an aromatic vege-
 table.
SPY, *espier*, one who watches.
SQUAD, *escouade*, a company of
 soldiers.
STAFF, *estaffette*, a number of
 officers.
STAGE, *etage*, a raised floor.
STALLION, *etalon*.
STANCH, *etancher*, to arrest
 flowing.
STAY, *etayer*, to stop in a place.
SUGAR, *sucre*.
SULLY, *souiller*, to soil.
SUPERFINE, *L. super, Fr. fin*.
SUPPLE, *souple*, pliant.
SURPRISE, *sur, pris*, to take un-
 awares.
TACK, *attacher*, to fasten.
TAILOR, *tailleur*.
TAN, *tanner*, to impregnate
 with bark.
TANK, *etang*, a large cistern.
TAP, *taper*, to strike gently.
Tare, an allowance in weight.
TARIFF, *tarif*, table of duties.
TARNISH, *ternir*, to sully.
TART, *tarte*, a fruit pie.
TARTAR, *tartre*, a salt.
TASK, *tache*, business imposed.
TASSEL, *tasse*.
TASTE, *tater*, to perceive by the
 palate.
TAUNT, *tancer*, to reproach.
TICKET, *etiquette*, a marked card.
TINSEL, *etincelle*.
Trade, strain of invective.
TOILET, *toilette*, dressing-table.
TOPE, *toper*, to drink to excess.
TORCH, *torche*, a large light.
TOUCH, *toucher*.
Tour, an excursion.
TOURNAMENT, *tourner*, a mock
 encounter.
TRAIN, *trainer*, to exercise.
TRAMEL, *trameil*, a shackle.

TRAVAIL, <i>travailler</i> , to labour, to toil.	USHER, <i>huissier</i> , under teacher.
TREASON, <i>trahison</i> .	Vassal, a servant, a slave.
TRENCH, <i>trancher</i> , to cut, dig.	VAUNT, <i>vanter</i> , to boast.
TRESS, <i>tresse</i> , a lock, a curl.	VEER, <i>vire</i> , to change, to turn.
Tripe, the intestines.	VELLUM, <i>velin</i> , fine parchment.
TROOP, <i>troupe</i> .	VICE, <i>vis</i> , an iron press.
Troubadour, a sort of musician.	Vignette, a print on title-page.
TROUBLE, <i>troubler</i> , to afflict.	VIOLIN, <i>viola</i> .
TRUANT, <i>truand</i> .	Vogue, fashion, mode.
TRUCE, <i>treve</i> , temporary peace.	Voyage, a journey by sea.
TRUCK, <i>troquer</i> , to traffic.	WAGE, <i>gage</i> , pay for service.
TRUSS, <i>trousse</i> , a bundle.	WAIT, <i>guetter</i> , to remain, attend.
TRY, <i>trier</i> , to prove by experiment.	WARRANT, <i>garant</i> , to authorize.
TUMBREL, <i>tombereau</i> , a waggon.	WARREN, <i>garenne</i> , an enclosure for rabbits.
	WICKET, <i>guichet</i> , a small gate.

PROSODY.—PUNCTUATION.

DEF. 1.—That part of the Science of Language which treats of *utterance*, is called *Prosody*.

Utterance is modified by *Pauses*, *Accent*, and the laws of *Versification*.

PAUSES.

DEF. 2.—Pauses are cessations of the voice in reading or speaking. They are Rhetorical and Grammatical.

OBS. 1.—Rhetorical Pauses are used to arrest attention. They are made before or after emphatic words. They are not indicated by marks.

EXAMPLES.—“There is a calm for those who weep,
A rest for weary pilgrims found.”

OBS. 2.—Grammatical Pauses are useful also in determining the sense. They are indicated by

MARKS OF PUNCTUATION.

The Comma	,	The Period .....	.
The Semicolon.....	;	The Interrogation	?
The Colon.....	:	The Exclamation	!

OBS. 3.—In its Rhetorical office,

The Comma requires a short pause in reading.

The Semicolon, a pause longer than the Comma.

The Colon, a pause longer than the Semicolon.

The Period requires a full Pause.

The Dash, the Marks of Exclamation and Interrogation, require Pauses corresponding with either of the other marks.

COMMA.

RULE 1.—When more than two words of the same construction occur consecutively, the Comma should be repeated after each.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Veracity, justice, and charity, are essential virtues."

"There is such an exactness in definition, and such a perspicuity in his detection of sophisms, as have been rarely employed in the Christian cause."

Incorrect.—"The dripping rock the mountain's misty top,
Swell on the sight and brighten with the dawn."

"Fame wisdom love and power were mine."

¶ The Comma is not placed between an Adjective and its Noun, although preceded by other Adjectives of the same construction.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"David was a brave, martial, enterprising prince."

"With that dull-rooted, callous impudence."

Incorrect.—"The tall, dark, mountains and the deep-toned sea."

"Ah! how unjust to Nature and himself,
Is thoughtless, thankless, inconsistent, man!"

RULE 2.—The parts of a Complex Sentence should be separated by a Comma, when the Auxiliary precedes the Principal Sentence.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Where wealth and freedom reign, contentment falls."

"If thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink."

Incorrect.—"When the cock crew he wept."

"As ye journey sweetly sing."

RULE 3.—An Adjunct Phrase or Sentence, used to express an incidental fact, and placed between the parts of the Principal Sentence, is separated by Commas.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"The grave, *that never spoke before,*
Hath found, *at length,* a tongue to chide."

Incorrect.—"Truth crushed to earth will rise again."
"Rise sons of harmony and hail the morn."

But when an Adjunct Phrase or Sentence which is indispensable in perfecting the sense, immediately follows the word which it qualifies, the Comma should not intervene.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Every one that findeth me shall slay me."
"Let school-taught pride dissemble all it can."

Incorrect.—"The fur, that warms a monarch, warmed a bear."

RULE 4.—Words, Phrases, and Sentences, thrown in between the parts of a Principal Sentence, are separated by Commas.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Go, then, where, *wrapt in fear and gloom,*
Fond hearts and true are sighing."
"Now, *therefore,* I pray thee, let thy servant abide."

Incorrect.—"It is a clear lake the very picture ordinarily of repose."

RULE 5.—A Phrase or a Sentence used as the Subject of a Verb, requires a Comma between it and the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"To do good to others, constitutes an important object of existence."

"*That we are rivals,* does not necessarily make us enemies."

Incorrect.—"That all men are created equal is a self-evident truth."
"His being a minister prevented his rising to civil power."

RULE 6.—Words used in direct address, should be separated by a Comma.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Thou, whose spell can raise the dead,
Bid the prophet's form appear."

Incorrect.—"Samuel raise thy buried head
King behold the phantom seer!"
"My son give me thine heart."

RULE 7.—Adjunct Sentences, Phrases, and sometimes Words, not in their natural position, should be separated by a Comma.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Into this illustrious society, he whose character I have endeavoured to portray, has, without doubt, entered."
 "He, like the world, his ready visit pays,
 Where fortune smiles."

Incorrect.—"To him who in the love of Nature holds
 Communion with her visible forms
 She speaks a various language."

SEMICOLON.

RULE 8.—The Semicolon is used at the close of a Sentence, which, by its terms, promises an additional Sentence.

Correct.—"The Essayists occupy a conspicuous place in the last century; but, somehow, I do not feel disposed to set much store by them."

Incorrect.—"It thunders but I tremble not
 My trust is firm in God."
 "Wisdom is better than rubies,
 It cannot be gotten for gold."

By many writers, the Semicolon is used to separate short Sentences, which have not a close dependence on each other.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"He was a plain man, without any pretension to pulpit eloquence, or any other accomplishment; he had no gift of imagination; his language was hard and dry; and his illustrations homely."

Incorrect.—"I had a seeming friend—I gave him gifts and he was gone.
 I had an open enemy—I gave him gifts, and won him—
 The very heart of hate melteth at a good man's love."


COLON.

RULE 9.—The Colon is used at the close of a Sentence, when another Sentence is added as a direct illustration or inference.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Let me give you a piece of good counsel, my cousin:
 follow my laudable example: write when you can:
 take Time's forelock in one hand, and a pen in the
 other, and so make sure of your opportunity."

Incorrect.—"From the last hill that looks on thy once holy domes
 I beheld thee, O Sion! when rendered to Rome
 'Twas thy last sun went down, and the flames of thy fall
 Flashed back on the last glance I gave to thy wall."

 The Colon is not much used now—its place being supplied by the Semicolon, the Dash, or the Period.

PERIOD.

RULE 10.—The Period is used at the close of a complete or independent proposition.

 The Period is also used after initial letters and abbreviations.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"God is love; and the good love and serve him. Truth is invincible."

J. G. Smith, L.L.D., M.P.

Incorrect.—"W A Wilson & Co 43 Newgate St London

DASH.

RULE 11.—The Dash is used to indicate—

1. An abrupt transaction.—2. An unfinished sentence.—3. A succession of particulars.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"They met to confer on state affairs—to read the newspapers—to talk a little scandal—and so forth—and the result was—as we have been told—considerable dissipation."—*Wilson's Burns.*

Incorrect.—"To me the 'Night's Thoughts' is a poem, on the whole, most animating and delightful amazingly energetic full of the richest instruction improving to the mind much of it worthy of being committed to memory yet it has some faults it is obscure extravagant and tinged occasionally with flattery."

OBS. 1.—The Dash is often used instead of the Parenthesis.

EXAMPLE.—"As they disperse they look very sad—and, no doubt, they are so—but had they been, they would not have taken to digging."

OBS. 2.—Some modern writers use the Dash in place of the Semicolon and the Colon—and sometimes with them.

EXAMPLE.—"Ye have great need of prayer;—
Ye have many sins to be forgiven."

EXCLAMATION.

RULE 12.—The mark of Exclamation is used after a Word, Phrase, or Sentence, whose prominent office is, to express sudden or intense emotion.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Hark! a strange sound affrights mine ear."

"To arms!—they come!—the Greek, the Greek!"

Incorrect.—"O my coevals, remnants of yourselves."

"Poor human ruins tottering o'er the grave."

INTERROGATION.

RULE 13.—The mark of Interrogation is used after a Word, Phrase, or Sentence, by which a question is asked.

EXAMPLES.

Correct.—"Why is my sleep disquieted?"

"Who is he that calls the dead?"

Incorrect.—Is it for thee the lark ascends and sings.—"Why are you dejected my friends."

GRAMMATICAL AND RHETORICAL SIGNS.

The Apostrophe (') is used to indicate the omission of a letter, and to give the Possessive form to a Noun.

EXAMPLE.—"Hearts, from which 'twas death to sever;—Eyes this world can ne'er restore."—"How lightly mounts the *Muse's* wing!"

The Quotation (" ") is used to enclose words taken from some other author or book.

EXAMPLE.—"Southey, among all our living poets," says Professor Wilson, "stands aloof and 'alone in his glory.'"

 A Quotation quoted is indicated by single marks.

The Hyphen (-) is used between two elements of a compound word; as Money-market—ink-stand—black-board. It is also used at the end of a line, when the word is not finished.

The Bracket [] is used to enclose a letter or mark, given as an explanatory example; or a Word, Phrase, or Sentence, thrown in by a reviewer, and not a part of the original Sentence.

EXAMPLE.—"Mr. Stewart found means to have Mr. Butler recommended to him [Lord Talbot] for his chaplain."

The Parenthesis () is used to enclose a Phrase or Sentence, explanatory of, or incidental to, the main Sentence.

EXAMPLE.—"Come, my Ambition! let us mount together,
(To mount, Lorenzo never can refuse,)
And from the clouds where pride delights to dwell,
Look down on earth."

 Modern writers often use the Dash for the same purpose.

EXAMPLE.—"The monotony of a calm—for the trade-wind has already failed us—was agreeably relieved yesterday, by the neighbourhood of two ships," &c.

References (* † ‡ §) direct attention to notes at the margin or at the bottom of the page.

The Brace ({) is used to include many species in one class.

EXAMPLE.—Adjectives are distinguished as { Qualifying,
Specifying,
Verbal:

Measures.—(-) indicates the long sound of a Syllable ; as, late, mēte, nōte.—(~) indicates the short sound of a syllable ; as, lēt, mēt, nōt.

The Caret, (^) is used between two words to indicate the place of Words omitted, and placed above the line.

EXAMPLE.—"The proper study is man." ^{of mankind}

Dieresis (.) is placed over the second of two vowels, to show that they belong to different syllables ; as Preëmption—Coëval—Reëducate.

The Index (☞) is used to point out a Word or Sentence considered worthy of special notice.

The Section (§) marks the divisions of a chapter or book.

The Paragraph (¶) is used when a new subject of remark is introduced. This is principally confined to the Scriptures.

Accent is a stress of voice placed on a particular syllable in pronouncing a word.

Emphasis is a stress of voice placed on a particular word in a Sentence.

This mark is indicated—1. In manuscript, by a line drawn under the emphatic word.—2. On a printed page, by the use of *Italic* letters. SMALL CAPITALS, and CAPITALS are used to indicate words still more emphatic.

☞ Prosody embraces also Versification, the various kinds of Poetry, Figures of Speech, &c. These will be included in another work intended to be published by the Author.

FOREIGN WORDS AND PHRASES.

ABBREVIATIONS.—*L. Latin; F. French; I. Italian.*

- AB INITIO**, *in ish't o*, *L.* From the beginning.
AD CAP TAN'DUM, *L.* To please.
AD REM, *L.* To the point.
A LA MODE, *F.* In full.
AD LIBITUM, *L.* At pleasure.
AD VALO'REM, *L.* According to the value.
ALIAS, *L.* Otherwise.
ALIBI, *L.* Elsewhere.
ANNO MUNDI, *L.* In the year of the world.
APROPOS, *ap'ro po*, *F.* To the purpose.
BEAU MONDE, *bo mond'*, *F.* The gay world.
BELLES LETTRES, *bel letr'*, *F.* Polite literature.
BIJOU, *be jo'*, *F.* A jewel.
BILLET DOUX, *bil la do'*, *F.* A love-letter.
BON JOUR, *bong jor'*, *F.* Good-day.
BON MOT, *bong mo*, *F.* A witty remark.
BON TON, *bong tong*, *F.* The height of fashion.
BO'NA FIDE, *L.* In good faith.
BOUDOIR, *bo dwar*, *F.* A small room.
CA'PIAS, *L.* You may take.
CASUS BELLI, *L.* Reason for war.
CHEF D'ŒUVRE, *sha dovr*, *F.* A masterpiece.
CLIQUE, *klek*, *F.* A party.
COMME IL FAUT, *kom'el fo'*, *F.* As it ought to be.
COMPOSMENTIS, *L.* Of sound mind.
CON A MO'RE, *I.* With love or zest.
CONNOISSEUR, *kon nes sur*, *F.* A skilful judge.
CORTEGE, *kor taz*, *F.* An escort.
COUP D'ETAT, *ko da ta'*, *F.* A master-stroke in politics.
COUP DE GRACE, *ko de gras'*, *F.* The finishing blow.
COUP DE MAIN, *ko deh mang'*, *F.* A taking by surprise.
COUP D'ŒIL, *ko dal'*, *F.* A glance of the eye; a hasty view.
DEBRIS, *deb re'*, *F.* Broken remnants.
DENOUEMENT, *den o mang'*, *F.* The unraveling of a plot.
DE FACTO, *L.* From the fact.
DE I GRA TI A, *L.* By the grace of God.
DE NOVO, *L.* Anew.
DEVOIRS, *dev wars'*, *F.* Duties; acts of civility.
DOUBLE ENTENDRE, *do'bl-an tan dr*, *F.* Double meaning.
DRAMATIS PERSONÆ, *L.* Persons of the drama.
ECLAIRCISSEMENT, *a klar sis mang'*, *F.* An explanation.
ECLAT, *a kla'*, *F.* Applause.
ELITE, *a let*, *F.* Choice society.
ENCORE, *ang kor*, *F.* Again.
EN MASSE, *ang mas'*, *F.* In a mass.
ENNUI, *ang we'*, *F.* Weariness.
ENTREE, *ang tra'*, *F.* Entrance.
ENTRENOUS, *antr no'*, *F.* Between us; confidentially.
ENTREPOT, *ang tr po'*, *F.* Depot for goods.
ERGO, *L.* Therefore.
ESPRIT DE CORPS, *es pre de kor'*, *F.* The spirit of a body of men.
ET CÆTERA, *L.* And so forth.
EXIT, *L.* He goes off.
EX'E UNT OMNES, *L.* All go off.
EXEMPLI GRATIA, *L.* For the sake of example.
EX OFFICIO, *L.* By virtue of office.
EX PARTE, *L.* On one side; on the part of.
EXPOSE, *eks po za'*, *F.* A laying open; statement of reasons, &c.
EX TEMPO RE, *L.* On the spur of the moment.
FAC SIM' I LE, *L.* An exact copy.
FELO DE SE, *L.* Self-murder.
FIAT, *L.* Let it be done.
FIN'ALE, *L.* The concluding piece in music; the close.
GENS D'ARMES, *zawng d'arm*, *F.* Armed guards of the police.

HA'BRAS CORPUS, L. You may have the body. A writ for delivering a person from prison.

HAUTEUR, ho ter', F. Haughtiness; pride.

HIC JACET, L. Here lies.

HORS DE COMBAT, hor' de kom br', F. Disabled for fighting.

IBIDEM, L. In the same place.

IDEM, L. The same.

ID EST, or, i. e. L. That is.

IMPROMPTU, L. Unpremeditated.

IMPRIMIS, L. In the first place.

IN EXTEN'SO, L. In full.

IN STATU QUO, L. In its former state.

IN TOTO, L. Wholly, entirely.

IN TRANSITU, L. On the passage.

INCOGNITO, L. In disguise.

INSTANTER, L. Promptly.

IPSE DIXIT, L. He himself has said it; mere assertion.

IPSO FACTO, L. By the fact itself.

IPSO JURE, L. By the law itself.

JEU D'ESPRIT, zhu des pre', F. A play of wit.

LABOR OMNIA VINCIT, L. Labour conquers every thing.

LAPSUS LINGUÆ, L. A slip of the tongue.

MADemoiselle, ma dem wa zel', F. A young unmarried lady.

MAGNA CHARTA, kar'ta, L. The great charter.

MESSIEURS, mesh'yerr, F. Gentlemen; Sirs.

MEUM ET TUUM, L. Mine and thine.

MODUS OPERANDI, L. The mode of operation.

MONSIEUR, mos ser, F. Sir; Mr.

MULTUM IN PARVO, L. Much in a little.

NAIVETE, na ev ta', F. Simplicity.

NE PLUS ULTRA, L. The farthest limit or point; perfection.

NOLENS VOLENS, L. Willing or unwilling.

NOTA BE'NE, L. Mark well.

ON DIT, on' de, F. People say.

ORA PRO NOBIS, L. Pray for us.

OUTRE, o tra', F. Exaggerated.

PENCHANT, pan shang', F. Inclination.

PLATEAU, plat to', F. Table-land.

POST MERIDIEM, L. Afternoon.

POST MORTEM, L. After death.

PRIMA FACIE, L. From the first view; self-evident.

PRO BONO PUBLICO, L. For the public good.

PRO ET CON, For and against.

PRO TEM'PORE, L. For the time.

QUID PRO QUO, L. What for what; tit for tat.

RARA AVIS, L. A rare bird; a prodigy.

RENDEZVOUS, ran da vo', F. The place of meeting.

SANS, F. Without.

SANG FROID, sang frwor, F. Cold-bloodedness.

SI'NE DI'E, L. Without a day.

SI'NE QUA NON, L. Indispensable condition.

SOBRIQUET, so brs ka', F. Nick-name.

SOIREE, suor ra', F. Evening party.

STATUS QUO, L. The same state.

SUMMUM BONUM, L. The chief good.

TABLEAU, tab lo', F. A picture.

TAPIS, tap e', F. A carpet.

TERRA FIRMA, L. Firm earth.

TETE-A-TETE, tat' a tat', F. Head to head; a private conversation.

TOUT ENSEMBLE, tot' ang sam'bl, F. The whole taken together.

VA'DE ME'CUM, L. Go with me; a constant companion.

VALET DE CHAMBRE, va'le de shamb'r', F. A footman.

VERBATIM ET LITERATIM, L. Word for word, and letter for letter.

VIA, L. By way of.

VI'CE VERSA, L. The opposite.

VIS-A-VIS, viz a ve', L. Opposite.

VIVA VO'CE, L. By the living voice.

VOX POPULI VOX DEI, L. The voice of the people is the voice of God.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Adjectives	34	Explanation of the Affixes ..	21
Adjectives	123	Foreign Words and Phrases ..	22
Adjective Pronouns ..	45	Form of a Verb	11
Adjectives, Comparison ..	129	Gender of Nouns	1
Adjectives in Predicate ..	134	Grammatical Fallacies ..	18
Adverbs	91	Interrogative Pronouns ..	14
Adverbs, Classification of ..	93	Irregular Verbs	1
Adverbs	160	Latin Prefixes	16
Affixes	193	Mode of Verbs	1
Analyzing and Parsing ..	188	Nouns	1
Anglo-Saxon Roots	223	Nouns	109 to 12
Articles	13	Number of Nouns	1
Articles	106	Numeral Adjectives	12
Case of Nouns	23	Orthography	1
Compound Words	216	Parsing, Exercises in ..	11
Conjunctions	99	Participles	11
Conjunctions	168	Participles, Remarks on ..	11
Conjugation of Verbs ..	63	Person of Nouns	1
Conjugation of Auxiliary Verbs	65	Personal Pronouns	1
Conjugation of "To be." ..	70	Prepositions	1
Conjugation of Regular Verbs	77	Prepositions	10
Conjugation of "To Learn." ..	78	Prepositions, List of ..	10
Conjugation of "To Recite." ..	80	Pronouns	1
Conjugation—Passive Voice ..	86	Pronouns	12
Derivation	189	Pronouns, Position of ..	14
Derivation from the French ..	270	Prosody	21
Derivatives formed by Prefixes	203	Relative Pronouns	1
Derivatives formed by Affixes	211	Relative Pronouns	12
Derivatives made opposites by		Rules for Spelling	1
Prefixes	215	Saxon or English Prefixes ..	16
Derivatives from Latin Nouns	233	Syllables and Words ..	1
Derivatives from Latin Adjectives		Synopsis of the Verb "Study," ..	1
Prefixes	240	Syntax	10
Derivatives from Latin Verbs	244	Tenses of Verbs	1
Derivatives from Greek Roots	256	Verbs	1
Errors corrected	182	Verbs, how to know ..	1
Etymology	12	Verbs, Active. &c. ..	1
Exclamations	101	Verbs, Passive	1
Exclamations	170	Verbs, Person of	1
Exercise on Number	24	Verbs, Number of	1
Exercise on Verbs	72	Verbs	145 to 12
Exercises on Derivation ..	191	Verbs, Mode and Tense ..	12
Exercises on Prefixes and		Words of Euphony	12
Affixes	198		



NOW READY, SPLENDIDLY ILLUSTRATED,

With 130 Engravings of Various Plants.

THIRD EDITION. Cloth, Red Edges, 3s. 6d.

The Best, Most Simple and Practical Work on British and Foreign Herbs ever published.

ROBINSON'S

NEW FAMILY HERBAL:

Comprising a Description of British and Foreign Plants, and their Medical Virtues: founded on the Works of the best English and American Writers on the Medical Properties of Herbs. Directions for gathering Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, Roots, Barks; and for making Juices, Syrups, Preserves, Oils, Electuaries, Conserves, Ointments, Poultrices, Pills, Decoctions, &c. To which is added, *The Botanic Family Physician*, with complete Directions for the use of the various Herbs. Valuable Medical Receipts; and other important matter with which every Head of a Family ought to be acquainted.

THE BIBLE COMPANION, Scripture Pronouncer and Expositor of difficult passages of Scripture, &c.

THE YOUTH'S CASKET OF JEWELS; or, Original and Choice Treasures for Young Persons.

Brilliant and Beautiful **GEMS OF SACRED POETRY**.

THE GARLAND OF SACRED POETRY; or, a very Choice Selection of Poetry on Sacred Subjects, with some Original Pieces, by W. Nicholson.

THE SPIRITUAL GARLAND of Fragrant Flowers, culled from the Gardens of Providence and Grace.

A Sequel to the 'Sacred Garland.' Enlarged Edition.

Forms a Splendid and Interesting Presentation Book.

MEMOIR of the Venerable **WILLIAM BRAMWELL**, a Wesleyan Methodist Itinerant Preacher, by James Sigston.

Published by William Nicholson and Sons, Halifax.

TO THE GENTLEMAN WHOM I LOVE. 1s.

TO THE LADY WHOM I LOVE. 1s.

A PRESENT TO THE ONE I LOVE. 1s.

These Three Poetry Books, with Frontispiece and Vignette, are admirably adapted for Presentation.

AWFUL DISCLOSURES OF MARIA MONK.

THE SUMMER STORM, or, loved one lost and found.

BEAUTIFUL TALES. Very Interesting.

PRETTY TALES FOR YOUTH.

DREAMS, and their Interpretation.

POPULAR FORTUNE TELLER, and Dreamer

ANNIE NEE, a True Tale, By M. Sneath.

EVERYBODY'S CONFECTIONERY BOOK.

DAILY MANNA for Christian Pilgrims.

JESUS CALLS; or, Youth invited to Heaven.

BABES IN THE BASKET.

The BASKET OF FLOWERS.

SUSAN GRAY. By Mrs. Sherwood.

LITTLE HENRY AND HIS BEARER.

JACK AND HIS ELEVEN BROTHERS.

ANN AND HER ELEVEN SISTERS.

LIFE OF FIDDLER THOMPSON.

SAMUEL HICK, the Village Blacksmith.

ANN CUTLER, and Wesleyan Anecdotes.

HEART AND HAND.

JANEWAY'S TOKEN FOR CHILDREN.

THE BOOK TO PLEASE A BOY.

THE BOOK TO PLEASE A GIRL.

FANNY CLARE, and other Interesting Tales.

PRECIOUS PROMISES.

A KISS FOR A BLOW.

THE HEAVENLY FOOTMAN, by Bunyan.

THE YOUNG COTTAGER.

LIFE OF JOSEPH.

GOLDEN COUNSELS and Pretty Anecdotes.

THE JESSAMINE COTTAGE.

PROSPECT OF HEAVEN.

DAIRYMAN'S DAUGHTER.

THE GATHERED ROSE, or the Young

Disciple taken to Heaven.

THE CHRISTIAN'S TREASURE.

THE HISTORY OF JOHN WISE.

DIVINE BREATHINGS, or a Pious soul

thirsting

THE BOOK

ELIZA; or the

HILL'S TOK

THESE ENTERTAINING AND INSTRUCTIVE BOOKS AT EACH
IN FANCY GILT PAPER COVERS, OR, BOUND IN CLOTH, GILT EDGES.

Publis

Wiley.

